

ELEMENTARY  
LATIN GRAMMAR

*J. BARROW ALLEN*

HENRY FROWDE, M.A.

PUBLISHER TO THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD

LONDON, EDINBURGH, NEW YORK, TORONTO  
MELBOURNE AND BOMBAY



more slender New Ka  
AN ELEMENTARY

# LATIN GRAMMAR

BY

JOHN BARROW ALLEN, M.A.

LATE SCHOLAR OF NEW COLLEGE, OXFORD

AUTHOR OF 'RUDIMENTA LATINA,' 'A FIRST LATIN EXERCISE BOOK'

'A SECOND LATIN EXERCISE BOOK,' &c., &c.

NEW EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED

OXFORD

AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

## PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

THIS Grammar is intended to give such information as is necessary for starting a learner in Latin. The troublesome nomenclature common to many School Grammars is as far as possible avoided; and a Short Catechism of Syntax takes the place of the usual Latin Rules.

In the treatment of Latin Accidence the beaten tracks pointed out by immemorial usage have been generally adhered to. The principal change is the subdivision of the Perfect into two separate Tenses, conformably to its twofold usage, (*a*) as a Present Past, (*b*) as a Simple Past. This alteration will compel every boy who meets with a Perfect to stop, if only as part of his parsing lesson, and reflect which Tense is meant. It also enables us to group the Tenses in the paradigm under the heads of Primary and Historic, a distinction important for boys to remember.

The principle of teaching by frequent repetition is adhered to throughout. A special aim of the work has been to impart a practical acquaintance with Latin Syntax by means of classified examples rather than a multitude of rules. All or nearly all the possible meanings of each Tense are given once at least with the paradigm of every Verb. To each Conjugation notes are appended explanatory of certain difficulties; among them are included short rules for the translation of the Accusative and Infinitive, and Ablative Absolute.

The Author's best thanks are due to his friends, Henry St. John Reade, Head Master of the Godolphin School, Hammersmith, and Michael Seymour Forster, Head Master

of Oswestry Grammar School, who have revised the proof sheets and offered many valuable suggestions. He has also to express his obligations to many of the School Manuals now in use, to which he is indebted for hints on several points of detail. A few rules have been quoted *verbatim*, and acknowledged in their proper place.

Corrections and suggestions of improvements in the work will be thankfully received.

BIRMINGHAM, *June*, 1874.

---

## PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

THE demand for a Second Edition has furnished an opportunity of making some alterations and additions which were much needed in the Syntax and Appendix. The book is now fitted for use in all Forms below the highest in Classical Schools, and the constant references made to higher authorities will, if attended to, prepare for the transition to Madvig, Roby, the Public Schools Latin Grammar, &c.; whilst for Middle Class Schools, where the standard of reading does not go beyond that of the University Local Examinations, no higher work will be needed.

The Author is indebted for many useful hints to J. Pryce-Jones, Esq., Grove Park School, Wrexham, and the Rev. C. G. Gepp, late Junior Student of Christ Church, Oxford; also, for a masterly and critical examination of the proof sheets, to the Rev. W. F. Moulton, D.D., Head Master of the Wesleyan School, Cambridge.

CAMBRIDGE, *December*, 1877.

## PREFACE TO THE NEW EDITION.

THE revision of a school manual which has enjoyed a life of more than twenty years, with constantly increasing circulation, requires at least an explanation, if not an apology. All practical teachers know, and few, perhaps, in a greater degree than myself, the exasperation created in a school-master's mind when some elementary book, which has been placed in the hands of a class, is superseded in twelve months' time by a new edition flatly contradicting many of the facts given in the earlier issue, to say nothing of alterations in paging and sections, and the transference of matter from one portion of the work to another. For this reason I have, during all these years, determined to let well alone, and to refrain from tinkering. In departing at last from my resolve, I beg to assure the teachers who use this book that, though some needful and, I hope, useful alterations and additions have been made, nothing of any importance contained in the earlier issues has been contradicted, and scarcely a page or section has been altered in a way likely to cause the smallest confusion. The principal novelties in the present edition are the following:—(1) *Ictus* has been substituted for *Gradus* as the specimen noun of the Fourth Declension. Considering that quite nine-tenths of the words belonging to this declension are verbal nouns in *-tus* or *-sus*, I do not think that this innovation stands in need of much apology. (2) On page 73, the compounds of *fero* are inserted, showing the various assimilations of consonants in the principal parts of the verb. This is an addition

which has long been urged upon me by correspondents. (3) In the classification of uses of the Dative Case I have ventured (p. 93) to make two additions to the list. It has always struck me that our leading grammarians have not explained the Dative in such a way as to be sufficiently helpful either to the humble teacher or to the inquiring pupil. We are taught that the case is represented by the prepositions 'to' and 'for,' and although the Dative is said to follow words indicating not only 'nearness' but 'remoteness,' while the phrase 'Dative of the Possessor' is not unknown, though almost invariably restricted to the use of *sum* with a Dative, in the sense of 'to have,' this does not render self-evident to a boy the fact that the prepositions 'of' and 'from' are constantly required for a proper translation of the case. I trust, therefore, that divisions (c) and (d) of § 117, supplemented by §§ 249, 250, will not be thought a presumptuous innovation on hitherto existing classifications. (4) On page 104, one of the two previously existing sections devoted to the rule for Sequence of Tenses has been cleared away to make room for an article summarizing the constructions of the conjunction *dum*. (5) In recasting § 158 (a) I have invaded that favourite hunting-ground of the examiners, the stems of the 3rd Declension, in the hope of enabling their unfortunate quarry to emerge from the ordeal successfully. The old list (pp. 123-125) contained eighty-eight varieties of stem, and although the actual number of varieties is not, perhaps, much increased, I think considerable help should be afforded by the largely augmented number of specimen words, and by the classifications and more or less comprehensive rules introduced, where possible, e.g., the hint that nouns in *-is*, when not included in the ten exceptions given in the foot-note, may safely be assumed to follow the declension of *avis*, as far as the genitive case is concerned, the

rules given for the genitive of nouns derived from **sedeo**, **capio**, and **caput**, &c. (6) Lastly, I have added an Index of Subjects and an Index of Latin Words. A caution is necessary with reference to the latter of these. A complete list of all the many thousands of words contained in the volume would have greatly increased its size without much compensating advantage. For the most part, therefore, only such words are included as have peculiarities of inflexion or construction, while words occurring in tabulated lists, e.g., the Irregular Verbs (pp. 105-117), the Genders of Nouns (pp. 118-121), the Stems of the 3rd Declension (pp. 123-125), the Numerals (pp. 133-137), the Terminations of Derived Nouns (pp. 138-141), and the words illustrated under the Laws of Quantity, have only rarely received notice. Any word belonging to the above lists can be found without difficulty by reference to the Index of Subjects. The only exceptions to this practice are in the case of, (a), Verbs which show weakened vowels, or otherwise variant forms, in their compounds, and, (b), words which require to be noticed owing to peculiarity of inflexion or construction, and which also appear elsewhere in one or more of the tabulated lists. In such case, all the references are given. Thus, **carbasus** has to be noticed as a Heterogeneous Noun, and it is also a Noun of exceptional gender; both references are therefore given, without any addition being made to the lines of print.

I have to express my hearty thanks to the many correspondents who have from time to time furnished me with valuable hints and corrections, and to invite a continuance of them in the future.

JOHN BARROW ALLEN.

11 WINCHENDON ROAD,  
FULHAM, S.W.

May, 1898.



# CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Alphabet and Parts of Speech . . . . .	1
The Noun . . . . .	2
Substantives . . . . .	3
The First Declension . . . . .	3
The Second Declension . . . . .	4
The Third Declension . . . . .	6
The Fourth Declension . . . . .	8
The Fifth Declension . . . . .	9
Adjectives . . . . .	9
Comparison of Adjectives . . . . .	13
Pronouns . . . . .	16
The Verb . . . . .	18
The Verb 'Sum' . . . . .	20
First Conjugation, Active Voice . . . . .	26
Second Conjugation, Active Voice . . . . .	30
Third Conjugation, Active Voice . . . . .	34
Fourth Conjugation, Active Voice . . . . .	38
First Conjugation, Passive Voice . . . . .	42
Second Conjugation, Passive Voice . . . . .	46
Third Conjugation, Passive Voice . . . . .	50
Fourth Conjugation, Passive Voice . . . . .	54
Comparative Table of the Four Conjugations . . . . .	58
Conjugation of a Deponent Verb . . . . .	62
Comparative Table of Tenses in Greek, Latin, French, &c. . . . .	67
Conjugation of the Anomalous Verbs . . . . .	68
Interrogative Forms of the Verb . . . . .	74
Notes on the Conjugations . . . . .	75
Defective and other Verbs . . . . .	78
Particles . . . . .	81
Catechism of Syntax . . . . .	84
APPENDIX—	
Table of Verbs . . . . .	105
Rules of Gender . . . . .	118



	PAGE
Notes on the Declensions . . . . .	122
Numeral Adjectives and Adverbs . . . . .	133
Table of Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns . . . . .	137
Terminations of Derived Nouns . . . . .	138
The Roman Calendar . . . . .	141
Roman weights and money . . . . .	143
Abbreviations . . . . .	144
Explanation of Grammatical Terms . . . . .	145
Laws of Quantity . . . . .	149
Parsing Forms . . . . .	151
Supplementary Rules and Examples . . . . .	153
Conditional or Hypothetical Sentences . . . . .	192
Pronunciation of Latin . . . . .	193
Index of Subjects . . . . .	195
Index of Latin Words . . . . .	203

---

By the same Author.

*RUDIMENTA LATINA*, containing Accidence and Elementary Exercises, in one volume. Extra fcap. 8vo, *cloth*, 2s.

*A FIRST LATIN EXERCISE BOOK*. Eighth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, *cloth*, 2s. 6d.

*A SECOND LATIN EXERCISE BOOK*. Extra fcap. 8vo, *cloth*, 3s. 6d.

A Key to First and Second Latin Exercise Books, in one volume, price 5s. net. Supplied to *Teachers only*, on application to the Secretary, Clarendon Press.

OXFORD: CLARENDON PRESS.

# LATIN GRAMMAR.

---

## ALPHABET AND PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 1. **Alphabet.** The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English, without W. For the pronunciation, see § 396.

§ 2. **Divisions of Letters.** The letters are divided into

(1) Vowels: a, e, i, o, u, y.

(2) Consonants: the remaining letters.

§ 3. **Diphthongs.** These are, ae (æ), oe (œ), and au<sup>1</sup>.

§ 4. **Quantity of Syllables.** Syllables in Latin always have a certain *quantity*,—that is, they are either long, short, or doubtful. The sign — indicates a long, ∪ a short, and ∩ a doubtful syllable.

§ 5. **Parts of Speech.** There are eight Parts of Speech, namely, the Noun-Substantive, Noun-Adjective, Pro-noun, Verb, Ad-verb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection.

NOTE.—These eight Parts of Speech are sometimes put under three heads, namely—(1) The Noun, including Noun-Substantive, Noun-Adjective, and Pronoun; (2) The Verb; (3) The Particle, including Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection.

The Noun-Substantive is the name of any *person* or *thing*, as, *magister*, a *master*, *mensa*, a *table*.

The Noun-Adjective expresses the *quality* of a person or thing, as, *bonus*, *good*, *albus*, *white*.

<sup>1</sup> ei, eu, and ui are found as diphthongs in Interjections, as *hei*, *heu*; and in a few other words as *neuter*, *huic*, *cui*, etc.

The Pro-noun is used *instead of* a Substantive or Adjective, as, ille, *he*; meus, *my*.

The Verb expresses an *action*, as, amo, *I love*; or a *condition*, as, amor, *I am loved*.

The Ad-verb is *added to* a Verb or Adjective, and shews *how, when, or where*, as valde bonus, *very good*; scripsit heri, *he wrote yesterday*; huc veni, *come hither*.

The Preposition is *put before* Nouns, to shew that they are to be joined to Verbs, or sometimes to Nouns, as, venit ad urbem, *he comes to the city*; lupus inter oves, *a wolf among sheep*.

The Conjunction *joins together* words or sentences, as, Romulus et Remus, *Romulus and Remus*.

The Interjection is an exclamation, as, heu, *alas*!

§ 6. **The Article.** There is no Article, *a, an, or the*, in Latin. Thus bellum may mean *war, a war, or the war*.

## THE NOUN.

§ 7. **Number.** There are two Numbers, the Singular, which speaks of one, as, magister, *a master*; the Plural, which speaks of more than one, as, magistri, *masters*.

§ 8. **Gender.** There are three Genders, (1) the Masculine, as, vir, *a man*; (2) the Feminine, as, mulier, *a woman*; and (3) the Neuter, as, cubile, *a bed*. Nouns which are both Masculine and Feminine are called Common, as, canis, *a dog*. But in Latin names of *things* are not all Neuter (as in English) many being Masculine, as, murus, *a wall*, and many Feminine, as, mensa, *a table*. (For the General and Special Rules of Gender, see pp. 118-121.)

§ 9. **Cases.** There are six Cases, the Nominative, Vocative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative, and Ablative. In English these Cases are distinguished by means of prepositions, as,

Genitive, *of* a man, Dative, *to* a man, Ablative, *by, with, or from* a man. But in Latin they are distinguished *by altering the last syllable*, as will be explained directly under *Stem* and *Flexion*.

§ 10. **Oblique Cases.** The Accusative, Genitive, Dative, and Ablative are called Oblique Cases.

§ 11. **Stem.** The Stem is *that part of a Noun which remains unaltered* in all the Cases and in both Numbers; as, *mūr* in *mūr-us*, *a wall*; *mur-o*, *to a wall*; *mur-i*, *walls*; *vall* in *vall-is*, *a valley*; *vall-i*, *to a valley*; *vall-es*, *valleys*.

§ 12. **Flexion.** Flexions (also called Inflexions or Terminations) are *the Syllables added to the Stem* for the purpose of distinguishing the different Cases and Numbers.

NOTE.—This will be best understood by looking at *mens-a* or any other Noun in the declensions that immediately follow.

§ 13. **Declension.** Declensions are *the different ways in which Nouns are declined*, that is, the different ways in which their Cases and Numbers are formed by means of adding different Flexions to the Stem.

## SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 14. **The five Declensions.** Of Substantives there are five Declensions, which are known by the endings of their Genitive Case Singular. The 1st Declension has Gen. Sing. in *-ae*; the 2nd in *-i*; the 3rd in *-is*; the 4th in *-ūs*; the 5th in *-ei*.

§ 15. **THE FIRST DECLENSION.**

*Nominative.* The Nominative Case ends in *-ā*.

*Gender.* Feminine; except a few names of men, as, *Publicola*, *Publicola*, or designations of men, as, *poeta*, *a poet*, which are masculine.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	Mensă, <i>a table.</i>	Mens-ae, <i>tables.</i>
Voc.	Mens-ă, <i>O table.</i>	Mens-ae, <i>O tables.</i>
Acc.	Mens-am, <i>a table.</i>	Mens-ās, <i>tables.</i>
Gen.	Mens-ae, <i>of a table.</i>	Mens-arum, <i>of tables.</i>
Dat.	Mens-ae, <i>to or for a table.</i>	Mens-īs, <i>to or for tables.</i>
Abl.	Mens-ā, <i>by, with, or from a table.</i>	Mens-īs, <i>by, with, or from tables.</i>

### § 16. THE SECOND DECLENSION.

*Nominative.* The Nominative ends in -ūs, -ēr, and -um.

*Gender.* -us and -er generally Masculine, -um Neuter.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	Mūrūs, <i>a wall.</i>	Mur-i, <i>walls.</i>
Voc.	Mur-ē, <i>O wall.</i>	Mur-i, <i>O walls.</i>
Acc.	Mur-um, <i>a wall.</i>	Mur-ōs, <i>walls.</i>
Gen.	Mur-i, <i>of a wall.</i>	Mur-orum, <i>of walls.</i>
Dat.	Mur-o, <i>to or for a wall.</i>	Mur-īs, <i>to or for walls.</i>
Abl.	Mur-o, <i>by, with, or from a wall.</i>	Mur-īs, <i>by, with, or from walls.</i>

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	Măgistēr, <i>a master.</i>	Magistr-i, <i>masters.</i>
Voc.	Magistēr, <i>O master.</i>	Magistr-i, <i>O masters</i>
Acc.	Magistr-um, <i>a master.</i>	Magistr-os, <i>masters.</i>
Gen.	Magistr-i, <i>a master's, or of a master.</i>	Magistr-orum, <i>of masters.</i> [ters.
Dat.	Magistr-o, <i>to or for a master.</i>	Magistr-īs, <i>to or for mas-</i>
Abl.	Magistr-o, <i>by, with, or from a master.</i>	Magistr-īs, <i>by, with, or from masters.</i>

*Note.* The Ablative of Nouns denoting a *living thing*, as, magister, puer, judex, etc., usually requires a Preposition, as, a (ab), *by, from, cum, with, etc.*

Some Nouns in **-er** preserve the **e** before **-r** through all the cases, instead of dropping it, as, *puer*, *a boy*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>Puër</i> , <i>a boy</i> .	<i>Puer-i</i> , <i>boys</i> .
Voc. <i>Puër</i> , <i>O boy</i> .	<i>Puer-i</i> , <i>O boys</i> .
Acc. <i>Puer-um</i> , <i>a boy</i> .	<i>Puer-os</i> , <i>boys</i> .
Gen. <i>Puer-i</i> , <i>a boy's</i> , or <i>of a boy</i> .	<i>Puer-orum</i> , <i>of boys</i> .
Dat. <i>Puer-o</i> , <i>to</i> or <i>for a boy</i> .	<i>Puer-is</i> , <i>to</i> or <i>for boys</i> .
Abl. <i>Puer-o</i> <sup>1</sup> , <i>by</i> , <i>with</i> , or <i>from a boy</i> .	<i>Puer-is</i> <sup>1</sup> , <i>by</i> , <i>with</i> , or <i>from boys</i> .

Like '*puer*' are declined,—*gener*, *socer*, *vesper*, *Liber*, and compounds of *gero*, *I carry*, and *fero*, *I bear*, as, *armiger*<sup>2</sup>.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.V.A. <i>Bellum</i> , <i>war</i> , or <i>O war</i> .	<i>Bell-ă</i> , <i>wars</i> , or <i>O wars</i> .
Gen. <i>Bell-i</i> , <i>of war</i> .	<i>Bell-orum</i> , <i>of wars</i> .
Dat. <i>Bell-o</i> , <i>to</i> or <i>for war</i> .	<i>Bell-is</i> , <i>to</i> or <i>for wars</i> .
Abl. <i>Bell-o</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>with</i> , or <i>from war</i> .	<i>Bell-is</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>with</i> , or <i>from wars</i> .

*Note on Neuter Nouns.* The Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Cases of all Neuter Nouns are the same in each number, and in the Plural they always end in **-ă**.

*Note on the Genitive of the Second Declension.* Nouns in **-ius**, **-ium** often contract **-ii** into **-i** in the Genitive, as, *filius*, *a son*, Gen. *fili* or *fili*; *ingenium*, *ability*, Gen. *ingenii*, or *ingēni*.

*Note on the Vocative of the Second Declension.* *Filius*, *a son*, and names of men ending in **-ius**, make **-i** in the Vocative; as, *filius*, Voc. *fili*, *O son*; *Virgilius*, *Virgil*, Voc. *Virgili*, *O Virgil*. *Deus*, *God*, has Voc. *Deus* (not *Dee*), *O God*.

<sup>1</sup> A Preposition must be used with the Latin word. See § 16, Note.

<sup>2</sup> *Son-in-law*, *father-in-law*, *evening*, *Bacchus*, *armour-bearer*.

## § 17.

## THE THIRD DECLENSION.

*Nominative and Gender.* The Nominative ends variously. The Gender is also various. (For terminations of the Nominative, and rules of Gender, see pp. 119-121.)

*Divisions.* Nouns of this Declension have two divisions, namely, (1) Nouns which have **-um** in the Genitive Plural; (2) Nouns which have **-ium** in the Genitive Plural.

Nouns *increasing* (i. e. having more Syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative) make **-um** in the Gen. Pl.; Nouns *not increasing* make **-ium**. For the exceptions see p. 126.

Nouns in **-um**.1. *Masculine or Feminine.*

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

N.V.	Jūdex, <i>a judge</i> , or <i>O judge</i> .	Judic-ēs, <i>judges</i> , or <i>O judges</i> .
Acc.	Judic-em, <i>a judge</i> .	Judic-ēs, <i>judges</i> .
Gen.	Judic-īs, <i>of a judge</i> .	Judic-um, <i>of judges</i> .
Dat.	Judic-i, <i>to or for a judge</i> .	Judic-ībūs, <i>to or for judges</i> .
Abl.	Judic-ē <sup>1</sup> , <i>by, with, or from</i>	Judic-ibūs <sup>1</sup> , <i>by, with, or from judges</i> .

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Law.</i>	<i>Lion.</i>	<i>Flower.</i>	<i>Soldier.</i>
N.V.	Lex.	Leo.	Flos.	Milēs.
Acc.	Lēg-em.	Leōn-em.	Flōr-em.	Milit-em.
Gen.	„ -īs.	„ -īs.	„ -īs.	„ -īs.
Dat.	„ -i.	„ -i.	„ -i.	„ -i.
Abl.	„ -ē.	„ -ē.	„ -ē.	„ -ē.

## PLURAL.

N.V.A.	Leg-ēs.	Leōn-ēs.	Flor-ēs.	Milit-ēs.
Gen.	„ -um.	„ -um.	„ -um.	„ -um.
Dat. Abl.	„ -ībūs.	„ -ībūs.	„ -ībūs.	„ -ībūs.

<sup>1</sup> A Preposition must be used with the Latin word. See § 16, *Note*.

2. *Neuter.*

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

N.A.V.	Öpüs, <i>a work</i> , or <i>O work</i> .	Oper-ă, <i>works</i> , or <i>O works</i> .
Gen.	Opër- <b>is</b> , <i>of a work</i> .	Oper- <b>um</b> , <i>of works</i> .
Dat.	Oper- <b>i</b> , <i>to or for a work</i> .	Oper- <b>ibūs</b> , <i>to or for works</i> .
Abl.	Oper- <b>ě</b> , <i>by, with, or from a work</i> .	Oper- <b>ibūs</b> , <i>by, with, or from works</i> .

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Shore.</i>	<i>Song.</i>	<i>Head.</i>	<i>Journey.</i>
N.V.A.	Litūs	Carměn.	Căpūt.	Îtěr.
Gen.	Litör- <b>is</b> .	Carmîn- <b>is</b> .	Capît- <b>is</b> .	Itiněr- <b>is</b> .
Dat.	„ - <b>i</b> .	„ - <b>i</b> .	„ - <b>i</b> .	„ - <b>i</b> .
Abl.	„ - <b>ě</b> .	„ - <b>ě</b> .	„ - <b>ě</b> .	„ - <b>ě</b> .

## PLURAL.

N.V.A.	Litör-ă.	Carmîn-ă.	Capît-ă.	Itiněr-ă.
Gen.	„ - <b>um</b> .	„ - <b>um</b> .	„ - <b>um</b> .	„ - <b>um</b> .
Dat. Abl.	„ - <b>ibūs</b> .	„ - <b>ibūs</b> .	„ - <b>ibūs</b> .	„ - <b>ibūs</b> .

## Nouns in -ium.

1. *Masculine or Feminine.*

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

N.V.	Vallis, <i>a valley</i> , or <i>O valley</i> .	Vall-ēs, <i>valleys</i> , or <i>O valleys</i> .
Acc.	Vall- <b>em</b> , <i>a valley</i> .	Vall-ēs, or - <b>is</b> , <i>valleys</i> .
Gen.	Vall- <b>is</b> , <i>of a valley</i> .	Vall- <b>ium</b> , <i>of valleys</i> .
Dat.	Vall- <b>i</b> , <i>to or for a valley</i> .	Vall- <b>ibūs</b> , <i>to or for valleys</i> .
Abl.	Vall- <b>ě</b> , <i>by, with, or from a valley</i> .	Vall- <b>ibūs</b> , <i>by, with, or from valleys</i> .



SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.V. Nūbēs, <i>a cloud</i> , or <i>O cloud</i> .	Nub-ēs, <i>clouds</i> , or <i>O clouds</i> .
Acc. Nub-em, <i>a cloud</i> .	Nub-ēs, or -īs, <i>clouds</i> .
Gen. Nub-īs, <i>of a cloud</i> .	Nub-ium, <i>of clouds</i> .
Dat. Nub-i, <i>to or for a cloud</i> .	Nub-ībūs, <i>to or for clouds</i> .
Abl. Nub-ē, <i>by, with, or from a cloud</i> .	Nub-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from clouds</i> .

## 2. Neuter.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.A.V. Mārē, <i>the sea</i> , or <i>O sea</i> .	Mar-iā, <i>seas</i> , or <i>O seas</i> .
Gen. Mar-īs, <i>of the sea</i> .	Mar-ium, <i>of seas</i> .
Dat. Mar-i, <i>to or for the sea</i> .	Mar-ībūs, <i>to or for seas</i> .
Abl. Mar-i, <i>by, with, or from the sea</i> .	Mar-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from seas</i> .

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.A.V. Cūbīlē, <i>a bed</i> , or <i>O bed</i> .	Cubil-iā, <i>beds</i> , or <i>O beds</i> .
Gen. Cubil-īs, <i>of a bed</i> .	Cubil-ium, <i>of beds</i> .
Dat. Cubil-i, <i>to or for a bed</i> .	Cubil-ībūs, <i>to or for beds</i> .
Abl. Cubil-i, <i>by, with, or from a bed</i> .	Cubil-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from beds</i> .

## § 18. THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

*Nominative.* The Nominative ends in -ūs and -u.

*Gender.* -us generally Masculine, -u Neuter.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.V. Ictūs, <i>a blow</i> , or <i>O blow</i> .	Ict-ūs, <i>blows</i> , or <i>O blows</i> .
Acc. Ict-um, <i>a blow</i> .	Ict-ūs, <i>blows</i> .
Gen. Ict-ūs, <i>of a blow</i> .	Ict-uum, <i>of blows</i> .
Dat. Ict-ui or -u, <i>to or for a blow</i> .	Ict-ībūs, <i>to or for blows</i> .
Abl. Ict-u, <i>by, with, or from a blow</i> .	Ict-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from blows</i> .

*Note 1.* Verbal Nouns in -tus and -sus are declined like ictus.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

N.A. Gěnu, *a knee.*Gen-uă, *knees.*Voc. Genu, *O knee.*Gen-uă, *O knees.*Gen. Gen-ūs, *of a knee.*Gen-uum, *of knees.*D.A. Gen-u, *to, for, by, with, or from a knee.*Gen-ībūs, *to, for, by, with, or from knees.*

*Note 2.* The Dat. and Abl. Pl. of the Fourth Declension are sometimes written -ūbus instead of -ibus, as, genūbus.

## § 19. THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

*Nominatīve.* The Nominative ends in -es.

*Gender.* Feminine, except dies, *a day*, which is Common in the Singular, Masculine in the Plural.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

N.V. Diēs, *a day*, or *O day.*Di-ēs, *days*, or *O days.*Acc. Di-em, *a day.*Di-ēs, *days.*Gen. Di-ēi, *of a day.*Di-ērum, *of days.*Dat. Di-ei, *to or for a day.*Di-ēbūs, *to or for days.*Abl. Di-ē, *by, with, or from a day.*Di-ēbūs, *by, &c., days.*

## § 20. ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives are divided into two classes, the First Class having flexions like those of the First and Second Declensions, and the Second Class like those of the Third Declension, of Nouns Substantive.

§ 21. **Adjectives of the First Class.** Adjectives of the First Class have three terminations to each Case, denoting the Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter Gender, as, bonus, bona, bonum, *good*; niger, nigra, nigrum, *black*. The Masculine and Neuter flexions are like those of the Second Declension of Substantives, the Feminine like those of the First.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom. Bönūs,	-ā,	-um.	Bon-i,	-ae,	-ā.
Voc. Bon-ē,	-ā,	-um.			
Acc. Bon-um,	-am,	-um.	Bon-os,	-as,	-ā.
Gen. Bon-i,	-ae,	-i.	Bon-orum,	-arum,	-orum.
Dat. Bon-o,	-ae,	-o.	Bon-is (of all Genders).		
Abl. Bon-o,	-ā,	-o.			

*Note.* Adjectives cannot stand alone but must always belong to some Substantive, as, *bonus rex*, a *good king*. When the Substantive is omitted, the word *man* must be understood with Masculine Adjectives, *woman* with Feminines, and *thing* with Neuters; as, *boni*, *good men*; *bonā*, *good things*, *goods*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.V. Nīgēr, nigr-ā,	nigr-um.		Nigr-i,	-ae,	-ā.
Acc. Nigr-um,	-am,	-um.	Nigr-os,	-as,	-ā.
Gen. Nigr-i,	-ae,	-i.	Nigr-orum,	-arum,	-orum.
Dat. Nigr-o,	-ae,	-o.	Nigr-is (of all Genders).		
Abl. Nigr-o,	-ā,	-o.			

*Note.* Some Adjectives in *-er* preserve the *e* throughout, like *puer*, as *tener*, *tenera*, *tenerum*, *tender*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.V. Tenēr,	-ā,	-um.	Tener-i,	-ae,	-ā.
Acc. Tener-um,	-am,	-um.	Tener-os,	-as,	-ā.
Gen. Tener-i,	-ae,	-i.	Tener-orum,	-arum,	-orum.
Dat. Tener-o,	-ae,	-o.	Tener-is (of all Genders).		
Abl. Tener-o,	-ā,	-o.			

Like '*tener*' are declined—*lacer*, *liber*, *asper*, *miser*, *satur*; compounds of *gero* and *fero*, as *corniger*, *frugifer*; and sometimes *dexter*<sup>1</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> *Torn, free, rough, miserable, full of food; horn-bearing, fruit-bearing; on the right hand.*

§ 22. **Adjectives of the Second Class.** Adjectives of the Second Class are called Adjectives of Two Terminations, and have flexions like those of the 3rd Decl. of Substantives; as, *tristis*, *gloomy*; *melior*, *better*; *felix*, *happy*; *ingens*, *vast*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
N.V. Tristīs,	tristě. }	Trist-ēs,	trist-iă.
Acc. Trist-em,	tristě. }		
Gen. Trist-īs.		Trist-ium.	
Dat. Trist-i.	}	Trist-ibus.	
Abl. Trist-i.			
N.V. Meliōr,	meliūs. }	Meliōr-ēs,	melior-ă.
Acc. Meliōr-em,	meliūs. }		
Gen. Meliōr-īs.		Meliōr-um.	
Dat. Meliōr-i.	}	Meliōr-ibus.	
Abl. Meliōr-ě.			
N.V. Felix.	}	Felic-ēs,	felic-iă.
Acc. Felic-em,		felix. }	
Gen. Felic-īs.		Felic-ium.	
Dat. Felic-i.	}	Felic-ibus.	
Abl. Felic-i (rarely-ě).			
N.V. Ingens.	}	Ingent-ēs,	ingent-iă.
Acc. Ingent-em,		ingens. }	
Gen. Ingent-īs.		Ingent-ium.	
Dat. Ingent-i.	}	Ingent-ibus.	
Abl. Ingent-ě (or -i).			

Some Adjectives in *-er* belong to this class, but have a Feminine form in the Nominative Singular, as, *ācer*, *keen*.

M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
N.V. <i>Acēr</i> , <i>acr-īs</i> ,	<i>acr-ē.</i>	<i>Acr-ēs</i> ,	<i>acr-iā.</i>
Acc. <i>Acr-em</i> ,	<i>acr-e.</i>	<i>Acr-ēs</i> ,	<i>acr-iā.</i>
Gen. <i>Acr-īs.</i>		<i>Acr-ium.</i>	
D.A. <i>Acr-i.</i>		<i>Acr-ibus.</i>	

Like 'acer' are declined,—alācer, celēber, equester, pedester, volūcer, salūber, celer, and a few others<sup>1</sup>. Celer keeps the e throughout, as, Sing. N.V. Celer, celēris, celēre.

§ 23. **Numeral and Quasi-Numeral Adjectives.** These for the most part make Gen. Sing. in *-ius*, and the Dat. in *-i*; as, *ūnus*, *one*; *ālius*, *another*; *ūter*, *which of two*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom. Unūs,	-ā,	-um.	Un-i,	-ae,	-ā.
Acc. Un-um	-am,	-um.	Un-os,	-as,	-ā.
Gen. Un-īus (of all Genders).			Un-orum,	-arum,	-orum.
Dat. Un-i (of all Genders).			} Un-īs (of all Genders).		
Abl. Un-o,	-a,	-o.			
Nom. Aliūs,	-ā,	-ūd.	Ali-i,	-ae,	-ā.
Acc. Ali-um,	-am,	-ud.	Ali-os,	-as,	-ā.
Gen. Ali-us (of all Genders).			Ali-orum,	-arum,	-orum.
Dat. Ali-i (of all Genders).			} Ali-īs (of all Genders).		
Abl. Ali-o,	-a,	-o.			
Nom. Uter, utr-ā, utr-um.			Utr-i,	-ae,	-ā.
Acc. Utr-um,	-am,	-um.	Utr-os,	-as,	-ā.
Gen. Utr-ius (of all Genders).			Utr-orum,	-arum,	-orum.
Dat. Utr-i (of all Genders).			} Utr-īs (of all Genders).		
Abl. Utr-o,	-a,	-o.			

The Adjectives which make *-ius* in Gen. Sing. and *-i* in Dat. are :

Unus, solus, totus, ullus,

Uter, alter, neuter, nullus<sup>2</sup>;

with *alius*, *another*, and compounds of *uter*, as *uterque*, *each of two*, the suffix *-que* being added to each of the cases, as, Sing. Nom. *uterque*, *utrāque*, *utrumque*. Those in *-us* are

<sup>1</sup> *Brisk, celebrated, equestrian, pedestrian, winged, healthful, swift.*

<sup>2</sup> *One, alone or the only, the whole, any at all; which of two, the other or one of two, neither, none.*

declined like unus, those in -er like uter. But alter keeps the e throughout, as Sing. N. alter, altēra, altērum.

Unus is only used in the Plural when it agrees with a Noun which has no Singular, or which has a different meaning in the Plural from the Singular, as, una castra, *one camp*, unae litterae, *one epistle*.

The Numerals duo, *two*, and tres, *three*, are thus declined :

PLURAL.			PLURAL.	
M.	F.	N.	M.F.	N.
Nom. Duō,	duae,	duō.	Trēs,	triā.
Acc. Du-os or duō,	du-as,	duō.	Trēs,	triā.
Gen. Du-orum,	du-arum,	du-orum.	Tr-ium.	
D.Ab. Du-ōbus,	du-ābus,	du-ōbus.	Trī-bus.	

Ambo, *both*, is declined like duo.

The other Cardinal Numbers, (see p. 133) from quattuor, *four*, to centum, *a hundred*, are indeclinable.

## § 24. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three degrees of Comparison, the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.

§ 25. **Rule for Comparison of Adjectives.** The Comparative is formed from the Positive by changing -i or -is of the Genitive into -ior.

The Superlative is formed from the Positive by changing -i or -is of the Genitive into -issimus<sup>1</sup>, as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Durus, <i>hard</i> , G. duri,	durior, <i>harder</i> ,	durissimus, <i>hardest</i> , or <i>very hard</i> .
Brevis, <i>short</i> , G. brevis,	brevior, <i>shorter</i> ,	brevissimus, <i>shortest</i> , or <i>very short</i> .
Audax, <i>bold</i> , G. audacis,	audacior, <i>bolder</i> ,	audacissimus, <i>boldest</i> , or <i>very bold</i> .

<sup>1</sup> Often written -issumus.

§ 26. **Exceptions.**

(a) *Adjectives in -er.* Adjectives in **-er** form their Comparatives according to the rule, but form their Superlatives from the *Nominative* Masculine Singular of the Positive by adding **-rĭmus**, as, *pulcher, beautiful*, Gen. *pulchri*, Comparative *pulchrior, more beautiful*, Superlative *pulcherrimus, most beautiful* or *very beautiful*.

(b) *Adjectives in -ilis.* Six Adjectives in **-ilis**, namely—

*facilis, easy, similis, like, gracilis, slender,*  
*difficilis, difficult, dissimilis, unlike, humilis, lowly,*

form their Superlative by changing **-is** of the Genitive into **-lĭmus**, as, *facilis, easy, facillimus*. Other Adjectives in **-ilis** have commonly no Superlative.

(c) **-us preceded by a Vowel.** If a vowel comes before **-us** in the *Nominative*, the comparison is generally made by the Adverbs *magis, more*, and *maxime, most*, as, *idoneus, useful, magis idoneus, more useful, maxime idoneus, most useful* or *very useful*. Except when **qu** precedes, as *antiquus, ancient, antiquior, antiquissimus*.

(d) **-dĭcus, -fĭcus, -vŏlus.** Adjectives in **-dĭcus, -fĭcus**, and **-volus**, make **-entior, -entissimus** in the Comparative and Superlative, as, *malevŏl-us, spiteful, malevol-entior, malevol-entissimus*.

§ 27. **Irregular Comparison.** Many Adjectives are compared irregularly, as :

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Bonus, <i>good</i> ,	melior,	optimus.
Malus, <i>bad</i> ,	pejor,	pessimus.
Magnus, <i>great</i> ,	major,	maximus.
Parvus, <i>small</i> ,	minor,	minimus.
Multus, <i>much</i> ,	plus,	plurimus.
Nequam, <i>worthless</i> ,	nequior,	nequissimus.

Other irregular comparisons worthy of notice are :

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Senex, <i>old</i> ,	senior, [natu major],	[natu maximus].
Juvenis, <i>young</i> ,	junior,	[natu minimus].
Dexter, <i>on the right</i> ,	dexterior,	dextimus.
Sinister, <i>on the left</i> ,	sinisterior,	sinistimus.
Sacer, <i>sacred</i> ,	. . .	sacerrimus.
Surdus, <i>deaf</i> ,	surdior	. . .

Four Adjectives derived from Prepositions have a double Superlative :

Preposition.	Positive Adjective.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Extra, <i>outside</i> ,	exterus, <i>outward</i> ,	exterior,	extrēmus and extimus.
Infra, <i>beneath</i> ,	infērus, <i>low</i> ,	inferior,	infimus and īmus.
Supra, <i>above</i> ,	supērus, <i>high</i> ,	superior,	suprēmus and summus.
Post, <i>after</i> ,	postērus, <i>next after</i> ,	posterior,	postrēmus and postūmus.

Six Adjectives derived from Prepositions have no Positive :

Preposition.	Comparative Adj.	Superlative.
Citra, <i>on this side</i> ,	citērior,	citimus.
De, <i>down from</i> ,	detērior ( <i>less good</i> ),	detrerrimus.
Intra, <i>within</i> ,	intērior,	intimus.
Prae, <i>before</i> ,	prior ( <i>former</i> ),	prīmus ( <i>first</i> ).
Prope, <i>near</i> ,	propior,	proximus.
Ultra, <i>beyond</i> ,	ultērior,	ultimus ( <i>last</i> ).

§ 28. **Comparison of Adverbs.** Adverbs derived from Adjectives usually make **-ius** in the Comparative, and **-issime** in the Superlative, as :

Digne, <i>worthily</i> ,	dignius,	dignissime.
Graviter, <i>heavily</i> ,	gravius,	gravissime.
Audacter, <i>boldly</i> ,	audacius,	audacissime.



## § 29.

## PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are (1) Personal, (2) Reflexive, (3) Possessive, (4) Demonstrative, (5) Definitive, (6) Relative, (7) Interrogative, and (8) Indefinite. Of these the Personal and Reflexive are Substantival Pronouns, the others Adjectival.

§ 30. **Personal Pronouns.** The Personal Pronouns are *ĕgō*, *I*, and *tū*, *thou* or *you*, which are thus declined :

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	<i>Egō</i> , <i>I</i> .	<i>Nos</i> , <i>we</i> .
Acc.	<i>Mē</i> , <i>me</i> .	<i>Nos</i> , <i>us</i> .
Gen.	<i>Mei</i> , <i>of me</i> .	<i>Nostrum</i> or <i>Nōstri</i> , <i>of us</i> .
Dat.	<i>Mihī</i> , <i>to</i> or <i>for me</i> .	<i>Nōbīs</i> , <i>to</i> or <i>for us</i> .
Abl.	<i>Mē</i> <sup>1</sup> , <i>by</i> , <i>with</i> , or <i>from me</i> .	<i>Nōbīs</i> <sup>1</sup> , <i>by</i> , <i>with</i> , or <i>from us</i> .
N. V.	<i>Tu</i> , <i>thou</i> or <i>you</i> .	<i>Vos</i> , <i>ye</i> or <i>you</i> .
Acc.	<i>Tē</i> , <i>thee</i> or <i>you</i> .	<i>Vos</i> , <i>you</i> .
Gen.	<i>Tui</i> , <i>of thee</i> or <i>you</i> .	<i>Vestrum</i> or <i>Vestri</i> , <i>of you</i> .
Dat.	<i>Tibī</i> , <i>to</i> or <i>for thee</i> or <i>you</i> .	<i>Vōbīs</i> , <i>to</i> or <i>for you</i> .
Abl.	<i>Tē</i> <sup>1</sup> , <i>by</i> , <i>with</i> , or <i>from thee</i> or <i>you</i> .	<i>Vōbīs</i> <sup>1</sup> , <i>by</i> , <i>with</i> , or <i>from you</i> .

*Note.* *Ille*, *illa*, *illud*, and *is*, *ea*, *id*, are often used as Personal Pronouns, and translated *he*, *she*, *it*.

§ 31. **Reflexive Pronoun.** The Reflexive Pronoun is *se*, *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, or *themselves*.

Nom.	(wanting).
Acc.	<i>Sē</i> or <i>sēsē</i> , <i>himself</i> , <i>herself</i> , <i>itself</i> , or <i>themselves</i> .
Gen.	<i>Sui</i> , <i>of himself</i> , <i>herself</i> , <i>itself</i> , <i>themselves</i> .
Dat.	<i>Sibī</i> , <i>to</i> or <i>for himself</i> , <i>herself</i> , <i>itself</i> , <i>themselves</i> .
Abl.	<i>Sē</i> <sup>1</sup> or <i>sēsē</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>with</i> , or <i>from himself</i> , etc.

§ 32. **Possessive Pronouns.** The Possessive Pronouns are *meus*, *my*, *tuus*, *thy*, *suus*, *his own*, *her own*, *its own*, or *their own*, and *cujus*, *whose*, which are declined like

<sup>1</sup> A Preposition must be used. See § 16, *Note*; and § 222.

bonus; **noster**, *our*, and **vester**, *your*, which are declined like pulcher.

*Note.* **Meus** has **mi** in the Vocative Singular Masculine. **Tuus** and **suus** have no Vocative.

§ 33. **Demonstrative Pronouns.** The Demonstrative Pronouns are **hic**, *this*, **is**, *that*, **ille**, *that*, **iste**, *that*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom. Hic,	haec,	hoc.	Hi,	hae,	haec.
Acc. Hunc,	hanc,	hoc.	Hos,	has,	haec.
Gen. Hujus (of all Genders).			Horum,	harum,	horum.
Dat. Huic (of all Genders).			} His (of all Genders).		
Abl. Hoc,	hac,	hoc.			
Nom. Is,	ea,	id.	Ii (ei),	eae,	ea.
Acc. Eum,	eam,	id.	Eos,	eas,	ea.
Gen. Ejus (of all Genders).			Eorum,	earum,	eorum.
Dat. Ei (of all Genders).			} Iis or eis (of all Genders).		
Abl. Eo,	eā,	eo.			
Nom. Ille,	illa,	illud.	Illi,	illae,	illa.
Acc. Illum,	illam,	illud.	Illos,	illas,	illa.
Gen. Illius (of all Genders).			Illorum,	illarum,	illorum.
Dat. Illi (of all Genders).			} Illis (of all Genders).		
Abl. Illo,	illā,	illo.			

**Iste** is declined like **ille**.

*Note.* **Hic** means *this near me*, or *this of mine*, **iste**, *that near you*, or *that of yours*, and **ille**, *that yonder* or *that other*.

§ 34. **Definitive Pronouns.** The Definitive Pronouns are **idem**, *the same*, and **ipse**, *self*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Idem,	eādem,	īdem.	Iidem,	eaedem,	eādem.
A. Eundem,	eandem,	īdem.	Eosdem,	easdem,	eadem.
G. Ejusdem (of all Genders).			Eorundem,	earundem,	eorundem.
D. Eīdem (of all Genders).			} Eīdem or Iīdem (of all Genders).		
A. Eodem,	eādem,	eodem.			

**Ipse** is declined like **ille**, except that it makes **ipsum** in the Neuter Nom. and Acc.

§ 35. **Relative Pronoun.** The Relative Pronoun is **qui**, *who* or *which*.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Qui,	quae,	quod.	Qui,	quae,	quae.
Acc.	Quem,	quam,	quod.	Quos,	quas,	quae.
Gen.	Cujus (of all Genders).			Quorum,	quarum,	quorum.
Dat.	Cui (of all Genders).			Quibus <i>or</i> queis <i>or</i> quīs (of all Genders).		
Abl.	{ Quo,	quā,	quo.			
	{ Qui,	qui,	qui.			

§ 36. **Interrogative Pronoun.** The Interrogative Pronoun is Nom. **quis**, (*quis*), **quid**, *who?* or *what?* declined in the other cases like **qui**, except that it makes **quid** instead of **quod** in the Neuter. If it agrees with a Substantive the form is **qui**, **quae**, **quod**, declined exactly like **qui**.

§ 37. **Indefinite Pronoun.** The Indefinite Pronoun is Nom. **quis**, (*qua*), **quid**, *any*, declined in the other cases like **qui**, except that it makes **quid** instead of **quod** in the Neuter Singular, and **quā** or **quae** in the Neuter Plural. If it agrees with a Substantive the form is **qui**, **quae** (or **quā**), **quod**, declined exactly like the Relative **qui**, except Neuter Plural **quā** or **quae**. See also § 166.

## THE VERB.

§ 38. **Voice.** Verbs have two Voices, the Active, as, *amo, I love*; the Passive, as, *amor, I am loved*.

§ 39. **Transitive and Intransitive Verbs.** Transitive Verbs are those in which the action passes on directly to some person or thing, which is called the Object, as, *amo te, I love thee*. Intransitive or Neuter Verbs are those in which the action does not pass on directly to an Object, as, *sto, I stand*. Intransitive Verbs have no Passive Voice, except in what is

called the Impersonal Passive Construction, as, *statur, it is stood, or a stand is made.*

§ 40. **Deponents.** Deponent Verbs are Passive in form but *lay aside* (depono) the Passive meaning, as, *hortor, I exhort.*

§ 41. **Moods.** There are four Moods, the Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive. The first three constitute the Verb Finite, the last one the Verb Infinite.

§ 42. **Tenses.** There are Seven Tenses, four Primary, namely, the Present, Future Simple, Perfect, Future Perfect; and three Historic, namely, the Imperfect, Aorist, and Pluperfect. (For a Synopsis of Tense meanings, and comparison of the forms in Greek, French, &c., see p. 67.)

§ 43. **Number and Person.** There are in each Tense two Numbers, Singular and Plural, and in each Number three Persons, First, Second, and Third.

§ 44. **Conjugation.** Verbs have four different kinds of Flexion, which are called the Four Conjugations.

The First takes *-āre* in the Infin. Mood, as, *amāre, to love.*

The Second takes *-ēre* in the Infin. Mood, as, *monēre, to advise.*

The Third takes *-ĕre* in the Infin. Mood, as, *regĕre, to rule.*

The Fourth takes *-īre* in the Infin. Mood, as, *audīre, to hear.*

§ 45. **Principal Parts of the Verb.** The parts of the Verb from which all the other Tenses may be formed are the Present, Perfect, and Supine in *-um*. These, together with the Infinitive Mood, are to be named when the principal parts of a Verb are required, e.g.:

	Pres. Indic.	Infinitive.	Perfect Indic.	Supine.
1st Conj.	Amo,	amāre,	amāvi,	amātum.
2nd Conj.	Moneo,	monēre,	monui,	monitum.
3rd Conj.	Rego,	regĕre,	rexī,	rectum.
4th Conj.	Audio,	audīre,	audīvi,	audītum.

§ 46. **The Verb Sum, Esse, Fui, to be.** Before other Verbs are conjugated it is necessary to learn the Auxiliary Verb *sum, esse, fui, to be.*

## § 47. INDICATIVE MOOD.

### Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p><i>S. sum, I am.</i>  <i>ēs, Thou art.</i>  <i>est, He is.</i> [See also § 61.]  <i>P. sūmus, We are.</i>  <i>estis, Ye are.</i>  <i>sunt, They are.</i></p>
FUTURE- SIMPLE TENSE.	<p><i>S. ēro, I shall be.</i>  <i>eris, Thou wilt be.</i>  <i>erit, He will be.</i>  <i>P. erīmus, We shall be.</i>  <i>erītis, Ye will be.</i>  <i>erunt, They will be.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. fūi, I have been.</i>  <i>fuisti, Thou hast been.</i>  <i>fuit, He has been.</i>  <i>P. fuīmus, We have been.</i>  <i>fuistis, Ye have been.</i>  <i>fuērunt or fuēre, They have been.</i></p>
FUTURE- PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. fūēro, I shall have been.</i>  <i>fueris, Thou wilt have been.</i>  <i>fuerit, He will have been.</i>  <i>P. fuerīmus, We shall have been.</i>  <i>fuerītis, Ye will have been.</i>  <i>fuerint, They will have been.</i></p>

INDICATIVE MOOD (*continued*).

## Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. <i>eram, I was.</i>  <i>eras, Thou wast.</i>  <i>erat, He was.</i></p> <p>P. <i>erāmus, We were.</i>  <i>eratis, Ye were.</i>  <i>erant, They were.</i></p>
AORIST TENSE.	<p>S. <i>fui, I was.</i>  <i>fuiſti, Thou waſt.</i>  <i>fuit, He was.</i></p> <p>P. <i>fuīmus, We were.</i>  <i>fuiſtis, Ye were.</i>  <i>fuērunt or fuēre, They were.</i></p>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. <i>fūeram, I had been.</i>  <i>fueras, Thou haſt been.</i>  <i>fuerat, He had been.</i></p> <p>P. <i>fuerāmus, We had been.</i>  <i>fueratis, Ye had been.</i>  <i>fuerant, They had been.</i></p>

*Note.* The Pronoun *you* may be used to translate both the Second Person Singular, and the Second Person Plural.

SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
Primary Tenses.		
PRESENT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> sim, <i>I may be</i>, or <i>may I be</i>.  sis, <i>Thou mayst be</i>, or <i>mayst thou be</i>.  sit, <i>He may be</i>, or <i>may he be</i>.</p> <p><i>P.</i> simus, <i>We may be</i>, or <i>may we be</i>.  sitis, <i>Ye may be</i>, or <i>may ye be</i>.  sint, <i>They may be</i>, or <i>may they be</i>.</p>	But often translated as a Present Indicative.
FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.	<p>The Future Simple in this mood is formed by combining the Future Participle with <i>sim</i> or <i>essem</i>, as <i>futurus sim</i> or <i>essem</i><sup>1</sup>. (The form <i>futurus essem</i> belongs to the Historic Tenses.) The Tense is thus declined—</p> <p><i>S.</i> futurus sim or essem.<sup>2</sup>  futurus sis or esses.  futurus sit or esset.</p> <p><i>P.</i> futuri simus or essēmus.  futuri sitis or essetis.  futuri sint or essent.</p>	
PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> fūērīm, <i>I may have been</i>.  fueris, <i>Thou mayst have been</i>.  fuerit, <i>He may have been</i>.</p> <p><i>P.</i> fuerīmus, <i>We may have been</i>.  fuerītis, <i>Ye may have been</i>.  fuerint, <i>They may have been</i>.</p>	But often translated as a Perfect or Aorist Indicative.

<sup>1</sup> Or, more properly, futur-us, -ā, -um sim or essem. See § 61.

<sup>2</sup> No English translation which will be of any use to the learner can be given for this Tense. Where it occurs in Latin it is translated either by a Simple Future Indicative, as, incertum est an in urbe futurus sit, *it is uncertain whether he will be in the city*, or by *would*, as, incertum erat an in urbē futurus esset, *it was uncertain whether he would be in the city*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD (*continued*).

## Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> essem,<sup>1</sup> <i>I should or might be.</i>  esses, <i>Thou wouldst or mightst be.</i>  esset, <i>He would or might be.</i></p> <p><i>P.</i> essēmus, <i>We should or might be.</i>  essētis, <i>Ye would or might be.</i>  essent, <i>They would or might be.</i></p>	<p>But often translated as an Imperfect or Aorist Indicative.</p>
AORIST TENSE.	<p>Rendered variously by <i>fuerim</i>, <i>essem</i>, and <i>fuissem</i>.  See §§ 205, 206.</p>	
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> fuissem, <i>I should or might</i>  fuisses, <i>Thou wouldst or mightst</i>  fuisset, <i>He would or might</i></p> <p><i>P.</i> fuissēmus, <i>We should or might</i>  fuissētis, <i>Ye would or might</i>  fuissent, <i>They would or might</i></p>	<p>But often translated as a Pluperfect Indicative.</p>

<sup>1</sup> Another form of the Imperfect is *fōrem*, *fores*, *foret*, *foremus*, *foretis*, *forent*.



## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT  
TENSE.*Sing.* 2 Pers. es, *be thou*, esto, *thou must be*.3 Pers. esto, *he must be*.*Plur.* 2 Pers. este, *be ye*, estōte, *ye must be*.3 Pers. suntō, *they must be*.

*Note 1.* The forms esto, esto, estote, suntō, are sometimes reckoned as Future Imperatives.

*Note 2.* The Present Subjunctive is often used in a Present Imperative sense, as, sit, *let him be*, simus, *let us be*, sint, *let them be*.

## VERB INFINITE.

Infinitive  
Mood.PRESENT AND  
IMPERFECT, } esse, *to be*.PERFECT AND  
PLUPERFECT, } fuisse, *to have been*.FUTURE, } fōre or fūtūrus } *to be about*  
esse, } *to be*.Participle. FUTURE, fūtūrus, *about to be*.

*Compounds of Sum.* Like sum are conjugated its compounds,

absum, *I am absent.*

obsum, *I am in the way.*

adsum, *I am present.*

praesum, *I am set over.*

desum, *I am wanting.*

prosum, *I am of use.*

insum, *I am in.*

subsum, *I am under.*

intersum, *I am present.*

supersum, *I am surviving.*

Subsum wants the Perfect, and tenses derived from it. Prosum inserts *d* before *e*, as Ind. Pres. prosum, prodes, prodest, prosumus, prodestis, prosunt. Possum [for potis sum], *to be able*, will be fully conjugated hereafter (see p. 68). Absum and praesum alone have Present Participles, absens and praesens.

### EXAMPLES.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>
S. ab-sum.	de-fui.	in-eram.
ab-es.	de-fuisti.	in-eras.
ab-est.	de-fuit.	in-erat.
P. ab-sūmus.	de-fuimus.	in-erāmus.
ab-estis.	de-fuistis.	in-eratis.
ab-sunt.	de-fuēr-unt, or -ēre.	in-erant.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

S. ob-sim.	prae-fuerim.	prod-essem.
ob-sis.	prae-fueris.	prod-esses.
ob-sit.	prae-fuerit.	prod-esset.
P. ob-sīmus.	prae-fuerīmus.	prod-essēmus.
ob-sitis.	prae-fuerītis.	prod-essetis.
ob-sint.	prae-fuerint.	prod-essent.

## § 48. FIRST CONJUGATION. ACTIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p>S. <i>ăm-o, I love, am loving, or do love.</i>  <i>am-as, Thou lovest, art loving, or dost love.</i>  <i>am-at, He loves, is loving, or does love.</i></p> <p>P. <i>am-āmus, We love, are loving, or do love.</i>  <i>am-atis, Ye love, are loving, or do love.</i>  <i>am-ant, They love, are loving, or do love.</i></p>
FUTURE- SIMPLE TENSE.	<p>S. <i>am-ābo, I shall love.</i>  <i>am-abis, Thou wilt love.</i>  <i>am-abit, He will love.</i></p> <p>P. <i>am-abīmus, We shall love.</i>  <i>am-abītis, Ye will love.</i>  <i>am-abunt, They will love.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. <i>amāv-i, I have loved.</i>  <i>amav-isti, Thou hast loved.</i>  <i>amav-it, He has loved.</i></p> <p>P. <i>amav-īmus, We have loved.</i>  <i>amav-istis, Ye have loved.</i>  <i>amav-ērunt or -ēre, They have loved.</i></p>
FUTURE- PERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. <i>amāv-ēro, I shall have loved.</i>  <i>amav-eris, Thou wilt have loved.</i>  <i>amav-erit, He will have loved.</i></p> <p>P. <i>amav-erīmus, We shall have loved.</i>  <i>amav-erītis, Ye will have loved.</i>  <i>amav-erint, They will have loved.</i></p>

INDICATIVE MOOD (*continued*).

## Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. am-ābam, <i>I was loving</i>, or <i>I loved</i>.<sup>1</sup>  am-abas, <i>Thou wast loving</i>, or <i>thou lovedst</i>.  am-abat, <i>He was loving</i>, or <i>he loved</i>.  P. am-abāmus, <i>We were loving</i>, etc.  am-abatis, <i>Ye were loving</i>.  am-abant, <i>They were loving</i>.</p>
AORIST TENSE.	<p>S. amāv-i, <i>I loved</i>, or <i>did love</i>.  amav-isti, <i>Thou lovedst</i>, or <i>didst love</i>.  amav-it, <i>He loved</i>, or <i>did love</i>.  P. amav-īmus, <i>We loved</i>, etc.  amav-istis, <i>Ye loved</i>.  amav-ērunt or -ēre, <i>They loved</i>.</p>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. amāv-ēram, <i>I had loved</i>.  amav-eras, <i>Thou hadst loved</i>.  amav-erat, <i>He had loved</i>.  P. amav-erāmus, <i>We had loved</i>.  amav-eratis, <i>Ye had loved</i>.  amav-erant, <i>They had loved</i>.</p>

<sup>1</sup> See also § 64.

SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
Primary Tenses.		
PRESENT TENSE.	<i>S. am-em, I may love, or may I love.</i> <i>am-es, Thou mayst love, etc.</i> <i>am-et, He may love.</i> <i>P. am-ēmus, We may love.</i> <i>am-etis, Ye may love.</i> <i>am-ent, They may love.</i>	But often translated as a Present Indicative.
PERFECT TENSE.	<i>S. amav-ĕrim, I may</i> <i>amav-eris, Thou mayst</i> <i>amav-erit, He may</i> <i>P. amav-erĭmus, We may</i> <i>amav-erĭtis, Ye may</i> <i>amav-erint, They may</i>	<i>have loved.</i> But often translated as a Perfect or Aorist Indicative.
Historic Tenses.		
IMPERFECT TENSE.	<i>S. am-ārem, I should or might love.</i> <i>am-ares, Thou wouldst love, etc.</i> <i>am-aret, He would love.</i> <i>P. am-arēmus, We should love.</i> <i>am-aretis, Ye would love.</i> <i>am-arent, They would love.</i>	But often translated as an Imperfect or Aorist Indicative.
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<i>S. amav-issem, I</i> <i>amav-isses, Thou</i> <i>amav-isset, He</i> <i>P. amav-issēmus, We</i> <i>amav-issetis, Ye</i> <i>amav-issent, They</i>	<i>should or might have loved.</i> But often translated as a Pluperfect Indicative.

*Future Simple Tense.* The Future Simple in this Mood is formed by combining the Future Participle with *sim* or *essem*, as *amaturus sim* or *essem*. The form with *sim* belongs to the Primary Tenses, the form with *essem* to the Historic.

*Aorist Tense.* The Aorist Subjunctive is rendered variously by *amaverim*, *amarem*, and *amavissem*. See §§ 205, 206.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	S. 2 Pers. am-ā, <i>love thou</i> , am-āto, <i>thou must love</i> .
	3 Pers. am-āto, <i>he must love</i> .
	P. 2 Pers. am-āte, <i>love ye</i> , am-ātōte, <i>ye must love</i>
	3 Pers. am-anto, <i>they must love</i> .

*Note 1.* The forms amato, amato, amatote, amanto are sometimes reckoned as Future Imperatives.

*Note 2.* The Present Subjunctive is often used in a Present Imperative sense, as, amet, *let him love*, amemus, *let us love*, ament, *let them love*.

## VERB INFINITE.

Infinitive Mood.	{ PRESENT AND IMPERFECT, }	ām-āre, <i>to love</i> (or <i>loving</i> , in the sense of 'the act of loving.')
	{ PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT, }	amāv-isse, <i>to have loved</i> .
	{ FUTURE, }	amātūrus esse, <i>to be about to love</i> .
Gerunds.	{ ACCUSATIVE, }	am-andum, <i>loving</i> .
	{ GENITIVE, }	am-andi, <i>of loving</i> .
	{ DAT. ABL., }	am-ando, <i>for or by loving</i> .
Supines.	{ in -um }	am-ātum, <i>in order to love</i> .
	{ in -u }	am-ātu, <i>in loving</i> .
Participles.	{ PRESENT, }	am-ans, <i>loving</i> (declined like ingens).
	{ PERFECT, }	(wanting, see § 302.)
	{ FUTURE, }	am-ātūrus, <i>about to love</i> .

## § 49. SECOND CONJUGATION. ACTIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p>S. mōn-eo, <i>I advise, am advising, or do advise.</i>  mon-es, <i>Thou advisest, art advising, or dost</i>  mon-et, <i>He advises, etc.</i> [advise.</p> <p>P. mon-ēmus, <i>We advise.</i>  mon-etis, <i>Ye advise.</i>  mon-ent, <i>They advise.</i></p>
FUTURE- SIMPLE TENSE.	<p>S. mon-ēbo, <i>I shall advise.</i>  mon-ebis, <i>Thou wilt advise.</i>  mon-ebit, <i>He will advise.</i></p> <p>P. mon-ebīmus, <i>We shall advise.</i>  mon-ebitis, <i>Ye will advise.</i>  mon-ebunt, <i>They will advise.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. monŭ-i, <i>I have advised.</i>  monu-isti, <i>Thou hast advised.</i>  monu-it, <i>He has advised.</i></p> <p>P. monu-īmus, <i>We have advised.</i>  monu-istis, <i>Ye have advised.</i>  monu-ērunt or -ēre, <i>They have advised.</i></p>
FUTURE- PERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. monŭ-ěro, <i>I shall have advised.</i>  monu-eris, <i>Thou wilt have advised.</i>  monu-erit, <i>He will have advised.</i></p> <p>P. monu-erīmus, <i>We shall have advised.</i>  monu-eritis, <i>Ye will have advised.</i>  monu-erint, <i>They will have advised.</i></p>

INDICATIVE MOOD (*continued*).

## Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. mon-ēbam, <i>I was advising</i> or <i>I advised</i>.  mon-ebas, <i>Thou wast advising</i>, etc.  mon-ebat, <i>He was advising</i>.</p> <p>P. mon-ebāmus, <i>We were advising</i>.  mon-ebatis, <i>Ye were advising</i>.  mon-ebant, <i>They were advising</i>.</p>
AORIST TENSE.	<p>S. monŭ-i, <i>I advised</i> or <i>did advise</i>.  monu-isti, <i>Thou advisedst</i>, etc.  monu-it, <i>He advised</i>.</p> <p>P. monu-īmus, <i>We advised</i>.  monu-istis, <i>Ye advised</i>.  monu-ērunt or -ēre, <i>They advised</i>.</p>
PLUPER- FECT TENSE.	<p>S. monŭ-ēram, <i>I had advised</i>.  monu-eras, <i>Thou hadst advised</i>.  monu-erat, <i>He had advised</i>.</p> <p>P. monu-erāmus, <i>We had advised</i>.  monu-eratis, <i>Ye had advised</i>.  monu-erant, <i>They had advised</i>.</p>



SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
Primary Tenses.	
PRESENT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> mon-ĕam, <i>I may advise or may I advise.</i>  mon-eas, <i>Thou mayst advise, etc.</i>  mon-eat, <i>He may advise.</i></p> <p><i>P.</i> mon-eāmus, <i>We may advise.</i>  mon-eatis, <i>Ye may advise.</i>  mon-eant, <i>They may advise.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> monŭ-ĕrim, <i>I may have advised.</i>  monu-eris, <i>Thou mayst have advised.</i>  monu-erit, <i>He may have advised.</i></p> <p><i>P.</i> monu-erīmus, <i>We may have advised.</i>  monu-erītis, <i>Ye may have advised.</i>  monu-erint, <i>They may have advised.</i></p>
Historic Tenses.	
IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> mon-ĕrem, <i>I should or might advise.</i>  mon-eres, <i>Thou wouldst advise, etc.</i>  mon-eret, <i>He would advise.</i></p> <p><i>P.</i> mon-erēmus, <i>We should advise.</i>  mon-eretis, <i>Ye would advise.</i>  mon-erent, <i>They would advise.</i></p>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> monŭ-isse, <i>I should or might have advised.</i>  monu-isses, <i>Thou wouldst have advised, etc.</i>  monu-isset, <i>He would have advised.</i></p> <p><i>P.</i> monu-issēmus, <i>We should have advised.</i>  monu-issetis, <i>Ye would have advised.</i>  monu-issent, <i>They would have advised.</i></p>

*Future Simple Tense.* The Future Simple in this Mood is formed by combining the Future Participle with *sim* or *essem*, as *moniturus sim* or *essem*. The form with *sim* belongs to the Primary Tenses, the form with *essem* to the Historic.

*Aorist Tense.* The Aorist Subjunctive is rendered variously by *monuerim*, *monērem*, and *monuissē*. See §§ 205. 206.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	S. 2 Pers. mon-ē, <i>advise thou</i> , mon-ēto, <i>thou must advise</i> .
	3 Pers. mon-ēto, <i>he must advise</i> .
	P. 2 Pers. mon-ēte, <i>advise ye</i> , mon-ētōte, <i>ye must advise</i> .
	3 Pers. mon-ento, <i>they must advise</i> .

*Note 1.* The forms moneto, moneto, monetote, monento are sometimes reckoned as Future Imperatives.

*Note 2.* The Present Subjunctive is often used in a Present Imperative sense, as, moneat, *let him advise*, moneamus, *let us advise*, moneant, *let them advise*.

## VERB INFINITIVE.

Infinitive Mood.	{ PRESENT AND IMPERFECT, }	mon-ēre, <i>to advise</i> (or <i>advising</i> in the sense of 'the act of advising').
	{ PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT, }	monŭ-isse, <i>to have advised</i> .
	FUTURE,	mon-ītŭrus esse, <i>to be about to advise</i> .
Gerunds.	ACCUSATIVE,	mon-endum, <i>advising</i> .
	GENITIVE,	mon-endi, <i>of advising</i> .
	DAT. ABL.,	mon-endo, <i>for or by advising</i> .
Supines.	{ in -um }	mon-ītum, <i>in order to advise</i> .
	{ in -u }	mon-ītu, <i>in advising</i> .
Participles.	PRESENT,	mon-ens, <i>advising</i> (declined like ingens).
	PERFECT,	(wanting, see § 302).
	FUTURE,	mon-ītŭrus, <i>about to advise</i> .

## § 50. THIRD CONJUGATION. ACTIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p>S. rēg-o, <i>I rule, am ruling, or do rule.</i>  reg-is, <i>Thou rulest, art ruling, or dost rule.</i>  reg-it, <i>He rules, is ruling, or does rule.</i></p> <p>P. reg-īmus, <i>We rule, are ruling, or do rule.</i>  reg-itis, <i>Ye rule, are ruling, or do rule.</i>  reg-unt, <i>They rule, are ruling, or do rule.</i></p>
FUTURE- SIMPLE TENSE.	<p>S. reg-am, <i>I shall rule.</i>  reg-es, <i>Thou wilt rule.</i>  reg-et, <i>He will rule.</i></p> <p>P. reg-ēmus, <i>We shall rule.</i>  reg-etis, <i>Ye will rule.</i>  reg-ent, <i>They will rule.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. rex-i, <i>I have ruled.</i>  rex-isti, <i>Thou hast ruled.</i>  rex-it, <i>He has ruled.</i></p> <p>P. rex-īmus, <i>We have ruled.</i>  rex-istis, <i>Ye have ruled.</i>  rex-ērunt or -ēre, <i>They have ruled.</i></p>
FUTURE- PERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. rex-ěro, <i>I shall have ruled.</i>  rex-eris, <i>Thou wilt have ruled.</i>  rex-erit, <i>He will have ruled.</i></p> <p>P. rex-erīmus, <i>We shall have ruled.</i>  rex-eritis, <i>Ye will have ruled.</i>  rex-erint, <i>They will have ruled.</i></p>

INDICATIVE MOOD (*continued*).

## Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> reg-ēbam, <i>I was ruling</i>, or <i>I ruled</i>.  reg-ebas, <i>Thou wast ruling</i>, etc.  reg-ebat, <i>He was ruling</i>.</p> <p><i>P.</i> reg-ebāmus, <i>We were ruling</i>.  reg-ebatis, <i>Ye were ruling</i>.  reg-ebant, <i>They were ruling</i>.</p>
AORIST TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> rex-i, <i>I ruled</i> or <i>did rule</i>.  rex-isti, <i>Thou ruledst</i>, etc.  rex-it, <i>He ruled</i>.</p> <p><i>P.</i> rex-īmus, <i>We ruled</i>.  rex-istis, <i>Ye ruled</i>.  rex-ērunt or -ēre, <i>They ruled</i>.</p>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> rex-eram, <i>I had ruled</i>.  rex-eras, <i>Thou hadst ruled</i>.  rex-erat, <i>He had ruled</i>.</p> <p><i>P.</i> rex-erāmus, <i>We had ruled</i>.  rex-eratis, <i>Ye had ruled</i>.  rex-erant, <i>They had ruled</i>.</p>

*Note on verbs in -io.* Certain Verbs of the Third Conjugation end in *-io* in the First Person Present Indicative, as *capio*, *I take*, *facio*, *I make*, *fugio*, *I fly*, etc.<sup>1</sup> These retain the *i* except before *i*, final *e*, and short *er*, as Pres. Indic. *fugi-o*, *fug-is*, *fug-it*, *fug-īmus*, *fug-ītis*, *fugi-unt*; Future Indic. *fugi-am*; Pres. Imperative, *fug-e*; Imperf. Subj. *fugērem*; Present Infinitive, *fug-ēre*.

<sup>1</sup> The others are, *cupio*, *desire*, *todio*, *dig*, *jacio*, *throw*, *pario*, *bring forth*, *quatio*, *shake*, *rapio*, *seize*, *sapio*, *savour*, and their compounds; also compounds of the unused verbs, *lacio*, *entice*, and *specio*, *behold*. For *gradior*, *morior*, *orior*, *patior*, *potior*, see page 66.

## SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p>S. reg-am, <i>I may rule, or may I rule.</i>  reg-as, <i>Thou mayst rule, or mayst thou rule.</i>  reg-at, <i>He may rule, or may he rule.</i>  P. reg-āmus, <i>We may rule, or may we rule.</i>  reg-atis, <i>Ye may rule, or may ye rule.</i>  reg-ant, <i>They may rule, or may they rule.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. rex-ĕrim, <i>I may have ruled.</i>  rex-eris, <i>Thou mayst have ruled.</i>  rex-erit, <i>He may have ruled.</i>  P. rex-erīmus, <i>We may have ruled.</i>  rex-eritis, <i>Ye may have ruled.</i>  rex-erint, <i>They may have ruled.</i></p>

## Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. reg-ĕrem, <i>I should or might rule.</i>  reg-eres, <i>Thou wouldst rule, etc.</i>  reg-eret, <i>He would rule.</i>  P. reg-erēmus, <i>We should rule.</i>  reg-eretis, <i>Ye would rule.</i>  reg-erent, <i>They would rule.</i></p>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. rex-issem, <i>I should or might have ruled.</i>  rex-isses, <i>Thou wouldst have ruled, etc.</i>  rex-isset, <i>He would have ruled.</i>  P. rex-issēmus, <i>We should have ruled.</i>  rex-issetis, <i>Ye would have ruled.</i>  rex-issent, <i>They would have ruled.</i></p>

*Future Simple Tense.* The Future Simple in this Mood is formed by combining the Future Participle with *sim* or *essem*, as *recturus sim* or *essem*. The form with *sim* belongs to the Primary Tenses, the form with *essem* to the Historic.

*Aorist Tense.* The Aorist Subjunctive is rendered variously by *rexerim* *rexerem* and *rexissem*. See §§ 205-206.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	S. 2 Pers. reg-ě, <i>rule thou</i> , reg-ito, <i>thou must rule</i> .
	3 Pers. reg-ito, <i>he must rule</i> .
	P. 2 Pers. reg-ite, <i>rule ye</i> , reg-ītōte, <i>ye must rule</i> .
	3 Pers. reg-unto, <i>they must rule</i> .

*Note 1.* The forms regito, regito, regitote, regunto are sometimes reckoned as Future Imperatives.

*Note 2.* The Present Subjunctive is often used in a Present Imperative sense, as, regat, *let him rule*, regamus, *let us rule*, regant, *let them rule*.

## VERB INFINITIVE.

Infinitive Mood.	PRESENT AND IMPERFECT,	reg-ěre, <i>to rule</i> (or <i>ruling</i> , in the sense of 'the act of ruling').
	PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT,	rex-isse, <i>to have ruled</i> .
	FUTURE,	rect-ūrus esse, <i>to be about to rule</i> .
Gerunds.	ACCUSATIVE,	reg-endum, <i>ruling</i> .
	GENITIVE,	reg-endi, <i>of ruling</i> .
	DAT. ABL.	reg-endo, <i>for or by ruling</i> .
Supines.	in -um	rect-um, <i>in order to rule</i> .
	in -u	rect-u, <i>in ruling</i> .
Participles.	PRESENT,	reg-ens, <i>ruling</i> (declined like ingens).
	PERFECT,	(wanting, see § 302.)
	FUTURE,	rect-ūrus, <i>about to rule</i> .

## § 51. FOURTH CONJUGATION. ACTIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p>S. aud-īo, <i>I hear, am hearing, or do hear.</i>          aud-is, <i>Thou hearest, art hearing, or dost</i>          aud-it, <i>He hears, etc.</i> [hear.</p> <p>P. aud-īmus, <i>We hear.</i>          aud-itis, <i>Ye hear.</i>          aud-iunt, <i>They hear.</i></p>
FUTURE- SIMPLE TENSE.	<p>S. aud-īam, <i>I shall hear.</i>          aud-ies, <i>Thou wilt hear.</i>          aud-iet, <i>He will hear.</i></p> <p>P. aud-iēmus, <i>We shall hear.</i>          aud-ietis, <i>Ye will hear.</i>          aud-ient, <i>They will hear.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. audiv-i, <i>I have heard.</i>          audiv-isti, <i>Thou hast heard.</i>          audiv-it, <i>He has heard.</i></p> <p>P. audiv-īmus, <i>We have heard.</i>          audiv-istis, <i>Ye have heard.</i>          audiv-ērunt or -ēre, <i>They have heard.</i></p>
FUTURE- PERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. audiv-ĕro, <i>I shall have heard.</i>          audiv-eris, <i>Thou wilt have heard.</i>          audiv-erit, <i>He will have heard.</i></p> <p>P. audiv-erīmus, <i>We shall have heard.</i>          audiv-eritis, <i>Ye will have heard.</i>          audiv-erint, <i>They will have heard.</i></p>

INDICATIVE MOOD (*continued*).

## Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. aud-iēbam, <i>I was hearing, or I heard.</i>          aud-iebas, <i>Thou wast hearing, etc.</i>          aud-iebat, <i>He was hearing.</i></p> <p>P. aud-iebāmus, <i>We were hearing.</i>          aud-iebatis, <i>Ye were hearing.</i>          aud-iebant, <i>They were hearing.</i></p>
AORIST TENSE.	<p>S. audiv-i, <i>I heard or did hear.</i>          audiv-isti, <i>Thou heardest, etc.</i>          audiv-it, <i>He heard.</i></p> <p>P. audiv-īmus, <i>We heard.</i>          audiv-istis, <i>Ye heard.</i>          audiv-ērunt or -ēre, <i>They heard.</i></p>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. audiv-ēram, <i>I had heard.</i>          audiv-eras, <i>Thou hadst heard.</i>          audiv-erat, <i>He had heard.</i></p> <p>P. audiv-erāmus, <i>We had heard.</i>          audiv-eratis, <i>Ye had heard.</i>          audiv-erant, <i>They had heard.</i></p>



SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD. Primary Tenses.	
PRESENT TENSE.	S. aud-īam, <i>I may hear, or may I hear.</i> aud-ias, <i>Thou mayst hear, or mayst thou hear.</i> aud-iat, <i>He may hear, or may he hear.</i> P. aud-iāmus, <i>We may hear, or may we hear.</i> aud-iatis, <i>Ye may hear, or may ye hear.</i> aud-iant, <i>They may hear, or may they hear.</i>
PERFECT TENSE.	S. audīv-ērim, <i>I may have heard.</i> audiv-eris, <i>Thou mayst have heard.</i> audiv-erit, <i>He may have heard.</i> P. audiv-erīmus, <i>We may have heard.</i> audiv-erītis, <i>Ye may have heard.</i> audiv-erint, <i>They may have heard.</i>
Historic Tenses.	
IMPERFECT TENSE.	S. aud-īrem, <i>I should or might hear.</i> aud-ires, <i>Thou shouldst hear, etc.</i> aud-iret, <i>He would hear.</i> P. aud-irēmus, <i>We should hear.</i> aud-iretis, <i>Ye would hear.</i> aud-irent, <i>They would hear.</i>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	S. audiv-issem, <i>I should or might have heard.</i> audiv-isses, <i>Thou wouldst have heard, etc.</i> audiv-isset, <i>He would have heard.</i> P. audiv-issēmus, <i>We should have heard.</i> audiv-issetis, <i>Ye would have heard.</i> audiv-issent, <i>They would have heard.</i>

*Future Simple Tense.* The Future Simple in this Mood is formed by combining the Future Participle with *sim* or *essem*, as *auditurus sim* or *essem*. The form with *sim* belongs to the Primary Tenses, the form with *essem* to the Historic.

*Aorist Tense.* The Aorist Subjunctive is rendered variously by *audivērim*, *audirem*, and *audivissem*. See §§ 205, 206.

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

<b>PRESENT TENSE.</b>	<i>S.</i> 2 Pers. aud-i, <i>hear thou</i> , aud-īto, <i>thou must hear.</i>
	3 Pers.                      aud-īto, <i>he must hear.</i>
	<i>P.</i> 2 Pers. aud-īte, <i>hear ye</i> , aud-ītōte, <i>ye must hear.</i>
	3 Pers.                      aud-iunto, <i>they must hear.</i>

*Note 1.* The forms *audito*, *audito*, *auditote*, *audiunto* are sometimes reckoned as Future Imperatives.

*Note 2.* The Present Subjunctive is often used in a Present Imperative sense, as, *audiat*, *let him hear*, *audiamus*, *let us hear*, *audiant*, *let them hear*.

**VERB INFINITIVE.**

<b>Infinitive Mood.</b>	{ PRESENT AND IMPERFECT, }	aud-īre, <i>to hear</i> (or <i>hearing</i> in the sense of 'the act of hearing').
	{ PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT, }	audīv-isse, <i>to have heard.</i>
	{ FUTURE, }	audītūrus esse, <i>to be about to hear.</i>
<b>Gerunds.</b>	{ ACCUSATIVE, }	aud-īendum, <i>hearing.</i>
	{ GENITIVE, }	aud-īendi, <i>of hearing.</i>
	{ DAT. ABL., }	aud-īendo, <i>for or by hearing.</i>
<b>Supines.</b>	{ in -um, }	aud-ītum, <i>in order to hear.</i>
	{ in -u, }	aud-ītu, <i>in hearing.</i>
<b>Participles.</b>	{ PRESENT, }	aud-īens, <i>hearing</i> (declined like <i>ingens</i> ).
	{ PERFECT, }	(wanting, see § 302.)
	{ FUTURE, }	aud-ītūrus, <i>about to hear.</i>

## § 52. FIRST CONJUGATION. PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Primary Tenses.

PRESENT  
TENSE.

S. *ăm-or, I am loved or am being loved.*  
*am-āris or -ārē, Thou art loved, etc.*  
*am-atur, He is loved.*

P. *am-amur, We are loved.*  
*am-amīni, Ye are loved.*  
*am-antur, They are loved.*

FUTURE-  
SIMPLE  
TENSE.

S. *am-ābor, I shall be loved.*  
*am-abēris or -abēre, Thou wilt be loved.*  
*am-abitur, He will be loved.*

P. *am-abimur, We shall be loved.*  
*am-abimīni, Ye will be loved.*  
*am-abuntur, They will be loved.*

PERFECT  
TENSE

S. *am-ātus sum<sup>1</sup>, I have been loved.*  
*am-atus es, Thou hast been loved.*  
*am-atus est, He has been loved.*

P. *am-ati sūmus, We have been loved.*  
*am-ati estis, Ye have been loved.*  
*am-ati sunt, They have been loved.*

FUTURE-  
PERFECT  
TENSE.

S. *am-atus ěro<sup>2</sup>, I shall have been loved.*  
*am-atus eris, Thou wilt have been loved.*  
*am-atus erit, He will have been loved.*

P. *am-ati erīmus, We shall have been loved.*  
*am-ati erītis, Ye will have been loved.*  
*am-ati erunt, They will have been loved.*

<sup>1</sup> or fui, etc.<sup>2</sup> or fuěro, etc.

INDICATIVE MOOD (*continued*).

## Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. am-ābar, <i>I was being loved, or I was loved.</i>  am-abāris or -abāre, <i>Thou wast being loved,</i>  am-abatur, <i>He was being loved.</i> [etc.]</p> <p>P. am-abamur, <i>We were being loved.</i>  am-abamīni, <i>Ye were being loved.</i>  am-abantur, <i>They were being loved.</i></p>
AORIST TENSE.	<p>S. am-atus sum<sup>1</sup>, <i>I was loved.</i>  am-atus es, <i>Thou wast loved.</i>  am-atus est, <i>He was loved.</i></p> <p>P. am-ati sūmus, <i>We were loved.</i>  am-ati estis, <i>Ye were loved.</i>  am-ati sunt, <i>They were loved.</i></p>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. am-atus eram<sup>2</sup>, <i>I had been loved.</i>  am-atus eras, <i>Thou hadst been loved.</i>  am-atus erat, <i>He had been loved.</i></p> <p>P. am-ati erāmus, <i>We had been loved.</i>  am-ati eratis, <i>Ye had been loved.</i>  am-ati erant, <i>They had been loved.</i></p>
<sup>1</sup> or fui, etc.	
<sup>2</sup> or fuēram, etc.	

## SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p><i>S. am-er, I may be loved, or may I be loved. am-ēris or -ēre, Thou mayst be loved, etc. am-etur, He may be loved.</i></p> <p><i>P. am-emur, We may be loved. am-emini, Ye may be loved. am-entur, They may be loved.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. amatus sim<sup>1</sup>, I may have been loved. amatus sis, Thou mayst have been loved. amatus sit, He may have been loved.</i></p> <p><i>P. amati simus, We may have been loved. amati sitis, Ye may have been loved. amati sint, They may have been loved.</i></p>

## Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. am-ārer, I should or might be loved. am-arēris or -arēre, Thou wouldst be loved, am-aretur, He would be loved. [etc.]</i></p> <p><i>P. am-aremur, We should be loved. am-aremini, Ye would be loved. am-arentur, They would be loved.</i></p>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. amatus essem<sup>2</sup>, I should or might have been loved. amatus esses, Thou wouldst have been loved. amatus esset, He would have been loved.</i></p> <p><i>P. amati essēmus, We should have been loved. amati essetis, Ye would have been loved. amati essent, They would have been loved.</i></p>

*Future-Simple Tense.* Wanting: see § 296.

*Aorist Tense.* Rendered variously by *amatus sim*, *amarer* and *amatus essem*. See §§ 205, 206.

<sup>1</sup> or fuērim, etc.

<sup>2</sup> or fuissem, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	S. 2 Pers. am-āre, <i>be thou loved</i> , am-ātor, <i>thou must be loved.</i>
	3 Pers. am-ātor, <i>he must be loved.</i>
	P. 2 Pers. am-āmini, <i>be ye loved.</i>
	3 Pers. am-antor, <i>they must be loved.</i>

*Note 1.* The forms amator, amator, amantor are sometimes reckoned as Future Imperatives.

*Note 2.* The Present Subjunctive is often used in a Present Imperative sense, as, ametur, *let him be loved*, amemur, *let us be loved*.

VERB INFINITIVE.

Infinitive Mood.	PRESENT AND IMPERFECT,	am-āri, <i>to be loved.</i>
	PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT,	amātus esse or fuisse, <i>to have been loved.</i>
	FUTURE,	amātum iri, <i>to be about to be loved.</i>
Participles.	PRESENT,	(wanting). The meaning 'whilst being loved' may be rendered by dum with Present Indicative, as, dum amatur.
	PERFECT,	amātus, <i>loved, being loved, or having been loved.</i>
	FUTURE, GERUNDIVE,	(wanting.) am-andus, <i>that must be loved.</i>

## § 53. SECOND CONJUGATION. PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Primary Tenses.

PRESENT  
TENSE.

- S. mōn-ēor, I am advised, or am being ad-  
mon-ēris or -ēre, Thou art advised. [vised.  
mon-etur, He is advised.*
- P. mon-emur, We are advised.  
mon-emīni, Ye are advised.  
mon-entur, They are advised.*

FUTURE-  
SIMPLE  
TENSE.

- S. mon-ēbor, I shall be advised. [vised.  
mon-ēberis or -ēbere, Thou wilt be ad-  
mon-ebitur, He will be advised.*
- P. mon-ēbimur, We shall be advised.  
mon-ebimini, Ye will be advised.  
mon-ebuntur, They will be advised.*

PERFECT  
TENSE.

- S. monitus sum<sup>1</sup>, I have been advised.  
monitus es, Thou hast been advised.  
monitus est, He has been advised.*
- P. moniti sūmus, We have been advised.  
moniti estis, Ye have been advised.  
moniti sunt, They have been advised.*

FUTURE-  
PERFECT  
TENSE.

- S. monitus ēro<sup>2</sup>, I shall have been advised.  
monitus eris, Thou wilt have been advised.  
monitus erit, He will have been advised.*
- P. moniti erimus, We shall have been advised.  
moniti eritis, Ye will have been advised.  
moniti erunt, They will have been advised.*

<sup>1</sup> or fui, etc.<sup>2</sup> or fuēro, etc.

## INDICATIVE MOOD (continued).

### Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. mon-ēbar, I was being advised, or I was advised. [advised.</i>  <i>mon-ebāris or -ebare, Thou wast being</i>  <i>mon-ebatur, He was being advised.</i></p> <p><i>P. mon-ebamur, We were being advised.</i>  <i>mon-ebamini, Ye were being advised.</i>  <i>mon-ebantur, They were being advised.</i></p>
AORIST TENSE.	<p><i>S. monitus sum<sup>1</sup>, I was advised.</i>  <i>monitus es, Thou wast advised.</i>  <i>monitus est, He was advised.</i></p> <p><i>P. moniti sūmus, We were advised.</i>  <i>moniti estis, Ye were advised.</i>  <i>moniti sunt, They were advised.</i></p>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. monitus eram<sup>2</sup>, I had been advised.</i>  <i>monitus eras, Thou hadst been advised.</i>  <i>monitus erat, He had been advised.</i></p> <p><i>P. moniti erāmus, We had been advised.</i>  <i>moniti eratis, Ye had been advised.</i>  <i>moniti erant, They had been advised.</i></p>

<sup>1</sup> or fui. etc.

<sup>2</sup> or fuēram, etc.

<sup>1</sup> *or fui. etc.*

<sup>2</sup> or fuëram, etc.



## SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p><i>S. mon-ĕar, I may be advised, or may I be advised.</i>  <i>mon-ĕāris or -ĕāre, Thou mayst be advised,</i>  <i>mon-eatur, He may be advised.</i> [etc.]</p> <p><i>P. mon-eamur, We may be advised.</i>  <i>mon-eamini, Ye may be advised.</i>  <i>mon-eantur, They may be advised.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. monitus sim<sup>1</sup>, I may have been advised.</i>  <i>monitus sis, Thou mayst have been advised.</i>  <i>monitus sit, He may have been advised.</i></p> <p><i>P. moniti sīmus, We may have been advised.</i>  <i>moniti sitis, Ye may have been advised.</i>  <i>moniti sint, They may have been advised.</i></p>

## Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. mon-ĕrer, I should or might be advised.</i>  <i>mon-erĕris or -erĕre, Thou wouldst be advised, etc.</i>  <i>mon-eretur, He would be advised.</i></p> <p><i>P. mon-erēmur, We should be advised.</i>  <i>mon-eremini, Ye would be advised.</i>  <i>mon-erentur, They would be advised.</i></p>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. monitus essem<sup>2</sup>, I should have been advised.</i>  <i>monitus esses, Thou wouldst have been advised.</i>  <i>monitus esset, He would have been advised.</i></p> <p><i>P. moniti essemus, We should have been advised.</i>  <i>moniti essetis, Ye would have been advised.</i>  <i>moniti essent, They would have been advised.</i></p>

*Future-Simple Tense.* Wanting: see § 296.

*Aorist Tense.* Rendered variously by *monitus sim*, *monĕrer*, and *monitus essem*. See §§ 205, 206.

<sup>1</sup> or fuerim, etc.

<sup>2</sup> or fuisset, etc.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	<i>Sing.</i> 2 Pers. mon-ēre, <i>be thou advised, mon-ētor, thou must be advised.</i>
	3 Pers. mon-ētor, <i>he must be advised.</i>
	<i>Plur.</i> 2 Pers. mon-ēmini, <i>be ye advised.</i>
	3 Pers. mon-entor, <i>they must be advised.</i>

*Note 1.* The forms monetor, monetor, monentor are sometimes reckoned as Future Imperatives.

*Note 2.* The Present Subjunctive is often used in a Present Imperative sense, as, moneatur, *let him be advised, moneamur, let us be advised.*

## VERB INFINITE.

Infinitive Mood.	{ PRESENT AND IMPERFECT, }	mon-ēri, <i>to be advised.</i>
	{ PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT, }	monitus esse or fuisse, <i>to have been advised.</i>
	FUTURE,	monitum iri, <i>to be about to be advised.</i>
Participles.	PRESENT,	(wanting). The meaning 'whilst being advised' may be rendered by dum with Present Indicative, as, dum monetur.
	PERFECT,	monitus, <i>advised, being advised, or having been advised.</i>
	FUTURE, GERUNDIVE,	(wanting). mon-endus, <i>that must be advised.</i>

## § 54. THIRD CONJUGATION. PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p><i>S. rēg-or, I am ruled, or am being ruled. rēg-ēris or -ēre, Thou art ruled, etc. rēg-itur, He is ruled.</i></p> <p><i>P. rēg-īmur, We are ruled. rēg-īmini, Ye are ruled. rēg-untur, They are ruled.</i></p>
FUTURE- SIMPLE TENSE	<p><i>S. rēg-ar, I shall be ruled. rēg-ēris or -ēre, Thou wilt be ruled. rēg-ētur, He will be ruled.</i></p> <p><i>P. rēg-ēmur, We shall be ruled. rēg-ēmini, Ye will be ruled. rēg-entur, They will be ruled.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. rectus sum <sup>1</sup>, I have been ruled. rectus es, Thou hast been ruled. rectus est, He has been ruled.</i></p> <p><i>P. recti sūmus, We have been ruled. recti estis, Ye have been ruled. recti sunt, They have been ruled.</i></p>
FUTURE- PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. rectus ēro <sup>2</sup>, I shall have been ruled. rectus eris, Thou wilt have been ruled. rectus erit, He will have been ruled.</i></p> <p><i>P. recti erīmus, We shall have been ruled. recti eritis, Ye will have been ruled. recti erunt, They will have been ruled.</i></p>

<sup>1</sup> or fui, etc.<sup>2</sup> or fuero, etc.

INDICATIVE MOOD (*continued*).

## Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. reg-ēbar, I was being ruled, or I was ruled. reg-ēbāris or -ēbāre, Thou wast being ruled, reg-ebatur, He was being ruled. [etc.</i></p> <p><i>P. reg-ebamur, We were being ruled. reg-ebamīni, Ye were being ruled. reg-ebantur, They were being ruled.</i></p>
AORIST TENSE.	<p><i>S. rectus sum <sup>1</sup>, I was ruled. rectus es, Thou wast ruled. rectus est, He was ruled.</i></p> <p><i>P. recti sūmus, We were ruled. recti estis, Ye were ruled. recti sunt, They were ruled.</i></p>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. rectus eram <sup>2</sup>, I had been ruled. rectus eras, Thou hadst been ruled. rectus erat, He had been ruled.</i></p> <p><i>P. recti erāmus, We had been ruled. recti eratis, Ye had been ruled. recti erant, They had been ruled.</i></p>

<sup>1</sup> or fui, etc.<sup>2</sup> or fuēram, etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p><i>S. reg-ar, I may be ruled, or may I be ruled. reg-āris or -āre, Thou mayst be ruled, etc. reg-atur, He may be ruled.</i></p> <p><i>P. reg-amur, We may be ruled. reg-amīni, Ye may be ruled. reg-antur, They may be ruled.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. rectus sim<sup>1</sup>, I may have been ruled. rectus sis, Thou mayst have been ruled. rectus sit, He may have been ruled.</i></p> <p><i>P. recti sīmus, We may have been ruled. recti sītis, Ye may have been ruled. recti sint, They may have been ruled.</i></p>

## Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. reg-ērer, I should or might be ruled. reg-ērēris or -erēre, Thou wouldst be ruled, reg-eretur, He would be ruled. [etc.]</i></p> <p><i>P. reg-eremur, We should be ruled. reg-eremini, Ye would be ruled. reg-erentur, They would be ruled.</i></p>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. rectus essem<sup>2</sup>, I should have been ruled. rectus esses, Thou wouldst have been ruled. rectus esset, He would have been ruled.</i></p> <p><i>P. recti essēmus, We should have been ruled. recti essētis, Ye would have been ruled. recti essent, They would have been ruled.</i></p>

*Future-Simple Tense.* Wanting: see § 296.

*Aorist Tense.* Rendered variously by *rectus sim, regērer,* and *rectus essem.* See §§ 205, 206.

<sup>1</sup> or fuērim, etc.

<sup>2</sup> or fuisset, etc.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	S. 2 Pers. reg-ěre, <i>be thou ruled</i> , reg-itor, <i>thou must be ruled.</i>
	3 Pers. reg-itor, <i>he must be ruled.</i>
	P. 2 Pers. reg-imini, <i>be ye ruled.</i>
	3 Pers. reg-untor, <i>they must be ruled.</i>

*Note 1.* The forms regitor, regitor, reguntor are sometimes reckoned as Future Imperatives.

*Note 2.* The Present Subjunctive is often used in a Present Imperative sense, as, regatur, *let him be ruled*, regamur, *let us be ruled.*

## VERB INFINITIVE.

Infinitive Mood.	{ PRESENT AND IMPERFECT, } rēg-ī, <i>to be ruled.</i>
	{ PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT, } rectus esse or fuisse, } <i>to have been ruled.</i>
	{ FUTURE, } rectum iri, <i>to be about to be ruled.</i>
Participles.	{ PRESENT, } (wanting). The meaning 'whilst being ruled' may be rendered by dum with Present Indicative, as, dum regitur.
	{ PERFECT, } rectus, <i>ruled, being ruled, or having been ruled.</i>
	{ FUTURE, } (wanting). { GERUNDIVE, } regendus, <i>that must be ruled.</i>

## § 55. FOURTH CONJUGATION. PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p><i>S. aud-īor, I am heard or am being heard.</i>  <i>aud-īris or -īre, Thou art heard, etc.</i>  <i>aud-itur, He is heard.</i></p> <p><i>P. aud-īmur, We are heard.</i>  <i>aud-īmini, Ye are heard.</i>  <i>aud-iuntur, They are heard.</i></p>
FUTURE- SIMPLE TENSE.	<p><i>S. aud-īar, I shall be heard.</i>  <i>aud-īēris or -īēre, Thou wilt be heard.</i>  <i>aud-īētur, He will be heard.</i></p> <p><i>P. aud-īēmur, We shall be heard.</i>  <i>aud-īēmini, Ye will be heard.</i>  <i>aud-īentur, They will be heard.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. audītus sum<sup>1</sup>, I have been heard.</i>  <i>auditus es, Thou hast been heard.</i>  <i>auditus est, He has been heard.</i></p> <p><i>P. auditi sūmus, We have been heard.</i>  <i>auditi estis, Ye have been heard.</i>  <i>auditi sunt, They have been heard.</i></p>
FUTURE- PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. audītus ero<sup>2</sup>, I shall have been heard.</i>  <i>auditus eris, Thou wilt have been heard.</i>  <i>auditus erit, He will have been heard.</i></p> <p><i>P. auditi erīmus, We shall have been heard.</i>  <i>auditi erītis, Ye will have been heard.</i>  <i>auditi erunt, They will have been heard.</i></p>

<sup>1</sup> or fui, etc.<sup>2</sup> or fuēro, etc.

INDICATIVE MOOD (*continued*).

Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> aud-īēbar, <i>I was being heard, or I was heard.</i>          aud-iebāris or -iebāre, <i>Thou wast being heard.</i>          aud-iebatur, <i>He was being heard.</i></p> <p><i>P.</i> aud-iebamur, <i>We were being heard.</i>          aud-iebamini, <i>Ye were being heard.</i>          aud-iebantur, <i>They were being heard.</i></p>
AORIST TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> auditus sum<sup>1</sup>, <i>I was heard.</i>          auditus es, <i>Thou wast heard.</i>          auditus est, <i>He was heard.</i></p> <p><i>P.</i> auditi sūmus, <i>We were heard.</i>          auditi estis, <i>Ye were heard.</i>          auditi sunt, <i>They were heard.</i></p>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> auditus eram<sup>2</sup>, <i>I had been heard.</i>          auditus eras, <i>Thou hadst been heard.</i>          auditus erat, <i>He had been heard.</i></p> <p><i>P.</i> auditi erāmus, <i>We had been heard.</i>          auditi erātis, <i>Ye had been heard.</i>          auditi erant, <i>They had been heard.</i></p>

<sup>1</sup> or fui, etc

<sup>2</sup> or fuēram, etc



## SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p><i>S. aud-īar, I may be heard, or may I be heard.</i>  <i>aud-iāris or -iāre, Thou mayst be heard.</i>  <i>aud-iatur, He may be heard.</i>  <i>P. aud-iamur, We may be heard.</i>  <i>aud-iamini, Ye may be heard.</i>  <i>aud-iantur, They may be heard.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. auditus sim<sup>1</sup>, I may have been heard.</i>  <i>auditus sis, Thou mayst have been heard.</i>  <i>auditus sit, He may have been heard.</i>  <i>P. auditi sīmus, We may have been heard.</i>  <i>auditi sītis, Ye may have been heard.</i>  <i>auditi sint, They may have been heard.</i></p>

## Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. aud-īrer, I should or might be heard.</i>  <i>aud-irēris or -irēre, Thou wouldst be heard,</i>  <i>aud-iretur, He would be heard.</i> [etc.]  <i>P. aud-iremur, We should be heard.</i>  <i>aud-iremini, Ye would be heard.</i>  <i>aud-irentur, They would be heard.</i></p>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. auditus essem<sup>2</sup>, I should have been heard.</i>  <i>auditus esses, Thou wouldst have been heard.</i>  <i>auditus esset, He would have been heard.</i>  <i>P. auditi essēmus, We should have been heard.</i>  <i>auditi essetis, Ye would have been heard.</i>  <i>auditi essent, They would have been heard.</i></p>

*Future-Simple Tense.* Wanting: see § 296.

*Aorist Tense.* Rendered variously by *auditus sim*, *audirer*, and *auditus essem*. See §§ 205, 206.

<sup>1</sup> or *fuērim*, etc.

<sup>2</sup> or *fuissem*, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	S. 2 Pers. aud-īre, <i>be thou heard</i> , aud-ītor, <i>thou must be heard.</i>
	3 Pers. aud-ītor, <i>he must be heard.</i>
	P. 2 Pers. aud-īmini, <i>be ye heard.</i>
	3 Pers. aud-iuntor, <i>they must be heard.</i>

*Note 1.* The forms auditor, auditor, audiuntor, are sometimes reckoned as Future Imperatives.

*Note 2.* The Present Subjunctive is often used in a Present Imperative sense, as, audiatur, *let him be heard*, audiamur, *let us be heard.*

VERB INFINITE.

Infinitive Mood.	{ PRESENT AND IMPERFECT, }	aud-īri, <i>to be heard.</i>
	{ PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT, }	aud-itus esse or fuisse, } <i>to have been heard.</i>
	FUTURE,	aud-ītum iri, <i>to be about to be heard.</i>
Participles.	PRESENT,	(wanting). The meaning 'whilst being heard' may be rendered by dum with Present Indicative, as, dum auditor.
	PERFECT,	aud-ītus, <i>heard, being heard, or having been heard.</i>
	FUTURE,	(wanting).
	GERUNDIVE,	aud-īendus, <i>that must be heard.</i>

## § 56. COMPARATIVE TABLE OF ENDINGS OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

I. INDICATIVE MOOD. Primary Tenses.				
<i>Tense.</i>	<i>Active Voice.</i>		<i>Passive Voice.</i>	
PRESENT.	Am- Mon- Reg- Aud-	o, as, at, āmus, ātis, ant. eo, es, et, ēmus, ētis, ent. o, is, it, imus, itis, unt. io, is, it, imus, itis, unt.	or, āris(e), ātur, āmīni, antur. eor, ēris(e), ētur, ēmīni, untur. or, ēris(e), itur, imur, imīni, untur. ior, īris(e), itur, imur, imīni, untur.	āmīni, antur. ēmīni, untur. imīni, untur.
FUTURE SIMPLE.	Am- Mon- Reg- Aud-	ābo, ābis, ābit, ābimus, ābūtis, ābunt. ēbo, ēbis, ēbit, ēbimus, ēbūtis, ēbunt. am, es, et, ēmus, ētis, ent. iam, ies, iet, iēmus, iētis, ient.	ābor, āberis(e), ābitur, ābimur, ābimīni, ābuntur. ēbor, ēberis(e), ēbitur, ēbimur, ēbimīni, ēbuntur. ar, ēris(e), ētur, ēmur, ēmīni, ēntur. iar, iēris(e), iētur, iēmur, iēmīni, iēntur.	ābuntur. ēbuntur. ēntur. iēntur.
PERFECT.	Amāv- Monu- Rex- Audiv-	i, isti, it, imus, istis, erunt, or ēre.	Amātus } sum, es, est, -i sūmus, estis, sunt. Monitus } fui, fuisti, fuit, -i fuimus, fuistis, Rectus } fuerunt, or fuere. Auditus }	Or, fuimus, fuistis, fuerunt, or fuere.
FUTURE PERFECT.	Amāv- Monu- Rex- Audiv-	ēro, eris, erit, erimus, eritis, erint.	Amātus } ero, eris, erit, -i erimus, eritis, erunt. Monitus } Rectus } Auditus }	Or, erimus, eritis, fueritis, fuerint.

2. INDICATIVE MOOD (*continued*). Historic Tenses.

<i>Tense.</i>	<i>Active Voice.</i>	<i>Passive Voice.</i>
IMPERFECT.	Am-ābam, ābās, ābat, ābāmus, ābātis, ābant. Mon-ēbam, ēbās, ēbat, ēbāmus, ēbātis, ēbant. Reg-ēbam, ēbās, ēbat, ēbāmus, ēbātis, ēbant. Aud-iēbam, iēbās, iēbat, iēbāmus, iēbātis, iēbant.	ābar, ābāris(e), ābātur, ābāmini, ābantur. ēbar, ēbāris(e), ēbātur, ēbāmini, ēbantur. ēbar, ēbāris(e), ēbātur, ēbāmini, ēbantur. iēbar, iēbāris(e), iēbātur, iēbāmini, iēbantur.
AORIST.	Amāv- Mon- Rex- Audiv- i, isti, it, imus, istis, erunt, or ere.	Amātus } sum, es, est, -i sumus, estis, sunt. Monitus } Or, Rectus } fui, fuisti, fuit, -i fuimus, fuistis, Auditus } fuerunt, or fuere.
PLUPERFECT.	Amāv- Mon- Rex- Audiv- eram, eras, erat, erāmus, erātis, erant.	Amātus } eram, eras, erat, -i erāmus, erātis, erant. Monitus } Or, Rectus } fueram, fueras, fuerat, -i fuerāmus, fuerātis, Auditus } fuerant.

TABLE OF ENDINGS OF THE CONJUGATIONS (*continued*).

3. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. Primary Tenses.		
<i>Tenses.</i>	<i>Active Voice.</i>	<i>Passive Voice.</i>
PRESENT.	Am- em, es, et, ēmus, ētis, ent. Mon- eam, eas, eat, ēamus, ēātis, eant. Reg- am, as, at, āmus, ātis, ant. Aud- iam, ias, iat, iāmus, iātis, iant.	er, ēris(e), ētur, ēmini, entur. ear, caris(e), eātur, eāmini, eantur. ar, ārīs(e), ātur, āmini, aantur. iar, iarīs(e), iātur, iāmini, iantur.
PERFECT.	Amāv- Monu- Rex- Audiv- ērim, ērīs, ērit, ērimus, eritis, erint.	Amātus Monitus Rectus Auditus sim, sis, sit, -i simus, sitis, sint. Or, fuērim, fuēris, fuērit, fuērimus, fuēritis, fuērint.
4. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. Historic Tenses.		
IMPERFECT.	Am- ārem, āres, āret, āremus, āretis, ārent. Mon- ērem, ēres, ēret, ēremus, ēretis, ērent. Reg- ērem, ēres, ēret, ēremus, ēretis, ērent. Aud- īrem, īres, īret, īremus, īretis, īrent.	ārer, ārēris(e), āretur, āremur, ārēmini, ārentur. ēret, ērēris(e), ēretur, ēremur, ērēmini, ērentur. īret, īrēris(e), īretur, īremur, īrēmini, īrentur.
PLUPERFECT.	Amāv- Monu- Rex- Audiv- issem, isses, isset, issemus, issētis, issent.	Amātus Monitus Rectus Auditus esset, essetis, esset, -i essemus, essētis, essent. Or, fuissē, fuisset, fuissetis, fuissetis, fuissent.

## 5. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Active Voice.</i>		<i>Passive Voice.</i>	
PRESENT.	Am- Mon- Reg- Aud-	āto, āto, āto, āto, āto, āto, ēto, ēto, ēto, ēto, ēto, ēto, ito, ito, ito, ito, ito, ito, īto, īto, īto, īto, īto, īto,	ātor, ātor, ātor, ātor, ātor, ātor, ētor, ētor, ētor, ētor, ētor, ētor, itor, itor, itor, itor, itor, itor, ītor, ītor, ītor, ītor, ītor, ītor.

## 6. INFINITIVE MOOD and PARTICIPLES.

<i>Active Voice.</i>		<i>Passive Voice.</i>	
INFINITIVE MOOD.	<i>Pres. and Imperf.</i> { am-āre. mon-ēre. reg-ēre. aud-īre.  <i>Future</i> { amātorus esse. monitūrus esse. rectūrus esse. auditorus esse.	<i>Pres. and Imperf.</i> { amāv-isse. monu-isse. rex-isse. audiv-isse.  <i>Future</i> { amātūrus esse. monitūrus esse. rectūrus esse. auditorus esse.	<i>Pres. and Imperf.</i> { am-āri. mon-ēri. reg-i. aud-iri.  <i>Future</i> { amātūrum monitūrum rectūrum audītum iri.
PARTICIPLES.	<i>Present</i> { am-ans. mon-ens. reg-ens. aud-iens.	<i>Future</i> { amātūrus. monitūrus. rectūrus. audītūrus.	<i>Gerundive</i> { amandus. monendus. regendus. audiendus.
GERUNDS AND SUPINES.	<i>Gerunds.</i> { am-andum, andi, mon-endum, endi, reg-endum, endi, aud-iendum, iendi.	<i>Supines.</i> { amāt-um, u. monit-um, u. rect-um, u. aud-ītum, u.	

§ 57. CONJUGATION OF A DEPONENT VERB,  
THAT IS, A VERB WHICH IS PASSIVE IN  
FORM BUT ACTIVE IN MEANING.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> ūt-or, <i>I use, am using, or do use.</i>  ut-ēris or -ēre, <i>Thou usest, etc.</i>  ut-itur, <i>He uses.</i></p> <p><i>P.</i> ut-īmur, <i>We use.</i>  ut-īmini, <i>Ye use.</i>  ut-untur, <i>They use.</i></p>
FUTURE- SIMPLE TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> ut-ar, <i>I shall use.</i>  ut-ēris or -ēre, <i>Thou wilt use.</i>  ut-etur, <i>He will use.</i></p> <p><i>P.</i> ut-emur, <i>We shall use.</i>  ut-emiini, <i>Ye will use.</i>  ut-entur, <i>They will use.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> ūsus sum<sup>1</sup>, <i>I have used.</i>  usus es, <i>Thou hast used.</i>  usus est, <i>He has used.</i></p> <p><i>P.</i> ūsi sumus, <i>We have used.</i>  usi estis, <i>Ye have used.</i>  usi sunt, <i>They have used.</i></p>
FUTURE- PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> usus ero<sup>2</sup>, <i>I shall have used.</i>  usus eris, <i>Thou wilt have used.</i>  usus erit, <i>He will have used.</i></p> <p><i>P.</i> ūsi erimus, <i>We shall have used.</i>  usi eritis, <i>Ye will have used.</i>  usi erunt, <i>They will have used.</i></p>

<sup>1</sup> or fui, etc.

<sup>2</sup> or fuēro, etc.

INDICATIVE MOOD (*continued*).

Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> ut-ēbar, <i>I was using</i>, or <i>I used</i>.  ut-ēbāris or -ēbare, <i>Thou wast using</i>, etc.  ut-ebatur, <i>He was using</i>.</p> <p><i>P.</i> ut-ebamur, <i>We were using</i>.  ut-ebamini, <i>Ye were using</i>.  ut-ebantur, <i>They were using</i>.</p>
AORIST TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> usus sum<sup>1</sup>, <i>I used</i>.  usus es, <i>Thou usedst</i>.  usus est, <i>He used</i>.</p> <p><i>P.</i> usi sumus, <i>We used</i>.  usi estis, <i>Ye used</i>.  usi sunt, <i>They used</i>.</p>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> usus eram<sup>2</sup>, <i>I had used</i>.  usus eras, <i>Thou hadst used</i>.  usus erat, <i>He had used</i>.</p> <p><i>P.</i> usi eramus, <i>We had used</i>.  usi eratis, <i>Ye had used</i>.  usi erant, <i>They had used</i>.</p>

<sup>1</sup> or fui, etc.

<sup>2</sup> or fuēram, etc.



## SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p>S. ut-ar, <i>I may use, or may I use, or let me use.</i>  ut-āris or -āre, <i>Thou mayst use, etc.</i>  ut-atur, <i>He may use.</i></p> <p>P. ut-amur, <i>We may use.</i>  ut-amini, <i>Ye may use.</i>  ut-antur, <i>They may use.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. usus sim<sup>1</sup>, <i>I may have used.</i>  usus sis, <i>Thou mayst have used.</i>  usus sit, <i>He may have used.</i></p> <p>P. usi simus, <i>We may have used.</i>  usi sitis, <i>Ye may have used.</i>  usi sint, <i>They may have used.</i></p>

## Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. ut-ĕrer, <i>I should or might use.</i>  ut-ĕrĕris or -ĕrĕre, <i>Thou wouldst use, etc.</i>  ut-erĕtur, <i>He would use.</i></p> <p>P. ut-erĕmur, <i>We should use.</i>  ut-erĕmini, <i>Ye would use.</i>  ut-erentur, <i>They would use.</i></p>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. usus essem<sup>1</sup>, <i>I should or might have used.</i>  usus esses, <i>Thou wouldst have used, etc.</i>  usus esset, <i>He would have used.</i></p> <p>P. usi essemus, <i>We should have used.</i>  usi essetis, <i>Ye would have used.</i>  usi essent, <i>They would have used.</i></p>

*Future-Simple Tense.* Usurus sim or essem.

*Aorist Tense.* Rendered variously by *usus sim, uterer, and usus essem.* See §§ 205, 206.

<sup>1</sup> or fuĕrim, etc.

<sup>2</sup> or fuisssem, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	S. 2 Pers. ut-ěre, <i>use thou</i> , ut-itor, <i>thou must use</i> .
	3 Pers. ut-itor, <i>he must use</i> .
	P. 2 Pers. ut-ĩmĩni, <i>use ye</i> .
	3 Pers. ut-untor, <i>they must use</i> .

*Note 1.* The forms utitor, utitor, utuntor are sometimes reckoned as Future Imperatives.

*Note 2.* The Present Subjunctive is often used in a Present Imperative sense.

VERB INFINITE.

Infinitive Mood.	{ PRESENT AND IMPERFECT, }	ũt-i, <i>to use</i> (or <i>using</i> , in the sense of 'the act of using').
	{ PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT, }	ũsus esse, or fuisse, } <i>to have used</i> .
	FUTURE,	ũsũrus esse, <i>to be about to use</i> .
Gerunds.	{ ACCUSATIVE,	ut-endum, <i>using</i> .
	{ GENITIVE,	ut-endi, <i>of using</i> .
	{ DAT. ABL.,	ut-endo, <i>for or by using</i> .
Supines.	{ in -um,	ũsum, <i>in order to use</i> .
	{ in -u,	ũsu, <i>in using</i> .
Participles.	PRESENT,	ut-ens, <i>using</i> (declined like ingens).
	PERFECT,	ũsus, <i>having used</i> .
	FUTURE,	ũsũrus, <i>being about to use</i> .
	GERUNDIVE,	ut-endus, <i>that must be used</i> .

*Note on Deponent Verbs.* There are Four Conjugations of Deponent Verbs, as, *venor*, Inf. *venāri*, *I hunt*, *vereor*, Inf. *verēri* *I fear*, *utor*, Inf. *uti*, *I use*, and *partior*, Inf. *partiri*, *I divide*, which are conjugated like *amor*, *moneor*, *regor*, and *audior* respectively.

*Deponent Participles used Passively.* Many Deponent Perfect Participles are used Passively as well as Actively, as *comitatus*, *having accompanied and accompanied*, from *comitor*; *oblitus*, *having forgotten and forgotten*, from *obliviscor*.

*Deponents in -ior of the Third Conjugation.* The Verbs *gradior*, *I walk*, *mori*, *I die*, and *patior*, *I suffer*, belong to the Third Conjugation, and drop the *i* before *i* and short *ēr*, as

INDIC. PRES.	{	pati-or.
		pat-ēris <i>for</i> pati-ēris.
		pat-ītur <i>for</i> pati-ītur.
		pat-īmur <i>for</i> pati-īmur.
		pat-īmini <i>for</i> pati-īmini.
		pati-untur.
IMPER. PRES.		pat-ēre <i>for</i> pati-ēre.
SUBJ. IMPERF.		pat-ērer <i>for</i> pati-ērer.
INF. PRES.		pat-i <i>for</i> pati-i.

*Note on the Verbs orior and potior.* The Verbs *orior* and *potior* belong to the Fourth Conjugation of Deponents, but in some tenses they have forms borrowed from the Third, as,

INDIC. PRES.	{	2 p. S. orēris.
		3 p. S. orītur.
		1 p. Pl. orīmur.
PART. FUT.		orīturus.
<hr/>		
INDIC. PRES.	{	3 p. S. potītur <i>or</i> potitūr.
		1 p. Pl. potīmur <i>or</i> potimur.
SUBJ. IMPERF.	{	1 p. S. potērer <i>or</i> potirer.
		2 p. S. potērēris <i>or</i> potirēris.
		3 p. S. potērētur <i>or</i> potirētur.
		1 p. Pl. potērēmur <i>or</i> potirēmur.
		2 p. Pl. potērēmini <i>or</i> potirēmini.
		3 p. Pl. potērentur <i>or</i> potirentur.

§ 58. TABLE SHOWING A COMPARISON OF THE LATIN TENSES WITH THE CORRESPONDING TENSES IN GREEK, FRENCH, GERMAN, AND ENGLISH.

TENSES.	GREEK.	LATIN.	FRENCH.	GERMAN.	ENGLISH.
PRESENT.	Indefinite, or Aorist.				I love.
	Imperfect, or Continuous.	amo	j'aime	Ich liebe	I am loving.
	Perfect, or Completed.	amavi	j'ai aimé	Ich habe geliebt	I have loved.
FUTURE.	Indefinite.				I shall love.
	Imperfect.	amabo	j'aimerai	Ich werde lieben	I shall be loving.
	Perfect.	amavero	j'aurai aimé	Ich werde geliebt haben	I shall have loved.
PAST.	Indefinite.				I loved.
	Imperfect.	amavi	j'aimai	Ich liebte	I was loving.
	Perfect.	amabam amaveram	j'aimais j'avais aimé	Ich hatte geliebt	I had loved.

## § 59. CONJUGATION OF THE ANOMALOUS VERBS.

1. Possum [potis-sum], *to be able*.

## Indicative Mood.

PRESENT.	possum, pōt-es, pot-est, pos-sūmus, pot-estis, pos-sunt.
FUT. SIMP.	pot-ēro, -eris, -erit, -erīmus, -erītis, -erunt.
PERFECT.	potu-i, -isti, -it, -īmus, -istis, -ērunt or -ēre.
FUT. PERF.	potu-ēro, -eris, -erit, -erīmus, -erītis, -erint.
IMPERFECT.	pot-eram, -eras, -erat, -erāmus, -eratis, -erant.
AORIST.	Same in form as Perfect.
PLUPERF.	potu-eram, -eras, -erat, -erāmus, -eratis, -erant.

## Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT.	pos-sim, -sis, -sit, -sīmus, -sitis, -sint.
PERFECT.	potu-erim, -eris, -erit, -erīmus, -erītis, -erint.
IMPERFECT.	pos-sem, -ses, -set, -sēmus, -setis, -sent.
PLUPERF.	potu-issem, -isses, -isset, -issēmus, -issetis, -issent.

## Infinitive Mood.

PRES. AND IMPERF.	posse.
PERF. AND PLUPERF.	potu-isse.
PRESENT PARTICIPLE.	(wanting <sup>1</sup> ).

*Note.* 'Possum' has no Imperative Mood.

- 
2. { Volo, *to wish, be willing*.  
 { Nolo [non volo], *to be unwilling*.  
 { Malo [magis volo], *to wish rather, prefer*.

## Indicative Mood.

PRESENT.	{ vōlo, vis, vult, volūmus, vultis, volunt. nōlo, nonvis, nonvult, nolūmus, nonvultis, nolunt. mālo, mavis, mavult, malūmus, mavultis, malunt.
FUT. SIMP.	{ vōl- nōl- māl- } am, -es, -et, -ēmus, -etis, -ent.

<sup>1</sup> The form potens is only used as an Adjective, *powerful*.

PERFECT.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{völä-} \\ \text{nölu-} \\ \text{mälu-} \end{array} \right\}$	i, -isti, -it, -imus, -istis, -ērunt or -ēre.
FUT. PERF.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{volu-} \\ \text{nolu-} \\ \text{malu-} \end{array} \right\}$	ēro, -eris, -erit, -erīmus, -erītis, -erint.
IMPERFECT.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{vol-} \\ \text{nol-} \\ \text{mal-} \end{array} \right\}$	ēbam, -ebas, -ebat, -ebāmus, -ebatis, -ebant.
AORIST.	Same in form as Perfect.	
PLUPERF.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{volu-} \\ \text{nolu-} \\ \text{malu-} \end{array} \right\}$	ēram, -eras, -erat, -erāmus, -eratis, -erant.
Subjunctive Mood.		
PRESENT.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{vel-} \\ \text{nol-} \\ \text{mal-} \end{array} \right\}$	im, -is, -it, -īmus, -itis, -int.
PERFECT.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{volu-} \\ \text{nolu-} \\ \text{malu-} \end{array} \right\}$	ērim, -eris, -erit, -erīmus, -erītis, -erint.
IMPERFECT.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{vell-} \\ \text{noll-} \\ \text{mall-} \end{array} \right\}$	em, -es, -et, -ēmus, -etis, -ent.
PLUPERF.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{volu-} \\ \text{nolu-} \\ \text{malu-} \end{array} \right\}$	issem, -isses, -isset, -issēmus, -issetis, -issent.

#### Imperative Mood.

PRESENT.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{S. 2 Pers.} \\ \text{3 Pers.} \end{array} \right\}$	nolī, nolīto.
		nolīto.
	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{P. 2 Pers.} \\ \text{3 Pers.} \end{array} \right\}$	nolīte, nolītōte.
		nolunto.

*Note.* 'Volo' and 'malo' have no Imperative Mood.

#### Infinitive Mood.

PRES. AND IMPERF.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{velle.} \\ \text{nolle.} \\ \text{malle.} \end{array} \right\}$	
PERF. AND PLUPERF.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{voluisse.} \\ \text{noluisse.} \\ \text{maluisse.} \end{array} \right\}$	

GERUNDS.	{ volen-dum, -di, -do. nolen-dum, -di, -do. malen-dum, -di, -do.
SUPINES.	(wanting).
PRES. PARTICIPLES.	{ volens. nolens. _____

3. *Fero, to bear.***Indicative Mood.**

PRESENT.	fěro, fers, fert, ferĭmus, fertis, ferunt.
FUT. SIMP.	fer-am, -es, -et, -ĕmus, -etis, -ent.
PERFECT.	tŭl-i, -isti, -it, -ĭmus, -istis, -ĕrunt or -ĕre.
FUT. PERF.	tul-ĕro, -eris, -erit, -erĭmus, -erĭtis, -erint.
IMPERFECT.	ferĕ-bam, -bas, -bat, -bāmus, -batis, -bant.
AORIST.	Same in form as Perfect.
PLUPERF.	tul-ĕram, -eras, -erat, -erāmus, -eratis, -erant.

**Subjunctive Mood.**

PRESENT.	fer-am, -as, -at, -āmus, -atis, -ant.
PERFECT.	tul-ĕrim, -eris, -erit, -erĭmus, -erĭtis, -erint.
IMPERFECT.	fer-rem, -res, -ret, -rĕmus, -retis, -rent.
PLUPERF.	tul-isse, -isses, -isset, -issĕmus, -issetis, -issent.

**Imperative Mood.**

PRESENT.	{	S. 2 Pers. fer,	ferto.
		3 Pers.	ferto.
	{	P. 2 Pers. ferte,	fertōte.
		3 Pers.	ferunto.

**Infinitive Mood.**

PRES. AND IMPERF.	ferre.
PERF. AND PLUPERF.	tul-isse.
FUTURE.	lāurus esse.
GERUNDS.	feren-dum, -di, -do.
SUPINES.	lātum, latu.
PRES. PARTICIPLE.	ferens.
FUT. PARTICIPLE.	laturus.

4. *Feror, to be borne.*

## Indicative Mood.

PRESENT. *fēror, ferris or ferre, fertur, ferīmur, ferimīni, feruntur.*FUT. SIMP. *fer-ar, -ēris or -ēre, -etur, -emur, -emini, -entur.*PERFECT. *lat-us sum, es, est, -i sūmus, estis, sunt.*FUT. PERF. *lat-us ēro, eris, erit, -i erīmus, eritis, erunt.*IMPERFECT. *fer-ēbar, -ebāris or -ebāre, -ebatur, -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.*

AORIST. Same in form as Perfect.

PLUPERF. *lat-us ēram, eras, erat, -i eramus, eratis, erant.*

## Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT. *fer-ar, -āris or -āre, -atur, -amur, -amini, -antur.*PERFECT. *lat-us sim, sis, sit, -i sīmus, sitis, sint.*IMPERFECT. *fer-rer, -rēris or -rēre, -retur, -remur, -remīni, -rentur.*PLUPERF. *lat-us essem, esses, esset, -i essēmus, essetis, essent.*

## Imperative Mood.

PRESENT.	{	S. 2 Pers. <i>ferre,</i>	<i>fertor.</i>
		3 Pers.	<i>fertor.</i>
	{	P. 2 Pers. <i>ferimini.</i>	
		3 Pers.	<i>feruntor.</i>

## Infinitive Mood.

PRES. AND IMPERF., *ferri*; PERF. AND PLUPERF., *lātus esse*;  
 FUTURE, *latum iri*; PERF. PARTICIPLE, *latus*; GERUNDIVE,  
*ferendus*.

5. *Eo, to go.*

## Indicative Mood.

PRESENT. *eo, is, it, īmus, itis, eunt.*FUT. SIMP. *ī-bo, -bis, -bit, -bīmus, -bitis, -bunt.*PERFECT. *iv-ī, -isti, -it, -īmus, -istis, -ērunt or -ēre.*FUT. PERF. *iv-ēro, -eris, -erit, -erīmus, -eritis, -erint.*IMPERFECT. *ī-bam, -bas, -bat, -bāmus, -batis, -bant.*

AORIST. Same in form as Perfect.

PLUPERF. *iv-ēram, -eras, -erat, -erāmus, -eratis, -erant.*



**Subjunctive Mood.**

PRESENT.	e-am, -as, -at, -āmus, -atis, -ant.
PERFECT.	iv-ērim, -eris, -erit, -erīmus, -erītis, -erint.
IMPERFECT.	ī-rem, -res, -ret, -rēmus, -retis, -rent.
PLUPERF.	iv-issem, -isses, -isset, -issēmus, -issetis, -issent.

**Imperative Mood.**

PRESENT.	S. 2 Pers. ī,	īto.
		3 Pers. īto.
	P. 2 Pers. īte,	ītōte.
		3 Pers. eunto.

**Infinitive Mood.**

PRES. AND IMPERF., īre; PERF. AND PLUPERF., ivisse; FUTURE, itūrus esse; GERUNDS, eun-dum, -di, -do; SUPINES, itum, itu; PRES. PARTICIPLE, iens [Gen. eunt-is]; FUT. PARTICIPLE, iturus.

*Note.* The compounds of eo, as, abeo, adeo, prodeo, etc., prefer -ii to -ivi in the Perfect. Veneo, *I am for sale*, has no Supine. Queo, *I am able*, and nequeo, *I am unable*, are conjugated like eo, but have no Imperative or Gerunds.

**6. Fīo, to be made, to become.****Indicative Mood.**

PRESENT.	fīo, fis, fit, (fīmus), (fītis), fiunt.
FUT. SIMP.	fi-am, -es, -et, -ēmus, -etis, -ent.
PERFECT.	fact-us sum, es, est, -i sumus, estis, sunt.
FUT. PERF.	fact-us ēro, eris, erit, -i erīmus, eritis, erunt.
IMPERFECT.	fi-ēbam, -ebas, -ebat, -ebāmus, -ebatis, -ebant.
AORIST.	Same in form as Perfect.
PLUPERF.	fact-us ēram, eras, erat, -i erāmus, eratis, erant.

**Subjunctive Mood.**

PRESENT.	fi-am, -as, -at, -āmus, -atis, -ant.
PERFECT.	fact-us sim, sis, sit, -i sīmus, sitis, sint.
IMPERFECT.	fi-erem, -eres, -eret, -erēmus, -eretis, -erent.
PLUPERF.	fact-us essem, esses, esset, -i essēmus, essetis, essent.

**Imperative Mood.**PRESENT, S. 2 Pers. *fī*; P. 2 Pers. *fīte*.**Infinitive Mood.**

PRES. AND IMPERF., *fīeri*; PERF. AND PLUPERF., *factus esse*;  
 FUTURE, *factum iri*; PERF. PARTICIPLE, *factus*; GERUNDIVE,  
*faciendus*.

*Note.* 'Fio' is the Passive of the Verb *facio*, *to make*.

7. The Verb *ēdo*, *I eat*, has irregular forms in certain tenses.

INDIC. PRES. *ēdo*, *ēdis* or *es*, *ēdit* or *est*, *ēdimus*, *ēdītis* or *estis*, *ēdunt*.

SUBJ. PRES. { *edam*, *edas*, *edat*, etc.; or  
                   { *edim*, *edis*, *edit*, etc.

IMPERF. { *edērem*, *edēres*, *edēret*, etc.; or  
               { *essem*, *esses*, *esset*, etc.

IMPERATIVE. { *Sing.* *ēdē*, *ēdīto* or *esto*.

                  { *Plur.* *ēdīte* or *este*, *ēdītote* or *estote*, *edunto*.

INFIN. PRES. *edēre* or *esse*.

In the Passive, *estur* is found for *ēdītur*, and *essetur* for *ederetur*.

**Table of the chief tenses of the Anomalous Verbs.**

	<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
1.	Possum,	posse,	potui,		<i>to be able.</i>
	{ Volo,	velle,	volui,		<i>to be willing.</i>
2.	{ Nolo,	nolle,	nolui,		<i>to be unwilling.</i>
	{ Mālo,	malle,	malui,		<i>to wish rather.</i>
3.	Fero,	ferre,	tūli,	lātum,	<i>to bear</i> <sup>1</sup> .
4.	Fēror,	ferri,	latus sum,		<i>to be borne.</i>
5.	Eo,	īre,	īvi or īi,	ītum,	<i>to go. [become.]</i>
6.	Fio,	fīeri,	factus sum,		<i>to be made</i> or
7.	Ēdo,	ēdēre or esse,	ēdi,	ēsum,	<i>to eat.</i>
8.	{ Quoē,	quīre,	quīvi,	quītum,	<i>to be able.</i>
	{ Nequoē,	nequīre,	nequīvi,	nequītum,	<i>to be unable.</i>

<sup>1</sup> In the following compounds of *fero* the Preposition often undergoes assimilation (§ 182) in one or other of the principal parts of the Verb.

ab-fero	makes	aufero,	abstuli,	ablatus,	<i>take away.</i>
ad-fero	"	affero,	attuli,	allatus,	<i>bring to.</i>
con-fero	"	confero,	contuli,	collatus,	<i>bring together.</i>
dis-fero	"	differo,	distuli,	dilatus,	<i>carry asunder.</i>
ex-fero	"	effero,	extuli,	elatus,	<i>carry forth.</i>
in-fero	"	infero,	intuli,	illatus,	<i>bring to or into.</i>
ob-fero	"	offero,	obtuli,	oblatus,	<i>bring before.</i>
sub-fero	"	suffero,	sustuli,	sublatus,	<i>hold under or up.</i>

## § 60. INTERROGATIVE FORMS OF THE VERB.

(a) *Use of -ně.* The Indicative and Subjunctive Moods may be made Interrogative (i. e. made to express a question) by adding the Particle **-ně** to the various Numbers and Persons, as,

INDIC. PRESENT. amo-ně, *do I love?*  
amas-ně, *dost thou love?* etc.

FUTURE. amabo-ně, *shall I love?*  
amabis-ně, *wilt thou love?* etc.

and so on throughout the Tenses.

*Note.* For videsně, audisně, etc., we sometimes find the forms viděn, auděn, etc., in Poetry.

(b) *Position of -ně.* The Particle **-ne** is not necessarily attached to the *Verb* in an Interrogative sentence. It is usually added to the first word in the sentence, as, puerně amat, *does the boy love?*

(c) *Use of num.* When the answer 'no' is expected **num** is used in a question instead of **-ně**, as, num amat, *he does not love, does he?*

(d) *Use of nonně.* When the answer 'yes' is expected **nonne** is used in a question, as, nonně amo, *do I not love?* or, *I love, do I not?*

(e) *Double Questions.* If the word *or* occurs in a question to which the answer 'yes' or 'no' is expected, it is translated by **an**, and one of the Particles **utrum**, **num**, **-ne** must be used for the first part of the question, as,

utrum servus es an liber?	} <i>Are you a slave or a free man?</i> <sup>1</sup>
num servus es an liber?	
servusně es an liber?	

<sup>1</sup> Literally 'Whether are you a slave or a free man?' but the English Interrogative *whether* is now seldom used in *direct* questions. It appears more frequently in older English, as, Mark ii. 9, 'Whether is it easier to say to the sick of the palsy, Thy sins be forgiven thee; or to say, Arise, and take up thy bed and walk?'

(f) *Interrogative Pronouns*, etc. The chief Interrogative Pronouns and Particles in Latin are :—

qualis, <i>of what sort?</i>	cur, <i>why?</i>
quantus, <i>how great?</i>	quoties, <i>how often?</i>
uter, <i>which of two?</i>	quare, <i>wherefore?</i>
quis, <i>who?</i>	quam, <i>how?</i>
quot, <i>how many?</i>	quomodo, <i>how?</i>
quōtus, <i>which in numerical order?</i>	num, <i>whether?</i>
unde, <i>whence?</i>	-nē, <i>whether?</i>
ubi, <i>where?</i>	ut, <i>how?</i>
quando, <i>when?</i>	an, <i>or whether?</i>
	utrum, <i>whether of the two?</i>

#### NOTES ON THE CONJUGATIONS.

§ 61. **Third Person Singular.** The Pronouns *she* and *it* are used, as well as *he*, to translate the 3rd Person Singular of the Verb. Thus *amat* may mean '*he, she, or it loves.*' In Tenses compounded of a Participle and the Verb *sum* the termination of the Participle will vary according to the Gender of the person or thing spoken of, as,

*amatus est, He has been loved.*

*amata est, She has been loved.*

*amatum est, It has been loved.*

§ 62. **Impersonal Verbs.** Certain Verbs are found only in the 3rd Person Singular, and have the word *it* for their apparent Nominative in English, as, *licet, it is permitted.* These are called Impersonal Verbs<sup>1</sup>.

§ 63. **Present Indicative.** A Present Indicative, as *amo*, may be translated *I love, I am loving, or I do love.*

<sup>1</sup> A list of the chief Impersonals is given in § 78.

The sign *do* is seldom used affirmatively except when emphasis is required, but it constantly occurs in the Negative and Interrogative forms, as, *non amo, I do not love*; *amone, do I love?*

§ 64. **Imperfect Indicative.** An Imperfect Indicative, as *amabam*, may be translated *I was loving, I loved, I used to love, or I began to love*. The translation *I loved* can only be used when the meaning is *I was loving at the time*, a sense which is often loosely expressed by the English Past Tense.

§ 65. **Aorist Indicative.** The sign *did* is seldom used affirmatively, except for the sake of emphasis, but it constantly occurs in the Negative and Interrogative forms, as *non amavi, I did not love*, etc.

§ 66. **Present Subjunctive.** This Tense admits of many translations. Thus *amem* means *I may, would, or should love, may I love, and let me love*: and, further, it has often to be translated as a Present Indicative, *I love, I am loving, or I do love*, when it occurs in dependent or subordinate sentences. Thus, *quum amem* is expressed in English by *since I love*.

§ 67. **Other Subjunctive Tenses.** What has been remarked of the Present holds good with respect to all the other Subjunctive Tenses, viz. that they frequently have to be translated by the corresponding Tense of the Indicative, and not by the signs *would, would have*, etc. Thus, *quum audivissem* does not mean *when I should have heard*, but *when I had heard*.

§ 68. **Contraction in the Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses.** Perfects ending in *-vi*, and the Tenses formed from them, may suffer contraction in all Conjugations, the letter *v* being omitted, e. g.—

Conj. 1. Amâsti *for* amavisti; amâssent *for* amavissent.

Conj. 2. Summôsses *for* summovisses.

Conj. 3. Nôrunt *for* novērunt; nôsti *for* novisti.

Conj. 4. Audîsti *for* audivisti. In this Conjugation there is also a form produced by throwing out the *v*, without any contraction of vowels, as Perf. audii *for* audivi. This form is also found in certain Verbs of the Third Conjugation, as, peto, cupio, etc., which have Perfect in *-vî*, as, petii *for* petivi.

*Note* 1. This contraction is not allowed before *-re* in the 3rd Person Plural of the Perfect Indicative. We cannot say amâre *for* amavere.

*Note* 2. Other contractions are, compostus, dixti, extinxem, surrexe, *for* compositus, dixisti, extinxissem, surrexisse. Faxo, faxim, are *for* fecero, fecerim.

§ 69. Old Latin Forms sometimes used in Poetry.

(a) In the Pres. Infin. Pass. *-ier* was used for *-i*, as, amarier *for* amari.

(b) In the Imperf. Indic. of 4th Conjugation *e* was dropped, as, audibam *for* audiebam.

(c) In the Fut. Simp. of 4th Conjugation the regular forms *-ibo* and *-ibor* were used, as, audibo, audibor. Afterwards these forms were replaced by forms proper to the 3rd Conjugation, as, audiam, audiar.

(d) The Subj. Pres. in the 1st and 3rd Conjugations sometimes ended in *-im*, as, duim, *let me give*, for dem; edim, *let me eat*, for edam.

§ 70. Note on certain Imperatives. Facio, fero, dico, and duco<sup>1</sup>, make in the Imperative Present fâc, fêr dîc, dûc. Scio, *I know*, has only scito, never sci, for Imperative.

§ 71. Note on the termination '*-re*' for '*-ris*.' The use of *-re* for *-ris* as the termination of the 2nd Pers. Sing. in

<sup>1</sup> Make, bear, say, lead.

the Passive Voice is common in all the Tenses except the Present Indicative, where it might be mistaken for the Infinitive Active or Imperative Passive, as, *amare*.

§ 72. **Gerundive in '-undus.'** The gerundives of the 3rd and 4th Conjugations are sometimes formed in *-undus* instead of *-endus*, especially when *i* precedes, as *potiundus*, *capiundus*.

§ 73. **The Periphrastic Conjugation.** The Future Active Participle may be coupled with all the Tenses of the Verb *sum*, and thus a new Active Conjugation, called the Periphrastic, is formed, indicating that a person *has a mind to do a thing* or *is upon the point of doing it*, e.g. *amaturus sum*, *I am about to love*; *amaturus eram*, *I was about to love*.

In the same way the Gerundive may be coupled with the Tenses of 'sum' to form a Passive Periphrastic Conjugation, as, *amandus sum*, *I ought to be loved* or *I must be loved*; *amandus eram*, *I ought to have been loved*, etc.

### DEFECTIVE AND OTHER VERBS.

§ 74. Defective Verbs are those of which only certain Moods, Tenses, or Persons are found; e.g.—

(a) *Aio*, *I say* or *affirm*.

Indic. Pres.	Aio,	āis,	āit,		aiunt.
„ Imperf.	Ai-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat,	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis, -ēbant.
Subj. Pres.		aias,	aiat,		aiant.

(b) *Inquam*, *I say*.

Indic. Pres.	<i>Inquam</i> ,	<i>inquīs</i> ,	<i>inquīt</i> ,	<i>inquīmus</i> ,	<i>inquītis</i> ,	<i>inquīunt</i>
„ Imperf.	<i>Inquiebat</i> .	Perf. <i>Inquisti</i> , <i>inquit</i> .				
„ Fut.		<i>inquēs</i> , <i>inquēt</i> .				
Imperat. Pres.		<i>inquē</i> ,	<i>inquito</i> ,		<i>inquite</i> .	

- (c) *Coe*pi, *I have begun*, or *I begin*, *memini*, *I remember*, and *odi*, *I hate*, have, for the most part, only those parts of the Verb which are formed from the Perfect Tense, e. g.

Indic. Perf.	coe	pi, coepisti, coepit, etc.
„ Pluperf.	coe	peram.
„ Fut. Perf.	coe	pero.
Subj. Perf.	coe	perim.
„ Pluperf.	coe	pissem.
Inf. Perf. and Pluperf.	coe	pisse.

*Note.* *Coe*pi and *odi* have also a Perf. Part. *coeptus*, *osus*, and a Fut. Part. *coepturus*, *ösurus*. *Memini*, has an Imperative *memento*, Plur. *mementote*.

- (d) *Fari*, *to speak*, has *fatur*, *he speaks*, *fabor*, *I shall speak*, and *färe*, *speak thou*, with Participles *fantem* (no Nominative), *fä*us, *fandus*, Gerunds *fandi*, *fando*, and Supine *fatu*.

- (e) The following Imperatives:

*Ävë* (or *hävë*), *ävëte*, *hail*. Infin. *ävëre*.

*Salvë*, *salvëtë*, *hail*. Infin. *salvëre*.

*Cëdö*, *cëditë* (or *cettë*), *give me*.

*Apägë*, *äpägitë*, *begone*.

§ 75. **Derived Verbs.** Many Verbs are derived either from other Verbs or from Nouns.

Those chiefly derived from Verbs are of four kinds, Inceptive, Desiderative, Frequentative, and Diminutive.

(a) **Inceptive** Verbs signify 'to begin to do a thing,' and end in *-sco*, as, *calesco*, *I begin to be warm*, *grow warm* (from *caleo*), *tenerasco*, *I grow tender* (from *tener*).

(b) **Desiderative** Verbs signify 'to desire to do a thing,' and end in *-urio*, as, *ësurio*, *I wish to eat*, or *I am hungry* (from *ëdo*).



(c) **Frequentative Verbs** signify 'to do a thing frequently,' and end in -so, -to, and -ito, as, *pulso* (from *pello*, *I drive*), *canto* (from *cano*, *I sing*), and *clamito* (from *clamo*, *I shout*).

(d) **Diminutive Verbs** signify 'to do a little thing,' and end in -illo, as, *cantillo*, *I sing a little song* (from *cano*).

**Verbs derived from Nouns** belong usually to the First Conjugation if Transitive, and to the Second if Intransitive, as, *fraudāre*, *to deceive* [from *fraus*, *deceit*], *albēre*, *to be white* [from *albus*, *white*].

§ 76. **Semi-Deponent (or Neuter Passive) Verbs.** These are *audeo*, *fido*, *gaudeo*, and *soleo*<sup>1</sup>. They have an Active Present with a Perfect of Passive form, as, *audeo*, *ausus sum*; *fido*, *fisus sum*; *gaudeo*, *gavisus sum*; *soleo*, *solitus sum*.

§ 77. **Quasi-Passive (or Neutral Passive) Verbs.** These are *vāpūlo*, *vēnēo*, *licēo*, *exūlo*, and *fio*<sup>2</sup>. They are Active in form but Passive in meaning.

§ 78. **Impersonal Verbs.** The chief Impersonal Verbs are the following. They are of the Second Conjugation, and being only found in the 3rd Person Singular of the Finite Verb, and in the Infinitive Mood, may be called Unipersonals.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>
<i>libet</i> , ( <i>lubet</i> ),	<i>libūit</i> or <i>libitum est</i> ,	<i>libēre</i> , <i>it pleases.</i>
<i>licet</i> ,	<i>licūit</i> or <i>licitum est</i> ,	<i>licēre</i> , <i>it is lawful.</i>
<i>liquet</i> ,	<i>licūit</i> ,	<i>liquēre</i> , <i>it is clear.</i>
<i>miseret</i> ,	<i>miserūit</i> or <i>miseritum est</i> ,	<i>miserēre</i> , <i>it moves to pity.</i>
<i>oportet</i> ,	<i>oportuit</i> ,	<i>oportēre</i> , <i>it behoves or is necessary.</i>
<i>piget</i> ,	<i>pigūit</i> or <i>pigitum est</i> ,	<i>pigēre</i> , <i>it troubles.</i>

<sup>1</sup> *Dare, trust, rejoice, am accustomed.*

<sup>2</sup> *Am beaten, am for sale, am put up to auction, am banished, am made.*

Pres.	Perf.	Inf.
paenitet,	paenituit,	paenitēre, <i>it repents.</i>
pūdet,	pūdūt or pudītum est,	pudēre, <i>it shames.</i>
taedet,	taedūt or pertaesum est,	taedēre, <i>it wearies.</i>

§ 79. The above Verbs are, for the most part, only found in the Impersonal form. But many completely conjugated Verbs are used impersonally, as, *juvo*, *I assist*, which has *juvat*, meaning *it delights*, with many others, e. g.

Pres.	Perf.	Inf.
accēdit,	accessit,	accedēre, <i>it is added.</i>
accīdit,	accidit,	accidēre, <i>it happens.</i>
constat,	constitit,	constāre, <i>it is well known.</i>
convēnit,	convēnit,	convenīre, <i>it suits.</i>
dēcet,	dēcūt,	dēcēre, <i>it becomes or seems.</i>
dēdēcet,	dēdēcūt,	dēdēcēre, <i>it misbecomes.</i>
fit,	factum est,	fiēri, <i>it comes to pass.</i>

Together with certain Verbs denoting change of weather, as, *pluit*, *it rains*, *fulminat*, *it lightens*, *tonat*, *it thunders*, etc.

§ 80. Intransitive Verbs are used impersonally in the Passive Voice, as, *sto*, *I stand*, *stat*, *it is stood* or *a stand is made*. Hence *stat* a me = *it is stood by me* = *I stand*.

## PARTICLES.

§ 81. **Adverbs.** These may express Place, Time, Manner, or Number, as, *eo*, *thither*, *tunc*, *then*, *sapienter*, *wisely*, *bis*, *twice*.

§ 82. **Derivation of Adverbs.** Most Adverbs are formed from Adjectives. Thus,

From Adjectives in *-us* are formed Adverbs in *-ē*, and (less commonly) *-o*; as *dignē*, *worthily*, from *dignus*, *worthy*; *subito*, *suddenly*, from *subitus*, *sudden*.

From Adjectives of two terminations in *-is*, *-ns*, *-x*, &c.,

are formed Adverbs in *-iter* or *-ter*, as *feliciter*, *happily*, from *felix*, *happy*; *libenter*, *willingly*, from *libens*, *willing*.

Adjectives in *-us* and *-is* often use their Neuter<sup>1</sup> Adverbially, as *horrendum stridens*, *sounding horribly*; *dulcè ridens*, *smiling sweetly*. This is chiefly a Poetic usage.

There is also a termination in *-im*, chiefly from Participles, as *separatim*, *separately*; and in *-itus*, as *divinïtus*, *divinely*.

Adverbs are also formed from Pronouns; thus from *hic*, *this*, are derived the Adverbs *hîc*, *here*, *huc*, *hither*, and *hinc*, *from hence*; from *qui*, *who* or *which*, are derived *quà*, *where*, and *quo*, *whither*, etc.

For comparison of Adverbs, see §§ 28 and 162 (*d*).

§ 83. **Prepositions.** For a list of the Latin Prepositions see §§ 111 and 122, and for a full account of their usual meanings, with Examples, see §§ 318–363.

§ 84. **Conjunctions.** These are of two kinds, viz.—

(i.) **Coordinative**, which simply link together words, phrases, or clauses, and do not influence the Mood of the Verb. They are,

(a) *Copulative*, et, -que, ac, atque, *and*; nec or neque, *and not, nor*.

(b) *Disjunctive*, aut, vel, -ve, *either*; sive, *whether*.

(c) *Adversative*, sed, autem, verum, vero, ceterum, at, *but*.

*Note.* Sentences linked together by the above Conjunctions are called **Coordinate Sentences**.

(ii.) **Subordinative**, which introduce Subordinate Clauses (§ 94). The chief kinds are as follow. Those marked \* are almost always found with a Subjunctive.

<sup>1</sup> Masculine and Feminine Adjectives are also used Adverbially, as, *invitus* (or *invita*) *Romam migravit*, *he* (or *she*) *has unwillingly removed to Rome*.

**Final.** Ut\*, *in order that*, quo\*, *in order that*, nē\*, *lest, in order that . . . not*, quominus\*, quin\*, *in order that . . . not*.

**Consecutive.** Ut\*, *so that*, quin\*, *that . . . not*.

**Temporal.** Quum, ubi, ut, *when*; donec, dum, quoad, *whilst, until*; antequam, priusquam, *before that*; postquam, *after that*; simul, simul ac, *as soon as*; quoties, *as often as*.

**Causal.** Quum\*, quoniam, quandōquidem, *since*; quod, quia, *because*.

**Conditional.** Si, *if*, nisi, *if not, unless*: dum\*, dummodo\*, *provided that*.

**Concessive.** Etsi, licet\*, quamquam, quamvis\*, quum\*, ut, *although*.

**Comparative.** Quasi\*, tanquam\*, tanquam si\*, *as if, as though*.

§ 85. **Interjections.** Interjections express joy, as, io, *hail*; grief, as, heu or eheu, *alas*! astonishment, as, en or ecce, *lo*! and calling or summoning, as heus, *ho*!

# A SHORT CATECHISM OF LATIN SYNTAX.

---

## Elementary Rules for Construing.

§ 86. *Q.* How do we begin the translation of a Latin sentence?

*A.* First look for the Finite Verb, and then for its Subject.

§ 87. *Q.* Will *any* Finite Verb do that happens to be in the sentence?

*A.* No. The Finite Verb of the Sentence is *never* to be looked for in a clause introduced by the Relative *qui, quae, quod*, or by a Subordinative Conjunction, *as, quum, when, ut, that, ne, lest, si, if, etsi, although, etc.*

§ 88. *Q.* What do you mean by 'the Subject'?

*A.* The Subject is the person or thing *of which something is said*. Thus in the sentence *Caesar scribit, Caesar writes*, it is said of Caesar that he writes; hence Caesar is called the Subject of the sentence.

*Note.* That which is said of the Subject is called the *Predicate*.

§ 89. *Q.* How do we find the Subject?

*A.* It is, as a rule, a Noun<sup>1</sup> in the Nominative Case.<sup>2</sup> If

<sup>1</sup> Under the head of 'Nouns' are also included words or phrases equivalent to Nouns, e. g. an Infinitive Mood, an Accusative and Infinitive, an Adjective used Substantively, or a whole clause introduced by a Conjunction.

<sup>2</sup> The Subject of an Infinitive Mood is put in the Accusative. See § 108.

there is no Nominative expressed, the Subject is one of the Pronouns *I, thou, he, she, it, we, you, or they*, contained in the Verb-ending.

### Varieties of the Sentence.

§ 90. Q. How many kinds of simple or direct sentence (*Oratio Recta*) are there?

A. Three, namely:

- (a) The Statement, as, *Caesar scribit, Caesar is writing.*
- (b) The Question, as, *Scribitne Caesar? Is Caesar writing?*
- (c) The Command or Request, as, *Scribe, Caesar, Write, O Caesar; Scribat Caesar, Let Caesar write.*

§ 91. Q. What is an Oblique, Dependent, or Indirect Sentence (*Oratio Obliqua*)?

A. A Statement, Question, or Command, which forms the Subject or Object (see § 39) of another Verb, as,

*Ait Caesarem scribere, He says that Caesar is writing. Scribatne Caesar nostrā nihil interest, Whether Caesar is writing is of no importance to us, or it is of no importance to us whether Caesar is writing.*

In the first example the words *Caesarem scribere* are the Object of *ait*; in the second the words *scribatne Caesar* are the Subject of interest.

§ 92. Q. What is a Compound Sentence?

A. A sentence consisting of a number of clauses joined together in such a manner that one clause is Principal and the others Subordinate.

§ 93. Q. Distinguish between Principal and Subordinate clauses.

A. The Principal clause contains the main Statement, Question, or Command: Subordinate clauses are added in order to explain some word, usually either a Noun or Verb, in the Principal sentence.

§ 94. Q. How are Subordinate clauses introduced?

A. Subordinate clauses are introduced either by the Relative, *qui, quae, quod, as, vir quem video, bonus est, The man whom I see is good*, or by a Subordinative Conjunction, *as, haec fecit, ut laudaretur, He did this that he might be praised*.

#### On the Three Concords or Rules of Agreement.

§ 95. Q. Name the Three Concords or Rules of Agreement.

A. (a) The Finite Verb agrees with its Nominative in Number and Person, *as, Rex audit, The king hears, or is hearing; Reges audiunt, The kings hear, or are hearing*.

*Note.* We could not in Latin say *rex audiunt* or *reges audit*, any more than we could say in English, *the king are hearing*, or *the kings is hearing*.

(b) The Adjective agrees with its Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case, *as,*

*Bonae matres bonos pueros amant, Good mothers love good boys.*

*Opus perfectum est, The work is accomplished.*

*Illud opus perfectum est, That work is accomplished.*

*Note.* Participles and Adjectival Pronouns are here considered as Adjectives.

(c) The Relative *qui, quae, quod*, agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person; but in Case belongs to its own clause, as,

Arbor, *quæ* in horto crescit, *alta est*, *The tree which grows in the garden is high.*

Arbor, *quam* video, *alta est*, *The tree which I see is high.*

### On Copulative Verbs.

§ 96. Q. What are Copulative Verbs?

A. The Verb *sum*, and Passive Verbs of *thinking, calling, or making*, as, *vocor, I am called, fio, I am made*, etc.

§ 97. Q. What is the Case-Construction after Copulative Verbs?

A. They take the same Case after them as they have before them, as, *dies fit nox, day becomes night; sensimus diem fieri noctem, we perceived that day was becoming night.*

### On Apposition.

§ 98. Q. What is meant by Apposition?

A. One Substantive added to another to explain some part of its meaning is said to be in Apposition to it, as, *Cassandra vates, Cassandra the prophetess.*

§ 99. Q. Name the three kinds of Apposition.

A. (a) The first kind is where the second Substantive comes close after the first and explains some part of its meaning, as,

*Marius consul triumphavit, Marius the consul triumphed;*

(b) The second is where the second Substantive is separated from the first by a Copulative Verb, as,

*Marius erat consul, Marius was consul.*

*Marius consul creatus est, Marius was made consul.*



- (c) The third is where both Substantives are in the Accusative after an Active Verb of *thinking, calling, or making*, as,

Marium consulem creaverunt, *They made Marius consul.*

*Note.* Apposition of the second and third kind is also explained by Grammarians as forming what is called the *Complement* of the Verb.

§ 100. *Q.* What is the rule for the Case of a Noun in Apposition?

*A.* It must be in the same Case as the Noun to which it refers.

### Rules of Time, Place, and Measure.

§ 101. *Q.* Give the rules for expressing *Duration* of Time [or time *how-long*], and a *Point* of Time [or time *when*].

*A.* Duration of Time is put in the Accusative, as, multos annos vixit, *he lived many years*; a Point of Time in the Ablative, as, primā luce surgit, *he rises at dawn* (lit. *at first light*).

§ 102. *Q.* How is *to* a place expressed?

*A.* By *ad* or *in* with Accusative, unless the place be a town or small island,<sup>1</sup> when the Preposition is omitted, as,

Ad portam eo, *I go to the gate.* But,

Romam eo, *I go to Rome.*

§ 103. *Q.* How is *from* a place expressed?

*A.* By *ab* or *ex* with Ablative, unless the place be a town or small island,<sup>2</sup> when the Preposition is omitted, as,

<sup>1</sup> Except also domum, *home*, rus, *the country*, and foras, *out of doors*; as domum ibo, *I will go home*; rus ibo, *I will go into the country*; foras ibo, *I will go out of doors*.

<sup>2</sup> Or domo, *from home*; rure, *from the country*; humo, *from the ground*.

Ex castris profectus est, *He set out from the camp.* But,  
Romā profectus est, *He set out from Rome.*

§ 104. Q. How is *at* a place expressed?

A. By *ad* with Accusative, or *in* with Ablative, unless the place be a town or small island, when the Locative Case must be used, as,

*Ad fluvium constitit, He halted at the river.* But,  
*Cortonaē mansit, He remained at Cortona.*

§ 105. Q. What is the Locative Case?

A. An old Case specially used to denote '*at* a place.' It ends like the Ablative, except in the Singular Number of the First and Second Declensions, where it ends like the Genitive, as,

*Romae, Sami, Athenis, Carthagine, Gadibus vixit, He has lived at Rome, Samos, Athens, Carthage, and Cadiz.*

§ 106. Q. What Nouns have a Locative Case in use?

A. Names of towns and small islands; the Case also survives in the words *domi, at home, foris, out of doors, humi, on the ground, ruri, in the country, vesperi, in the evening, belli, at the war, and militiae, on military service.*

§ 107. Q. How is Measure of Space expressed?

A. Usually by the Accusative, as,

*Fossa ducentos pedes longa, A trench 200 feet long.*

*Duo millia passuum progreditur, He advances two miles.*

But sometimes by the Ablative, as,

*Hiberna duobus millibus passuum aberant, The winter-quarters were two miles distant.*

*Note.* Measures in the Genitive, as, *fossa ducentorum pedum, a trench 200 feet long*, may be classed as Genitives of Quality. For Ablatives of Measure, as *multo major*, etc., see § 121 (g).

## On the Accusative Case.

§ 108. Q. Define the Accusative Case.

A. The Accusative is the Case of the Direct Object, and of Extension over Space. It also stands as Subject of the Infinitive Mood.

§ 109. Q. What is the Accusative of the Direct Object?

A. The Accusative which follows Transitive Verbs, as,  
Video taurum, *I see a bull.*

§ 110. Q. What other uses of the Accusative are there?

A. (a) The Cognate Accusative or Accusative of Kindred Meaning, which follows Intransitive Verbs, as,

Duram servit servitutem, *He serves a hard servitude.*

(b) The Accusative of Limitation, which is generally an Adjective or Pronoun in the Neuter Gender, and is added chiefly to Intransitive Verbs, as,

Quid refert, *What does it matter?*

Serā comans narcissus, *The late-blooming narcissus.*

(c) The Accusative of Respect, which follows certain Active Verbs, Participles, and Adjectives, and is translated by the sign *with respect to* or *as to*, as,

Latus humeros, *Broad as to his shoulders.*

(d) (e) (f) The Accusatives of Duration of Time, Motion to, and Measure, which have already been noticed (§§ 101, 102, 107).

(g) The Accusative of Exclamation, used with or without an Interjection, as,

Me miserum! *Unhappy me!* Proh deorum atque hominum fidem! *Alas for the faith of Gods and men!*

(h) The Accusative after a Preposition.

§ 111. Q. What Prepositions govern the Accusative?

A. Ante, apud, ad, adversus,  
Circum, circa, citra, cis,  
Contra, erga, extra, infra,  
Inter, intra, juxta, ob,  
Penes, pone, post, and praeter,  
Prope, propter, per, secundum,  
Supra, versus, ultra, trans,  
And unto these, if *motion* be intended,  
Let in, sub, super, subter, be appended.

Note. For the meaning of these Prepositions see §§ 318-347.

§ 112. Q. Explain the Accusative and Infinitive construction.

A. The Accusative and Infinitive is used as Subject of Impersonal Verbs, and as Object of Verbs of *declaring, perceiving, knowing, thinking, or believing*. The rule for translation is;—begin with the word *that*, and then construe the Accusative as a Nominative, and the Infinitive as a Finite Verb of the same Tense, as,

Caesarem amare constat, *It is well known that Caesar loves.* (Caesarem amare, *Subject*; constat, *Verb*.)

Caesarem amavisse scimus, *We know that Caesar has loved.* (Scimus, *Verb*; Caesarem amavisse, *Object*.)

§ 113. Q. Give a rule for translating the Conjunction *that* into Latin.

When *that* means *the fact that* it is usually translated by Accusative and Infinitive, as,

Nuntiat Caesarem rediisse, *He announces (the fact) that Caesar has returned.*

But when *that* means *in order that* or *so that* it is translated by *ut* with Subjunctive, as,

Serunt, *ut* metant, *They sow that they may reap.*

Tam ignavus est *ut* nihil discat, *He is so lazy that he learns nothing.*

§ 114. Q. What Verbs take two Accusatives?

A. Verbs of *asking* and *teaching*, and *celo*, *to conceal*, as,

Nos sententiam rogavit, *He asked us our opinion.*

Nos hanc rem celavit, *He concealed this matter from us.*

*Note.* The Accusative of the *thing asked* or *taught* remains even when the Verb is in the Passive Voice, as, Rogatur sententiam, *He is asked his opinion*; Docta est litteras, *She has been taught her letters.*

### On the Dative Case.

§ 115. Q. Define the Dative Case.

A. The Dative is the Case of the Indirect Object.

*Note.* The Indirect Object in the person (or thing) *affected* but *not directly acted on* by any action or quality.

§ 116. Q. What words can take a Dative of the Indirect Object?

A. (a) Transitive Verbs, which already have a direct Object, as, Fabio consilium dedi, *I gave advice to Fabius.*

(b) Intransitive and Passive Verbs, as, Plaudunt histrioni, *They applaud the actor*<sup>1</sup>, Fabio consilium datur, *advice is given to Fabius.* (c) Adjectives, as, Mihi amicus est, *He is friendly to me.*

§ 117. Q. What other uses of the Dative are there?

A. (a) The Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage (Dativus Commodi vel Incommodi), used generally of

<sup>1</sup> Lit. '*clap their hands* for the actor.' Many Verbs which seem from their English translation to be Transitive are really Intransitive in Latin and so require a Dative, e.g. noceo is '*I am hurtful*' rather than '*I hurt*,' &c.

*persons* after Verbs and Adjectives, and translated by the Preposition *for*, as,

Prædia aliis coluit, non sibi, *He cultivated farms for others, not for himself.*

(b) The Ethic Dative; a Dative of the Personal Pronouns, used in order to call particular attention to the person indicated. It admits of many renderings in English according to the sense of the passage, as,  
Quid mihi Celsus agit, *Pray tell me, what is Celsus doing?*  
Pulset mihi lictorem, *Let me see him strike a lictor.*  
Quid tibi vis, *What do you want?*

(c) The Dative of the Possessor, often used where we should have expected a Genitive, as,  
Caesari ad pedes se projecit, *He threw himself at Caesar's feet.*

(d) The Dative of Separation, or Difference, translated by *from*, and often used where we should have expected an Ablative (see § 250), as,

Adimam tibi compedes, *I will take your fetters from you.*  
Dissidens plebi, *Differing from the common people.*

(e) The Dative of the Agent, which is used with the Gerundive, with Passive Verbs and Participles (in poetry), and with Verbal Adjectives in *-bilis*, as,  
Hoc tibi non faciendum est, *This must not be done by you.*  
Non intellegor ulli, *I am understood by no one.*  
Bella matribus detestata, *Wars abhorred by mothers.*  
Nulli flebilior quam tibi, *By none more lamented than by thee.*

(f) The Dative of Purpose, as,  
Decemviri legibus scribendis creati, *Decemvirs created for the purpose of writing the laws.*

(g) The Dative of the Predicate, which in English we express by a Nominative, as,

Ea res impedimento erat, *That matter was a hindrance.*

§ 118. Q. What Verbs govern the Dative?

A. (a) All the compounds of **sum** except **possum**.

(b) All Verbs compounded with *bene*, *male*, *satis*, and many compounded with the following Prepositions,

*Ad*, *ab*, *ante*, *ex*, and *de*,

*Ob*, *sub*, *super*, *post*, and *prae*.

(c) 1. A dative put with *shew*, and *give*,

2. *Tell*, *envy*, *spare*, *permit*, *believe*,

3. *Persuade*, *command*, *obey*; to these

4. Add *threaten*, *succour*, *pardon*, *please*,

5. With *vacāre*, *displicere*,

6. *Servire*, *nubere*, *studere*,

7. *Heal*, *favour*, *hurt*, *resist*, and *indulgere*<sup>1</sup>.

Note 1. All the above take a Dative of the *person* (also occasionally of the *thing*); some of them, e. g. *dico*, *do*, *invideo*, *permitto*, *persuadeo*, *ignosco*, with some others not mentioned, as, *excuso*, *I plead in excuse*, *defendo*, *I ward off*, *grātūlor*, *I congratulate*, etc., take a Dative of the *person* and an Accusative of the *thing*, as, *do tibi librum*, *I give you a book*, *minor tibi mortem*, *I threaten death to you*, *threaten you with death*.

Note 2. *Jubeo*, *sino*, *laedo*, *delecto*, *sano*<sup>2</sup> take an Accusative: *tempōre* and *modēror* take an Accusative when they mean to *govern*, but a Dative when they mean to *restrain* or *refrain from*.

§ 119. Q. What is the Passive use of Verbs which in the Active Voice govern a Dative only?

A. They are only used *impersonally* in the Passive. Thus, *I persuade* is 'persuadeo,' but *I am persuaded* is not 'persuadeor,' but 'persuadetur mihi'; literally, *it is persuaded to me*.

<sup>1</sup> Line 1. *Ostendo*, *monstro*, etc.; *do*. 2. *Dico*, etc.; *invideo*; *parco*; *permitto*, *concedo*, *licet*, etc.; *credo*. 3. *Persuadeo*; *impero*, *mando*, etc.; *pareo* or *obedio*. 4. *Minor*; *succurro*, *auxilior*, *subvenio*, etc.; *ignosco* or *condono*; *placeo* or *libet*. 5. *Have leisure for*; *displease*. 6. *Be a slave to*; *be married to*; *pay attention to*. 7. *Medeor*; *faveo*; *noceo*; *resisto* or *repugno*; *indulge*.

<sup>2</sup> *Command*, *permit*, *hurt*, *please*, *heal*.

## On the Ablative Case.

§ 120. Q. Define the Ablative Case.

A. The Ablative is the Case which modifies the meaning of Verbs or Nouns, like an Adverb, especially as regards Place *whence*, Place *where*, and Instrument *with which*. Examples are,

a. Place *whence*, as, Athenis redit, *He returns from Athens* (§ 103).

b. Place *where*, as, terrā marique, *By land and sea*.

Note 1. This Ablative is often hardly distinguishable from the Locative, on account of the similarity of the endings.

Note 2. Here, perhaps, should be noticed the forms magni, *at a great price*, parvi, tanti, quanti, etc., which have lately been classed by etymologists as Locatives, though the old grammarians classed them as Genitives of Value.

c. Instrument *with which*, as, gladio pugnare, *to fight with a sword*.

§ 121. Q. What other uses of the Ablative are there?

A. (a) Separation, as, oppugnatione desistunt, *They desist from the attack*.

(b) Origin, as, clarissimo patre natus, *Born of a most noble father*.

(c) Comparison (used after Comparative Adjectives, and translated by *than*), as, Caesar major erat Crasso, *Caesar was greater than Crassus*.

(d) Price (or amount *at which*), as, hortum tribus talentis ēmit, *He bought a garden for three talents*.

(e) Time *when*, as, tertio anno, *in the third year*. This Ablative has been already noticed in § 101.

(f) Respect, as, ætate provectus, *Advanced in age*.

(g) Measure, as, tribus millibus passuum abest, *He is three miles distant*. Especially frequent after Comparative Adjectives, as, multo major, *much greater*.



- (h) Matter *with which*, as, parvo contentus, *contented with a little*.
- (j) Quality (translated by *of*, and never found except with Adjective in agreement), as, vir summā sapientiā, *a man of the utmost wisdom*.
- (k) Manner *how* (usually with Adjective in agreement), as, aut vi aut fraude fit injuria, *Injury is caused either by violence or fraud: suā sponte hoc fecit, He did this of his own accord*.
- (l) Cause, as, senectute mortuus est, *He died of old age*.
- (m) Agent *by whom*, after Passive Verbs (always used of a *living thing*, and always requiring the Preposition **a** or **ab**), as, Caesar a Bruto interfectus est, *Caesar was slain by Brutus*.

*Note.* Of the above uses, *a, b, c* may be referred more or less closely to *Place whence, d, e, f, g* to *Place where*, and *h, j, k, l, m* to *Instrument*.

(n) Ablative after a Preposition.

§ 122. Q. What Prepositions govern the Ablative?

A. **A** (**ab**), **absque**, **coram**, **de**,  
**palam**, **clam**, **cum**, **ex** or **e**,  
**sine**, **tenus**, **pro**, and **prae**.

And unto these, if *rest at* be intended,  
Let **in**, **sub**, **super**, **subter** be appended.

*Note.* For the meaning of these Prepositions see §§ 348-363.

§ 123. Q. What is the Ablative Absolute?

A. A construction formed of a Noun and Participle in agreement in the Ablative Case. No Preposition is needed in the translation. Thus,

Bello orto, Caesar profectus est, *War having arisen, Caesar set out*.

*Note.* Two Nouns in the Ablative Case often constitute an Ablative Absolute, the present Participle of the Verb *sum* (which is wanting in Latin), being understood, as, te duce, *you being leader*, Caesare invito, *Caesar being unwilling*.

§ 124. Q. What Verbs govern the Ablative?

A. *Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, potior, dignor, supersedeo*<sup>1</sup>, and Verbs of *wanting, being full, enriching, or depriving*.

Note. *Impleo, compleo, egeo, indigeo*<sup>2</sup> are also found with Genitive.

§ 125. Q. What Adjectives govern the Ablative?

A. *Dignus, indignus, fretus, extorris, liber*<sup>3</sup>, and Adjectives which signify *wanting, being full, enriching, or depriving*.

§ 126. Q. What Substantives govern the Ablative?

A. *Opus* and *usus*<sup>4</sup>.

### On the Genitive Case.

§ 127. Q. Define the Genitive Case.

A. The Genitive is the Case which qualifies Nouns, like an Adjective. It is also used as the Direct Object of Nouns and Adjectives, and as the Indirect Object of certain Verbs.

§ 128. Q. Distinguish between the Subjective and Objective Genitive.

A. The Subjective Genitive is a Genitive dependent on a Substantive, and regarded as the Subject from whence that Substantive proceeds, as, *Amor Dei, the love of God*, i.e. the love which *God* has for us (where *God* is the Subject who loves).

The Objective Genitive is a Genitive dependent on

<sup>1</sup> *Perform, enjoy, use, eat, get possession of, deem worthy, desist from.*  
[*Potior* also takes a Genitive].

<sup>2</sup> *Fill, fill, be in want, be in want.*

<sup>3</sup> *Worthy, unworthy, relying on, banished, free.* [*Dignus* and *indignus* sometimes, though rarely, take a genitive, as, *magnum indignus avorum, unworthy of my great ancestors.*]

<sup>4</sup> *Need, use.*

a Substantive, and regarded as the Object towards which that Substantive, is directed, as, *Amor Dei*, *love of God*, i.e. the love which *we* have *for God* (where God is the Object of our love).

§ 129. Q. Classify the uses of the Genitive.

A. (a) Genitive of the Possessor or Author, as, *horti Caesaris*, *the gardens of Caesar*; *pater Bruti*, *the father of Brutus*.

(b) Partition (when the Genitive of a Noun signifying a *whole* is dependent on a Noun signifying a *part of that whole*), as, *magna pars militum*, *a great part of the soldiers*; *fortissimus Graecorum*, *the bravest of the Greeks*.

(c) Definition (showing of what a thing consists), as, *honus consulatūs*, *the honour of the consulship*; *cadus vini*, *a cask of wine*; *vox voluptatis*, *the word 'pleasure.'*

(d) Quality (always found with Adjective in agreement), as, *vir summae sapientiae*, *a man of the utmost wisdom*.

Note 1. Quality is also expressed by the Ablative. See § 121 (k).

Note 2. The above are all to be classed as Subjective Genitives.

(e) Object of Substantives, as, *timor hostium*, *fear of the enemy*.

(f) Object of Adjectives, as, *avidus laudis*, *eager for praise*.

(g) Indirect Object of Verbs, as, *me majestatis accusat*, *he accuses me of treason*; *datae fidei reminiscitur*, *he remembers his promise given*.

(h) Respect or Cause (usually in imitation of Greek constructions), as, *integer aevi*, *unimpaired in age*;

notus in fratres animi paterni, *well known for his paternal affection towards his brothers.*

Note 3. For the Genitive of Value see § 120, b, Note 2.

§ 130. Sometimes the Substantive on which a Genitive is dependent is omitted; of this there are two cases, (a) of place, as, *ventum erat ad Vestae, we had come to Vesta's*, i.e. Vesta's temple; just as we say in English 'to go to St. Paul's,' i.e. St. Paul's Cathedral; (b) when the governing Substantive signifies *nature, duty, part, characteristic, or business*, as, *pastoris est tondere oves, it is the duty of a shepherd to shear his sheep.* In both these cases the Genitive is known as *Elliptic*.

§ 131. Q. What Verbs govern a Genitive?

A. (1) Reminiscor, obliviscor, memini, recordor, misereor, miseresco, potior, interest, and rēfert; also certain Verbs signifying *want*, as, *egeo, indigeo*.<sup>1</sup>

Note. Reminiscor, obliviscor, memini, and recordor also take an Accusative; and potior an Ablative.

(2) Verbs of *accusing, convicting, condemning, acquitting, admonishing, and reminding*, take an Accusative of the Person and a Genitive of the Thing, as,

Furti me accusat, *He accuses me of theft.*

### The Impersonal Verbs.

§ 132. Q. What is the construction after the Impersonal Verbs?

A. The Unipersonals take an Accusative of the *Person*, except licet, libet, and liquet, which take a Dative; and they may all take an Infinitive Mood, as,

Abire me oportet, *I ought to go away.*

Abire mihi licet, *I am permitted to go away.*

Note 1. Licet and others sometimes take a Subjunctive with or without *ut*, as, *licet mihi abeam, or ut abeam, I am permitted to go away.*

Note 2. Miseret, piget, paenitet, pudet, and taedet may also take a Genitive of the *person or thing* that causes the feeling, as, *miseret me tui, I pity you, taedet me vitae, I am weary of life.*

<sup>1</sup> Remember, forget, remember, remember, pity, pity, get possession of, it makes a difference, it concerns, be in want, be in want.

Other Verbs used Impersonally take a Dative of the Person, often with an Infinitive, or *ut* Clause, as,  
*Expēdit mihi abire, or, ut abeam, It is expedient for me to go away.*

But *deceat, dedecet, juvat, delectat, fallit, fugit*,<sup>1</sup> take an Accusative, as,

*Te pugnare juvat, You delight in fighting.*

§ 133. *Q.* What is the construction after *interest* and *refert*?<sup>2</sup>

*A.* They take a Genitive of the Person, often with an Infinitive or *ut* Clause. But instead of *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, the forms *meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā*, are used, as,

*Nec Caesaris nec nostrā interest ut venias, It is neither of importance to Caesar nor to us that you should come.*

#### On the Infinitive Mood.

§ 134. *Q.* What is the Infinitive Mood?

*A.* It is, properly speaking, a Verb-Noun, and may be Nominative, as,

*Dormire est jucundum, to sleep is pleasant, or sleeping is pleasant,*

or Accusative, as,

*Cupio dormire, I wish to sleep.*

§ 135. *Q.* What are the Gerunds?

*A.* They are Cases of the Infinitive, the Gerund in *-dum* being Accusative (after a Preposition), the Gerund in *-di* Genitive, and the Gerund in *-do* Dative or Ablative.

<sup>1</sup> *It becomes or beseems, misbecomes, delights, delights, escapes one's notice, escapes one's notice.*

<sup>2</sup> *It is of importance to or makes a difference to, it concerns or is of importance to.*

§ 136. Q. What are the Supines?

A. These are also Cases of the Infinitive, the Supine in **-um** being Accusative (only used after Verbs of motion, as, eo lusum, *I go to play*), and the Supine in **-u** Ablative (of Respect), after Adjectives, as, horrendum dictu, *horrible to be told*, lit. horrible in the telling.

§ 137. Q. How is the Future Infinitive Passive formed?

A. By the Supine in **-um** and **iri** the Present Infinitive Passive of eo, *I go*, used *Impersonally*, as, credo occisum iri Caesarem, *I believe that Caesar will be killed*; literally, credo *I believe*, iri *that there is a going*, occisum *to kill*, Caesarem *Caesar*.

#### On the Gerund and Gerundive.

§ 138. Q. Can the Gerunds take an Object in the Accusative Case?

A. Sometimes<sup>1</sup>, as, Efferor studio patres vestros videndi, *I am elated with the desire of seeing your fathers*. But usually the Noun is put into the Case of the Gerund, and instead of the Gerund the Gerundive is used, agreeing in Gender, Number, and Case with the Noun.

§ 139. Q. Give an example.

A. Instead of saying, amor exercendi virtutem, *the love of practising virtue*, we usually say, amor exercendae virtutis.

<sup>1</sup> Especially when a Pronoun or Adjective is the Object, as, studio illud videndi, *with a desire of seeing that thing*; studio multa videndi, *with desire of seeing many things*. This is to prevent ambiguity, because studio illius videndi might mean *with a desire of seeing that man or that thing*; studio multorum videndorum, might mean *with a desire of seeing many men, or many things*.

§ 140. Q. How is the word *must* translated into Latin?

A. In the Passive Voice by the Gerundive; in the Active by the forms *amandum est*, *we must love*, *monendum est*, *we must advise*, etc., which are probably the neuters of the Gerundive.

§ 141. Q. Can *amandum est* take an Accusative of the Object after it, as, *Amandum est Deum*, *We must love God*?

A. No; we must say, *Amandus est Deus*, *God must be loved*. But after Verbs which only govern the Dative, a Dative of the Object is used, as, *Parcendum est hostibus*, *We must spare our enemies*.

*Note.* *Fungor*, *fruor*, *utor*, *vescor*, and *potior*, which govern an Ablative, have both Gerund and Gerundive; hence we may say, *utendum est aetate*, *we must make use of our age*, or, *utenda est aetas*, (the latter form very rare).

§ 142. Q. In what case is the Agent, or *living person* by whom a thing is done, put after the Gerundive?

A. In the Dative, as, *Canendum est poetae*, *The poet must sing* [literally, 'it is to be sung *by* the poet']; unless the Verb be one of those which only govern a Dative, when a *or ab* with Ablative must be used, as, *Credendum est a poetâ*, *The poet must believe*.

*Note.* This is to prevent ambiguity; *nobis credendum est poetae* might mean either *the poet must believe us* or *we must believe the poet*.

### Rules for Qui, Quum, Ut, Dum, and the Sequence of Tenses.

§ 143. Q. What is the rule for the Mood of the Verb after *qui*?

A. *Qui*, meaning *who* or *which*, takes an Indicative, as, *qui peccat miser est*, *He who sins is miserable*. But if there is implied in it *since*, *in order that*, or *such that*, it takes a Subjunctive, as,

Stultus es qui huic credas, *You are foolish for believing this man.*

Mittit equites qui agros vastent, *He sends cavalry to lay waste the fields.*

Non est qui timeat, *He is not the man to be afraid.*

*Note.* Qui is also found with Subjunctive in the sense of *although*.

§ 144. Q. What is the Rule for quum (or eum)?

A. Quum, meaning *since* or *although*, always takes a Subjunctive, as, quae quum ita sint, *Since these things are so*; quum, meaning *when*, takes a Subjunctive if the sense requires an Imperfect or Pluperfect Tense; otherwise it takes an Indicative, as,

Quum Athenis essem, *When I was at Athens.*

Quum Athenas pervenisset, *When he had arrived at Athens.*

Vix haec locutus erat quum clamor exortus est, *Scarcely had he said these things when a shout arose.*

§ 145. Q. What is the rule for ut?

A. Ut, meaning *as*, *when*, or *how*, takes an Indicative, as, ut vales, *How are you?* ut, meaning *in order that*, or *so that*, takes a Subjunctive, as,

Edimus ut vivamus, *We eat that we may live.*

Tam potens est Deus ut omnia regat, *God is so powerful that he rules all things.*

*Note.* The Rules given in the three foregoing sections must be understood to apply only to Oratio Recta, so far as the use of the Indicative is concerned. When the learner has mastered the Note on the Subjunctive given in §§197-203, he will understand that whenever a Sentence is Oblique the use of an Indicative is inadmissible.

§ 146. Q. How are *in order that . . . not* and *so that . . . not* translated?

A. *In order that . . . not* by *nē*; *so that . . . not* by *ut non*.



§ 147. *Q.* What is the rule for *dum*?

*A.* (*a*) *Dum*, meaning *while*, takes an Indicative, and when used of past events is usually found with a Historic Present, as,

*Dum Romani consultant, Saguntum oppugnabatur,*  
*While the Romans were consulting, Saguntum was besieged.*

(*b*) *Dum*, meaning *until*, takes a Subjunctive or Indicative, according as the idea of expectation or of mere time prevails, as,

*Maneamus dum vesperscat, Let us wait until evening comes on.*

*Tutus erat, dum vespervit, He was safe till evening came on.*

(*c*) *Dum* (or *dummodo*), meaning *provided that*, always takes a Subjunctive, as,

*Oderint dum metuant, Let them hate provided they fear.*

*Note.* Rules for *Quod* and *Si* are given in §§ 297 and 394 respectively.

§ 148. *Q.* What is the rule for the Sequence of Tenses?<sup>1</sup>

*A.* **Primary Tenses are followed by Primary, Historic by Historic.** Examples are:—

*Quaero, quaesivi, quaeram, quid scribat, quid scripserit, quid scripturus sit, quid scripturus fuerit.*

*I ask or am asking, I have asked, I shall ask, what he writes or is writing, what he wrote or has written, what he will write, what he would have written.*

*Quaerebam, quaesivi, quaesiveram, quid scriberet, quid scripsisset, quid scriptura esset, quid scriptura fuisset.*

*I was asking, I asked, I had asked, what she wrote or was writing, what she had written, what she would write, what she would have written.*

<sup>1</sup> By Sequence (or Consecution) of Tenses we mean the correspondence regularly observed between the tenses of Dependent or Subordinate Verbs in a Sentence and those of their Principal Verbs.

# APPENDIX.

## A TABLE OF VERBS, SHEWING THE PRESENT, INFINITIVE, PERFECT, AND SUPINE.

*Note.*—Some Verbs, as *lāvo*, have forms belonging to more than one Conjugation. These are bracketed and placed in the earliest in order of the Conjugations to which either of the forms can be referred.

\* \* \* Forms enclosed in round brackets, as, (*jutum*) are rarely used.

### § 149. First Conjugation.

	Present.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
Regular Form,	-o,	-are,	-avi,	-atum.
as,	amo,	amāre,	amāvi,	amātum.

Exceptions:—

(a) Those having -ui in Perfect, -*ītum* or -*tum* in Supine.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
1. <i>crēpo</i> ,	<i>crepāre</i> ,	<i>crepūi</i> ,	<i>crepītum</i> ,	<i>creak.</i>
2. <i>cūbo</i> ,	<i>cubāre</i> ,	<i>cubūi</i> ,	<i>cubītum</i> ,	<i>lie down.</i>
3. <i>dōmo</i> ,	<i>domāre</i> ,	<i>domūi</i> ,	<i>domītum</i> ,	<i>tame.</i>
4. <i>ēnēcō</i> ,	<i>enecāre</i> ,	<i>enecūi</i> ,	<i>enectum</i> ,	<i>kill</i> <sup>1</sup> .
5. <i>explicō</i> ,	<i>explicāre</i> ,	{ <i>explicūi</i> , <i>explicāvi</i> ,	{ <i>explicītum</i> , <i>explicātum</i> ,	} <i>unfold</i> <sup>2</sup> .
6. <i>frīco</i> ,	<i>fricāre</i> ,	<i>fricūi</i> ,	<i>frictum</i> ,	<i>rub.</i>
7. <i>mīco</i> ,	<i>micāre</i> ,	<i>micūi</i> ,	. . .	<i>glitter</i> <sup>3</sup>
8. <i>sēcō</i> ,	<i>secāre</i> ,	<i>secūi</i> ,	<i>sectum</i> ,	<i>cut.</i>
9. <i>sōno</i> ,	<i>sonāre</i> ,	<i>sonūi</i> ,	<i>sonītum</i> ,	<i>sound.</i>
10. <i>tōno</i> ,	<i>tonāre</i> ,	<i>tonūi</i> ,	<i>tonītum</i> ,	<i>thunder.</i>
11. <i>vētō</i> ,	<i>vetāre</i> ,	<i>vetūi</i> ,	<i>vetītum</i> ,	<i>forbid.</i>

<sup>1</sup> The simple form *neco*, *to kill*, is regular.

<sup>2</sup> So nearly all compounds of *plico*, *to fold*, which has no Perfect or Supine. But *duplico*, *double*, *multiplīco*, *multiply*, *supplīco*, *supplicate*, are regular, not being compounds of *plico*.

<sup>3</sup> Compounds have -*ātum* in Supine. *Dimīco*, *contend*, has Perf. -*avi* or -*ui*.

(b) Those having -vi in Perfect, -tum in Supine.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
1. jūvo,	juvāre,	jūvi,	(jūtum),	<i>help.</i>
2. lāvo,	{ lavāre, lavēre,	lāvi, (lavavi),	{ lautum, lōtum, lavātum,	<i>wash.</i>
3. pōto,	potāre,	potāvi,	{ potātum, pōtum,	<i>drink.</i>

(c) Those having reduplicated<sup>1</sup> Perfect, -tum in Supine.

1. do,	dāre,	dēdi,	dātum,	<i>give.</i>
2. sto,	stāre,	stēti,	stātum,	<i>stand</i> <sup>2</sup> .

### § 150. Second Conjugation.

	Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.
Regular Form,	-ēo,	-ēre,	-ūi,	-itum.
as,	monēo,	monēre,	monūi.	monitum.

Exceptions:—

(a) Those having regular Perf. in -ui, but -tum or -sum in Supine.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
1. censeo,	censēre,	censūi,	censum,	<i>reckon, think.</i>
2. doceo,	docēre,	docūi,	doctum,	<i>teach.</i>
3. misceo,	miscēre,	miscūi,	{ mixtum, mistum,	<i>mix.</i>
4. retineo,	retinēre,	retinūi,	rētentum,	<i>retain</i> <sup>3</sup> .
5. torreo,	torrēre,	torrūi,	tostum,	<i>parch.</i>

(b) Those having -vi (-ui) in Perf., -tum or -itum in Supine.

1. aboleo,	abolēre,	{ abolevi, abolui,	abolitum,	<i>abolish.</i>
2. { adoleo, adolesco,	{ adolēre, adoles- cēre,	{ adolevi, adolui,	adultum,	{ enlarge. grow <sup>4</sup> .

<sup>1</sup> That is, having the first consonant of the Present, together with a vowel, prefixed to the Perfect Tense, as do, *de-di*. In the Perfects of Verbs compounded with do and sto the initial consonants of the Verb, not of the Preposition, appear as the reduplication of the Perfect, *e.g.* consto, *con-stiti*.

<sup>2</sup> The compounds make -stiti in Perf., as, praesto, praestiti, and seldom have a Supine.

<sup>3</sup> So all compounds of 'teneo,' *to hold*, which has no Supine.

<sup>4</sup> Adoleo (*usually* in Perf. adolui), *to enlarge*, hence as sacrificial term (1) *to honour* by sacrifice, (2) *to burn* sacrifice. Adolesco (*usually* in Perf. adolēvi), *to grow* (intrans.).

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
3. conīveo,	conivēre,	{conīvi, conixi,}	. . .	wink.
4. dēleo,	delēre,	delēvi,	delētum,	destroy.
4. ferveo,	fervēre,	ferbui,}	. . .	boil.
5. ferveo,	fervēre,	fervi,}	. . .	boil.
6. flēo,	flēre,	flēvi,	flētum,	weep.
7. impleo,	implēre,	implēvi,	implētum,	fill <sup>1</sup> .
8. neo,	nēre,	nēvi,	nētum,	spin.
9. pāveo,	pavēre,	pāvi,	. . .	be afraid.

(c) Those having -si in Perf., -sum or -tum in Supine.

1. absorbeo,	absorbēre,	{absorpsi, absorbui,}	{absorptum),	swallow up <sup>2</sup> .
2. algeo,	algēre,	alsi,	. . .	be cold.
3. ardeo,	ardēre,	arsi,	arsum,	be on fire.
4. augeo,	augēre,	auxi,	auctum,	make bigger.
5. fulgeo,	fulgēre,	fulsi,	. . .	glitter.
5. fulgo,	fulgēre,	(frixi),	. . .	be cold.
6. frigeo,	frigēre,	haesi,	haesum,	stick.
7. haereo,	haerēre,	(indultum),	(indultum),	indulge.
8. indulgeo,	indulgēre,	jussi,	jussum,	command.
9. jūbeo,	jubēre,	mansi,	mansum,	remain, await.
10. māneo,	manēre,	luxi,	(luctum),	mourn.
11. lugeo,	lugēre,	mulsi,	mulsum,	soothe.
12. mulceo,	mulcēre,	mulsi,	{(mulsum), mulctum,}	milk.
13. mulgeo,	mulgēre,	risi,	risum,	laugh.
14. rīdeo,	ridēre,	suasi,	suasum,	advise.
15. suadeo,	suadēre,	torsi,	tortum,	twist.
16. torquēo,	torquēre,	tersi,	tersum,	wipe.
17. tergeo,	tergēre,	. . .	. . .	swell.
17. tergo,	tergēre,	ursi,	. . .	urge.
18. turgeo,	turgēre,	. . .	. . .	. . .
19. urgeo,	urgēre,	. . .	. . .	. . .

(d) Those having -i in Perf., -tum or -sum in Supine.

1. cāveo,	cavēre,	cāvi,	cautum,	beware.
2. fāveo,	favēre,	fāvi,	fautum,	favour.
3. fōveo,	fovēre,	fōvi,	fōtum,	cherish.
4. mōveo,	movēre,	mōvi,	motum,	move.
5. vōveo,	vovēre,	vōvi,	vōtum,	vow.

<sup>1</sup> So all compounds of 'pleo,' to fill, which is never found in an unpounded form.

<sup>2</sup> So all compounds of sorbeo, sorbēre, sorbui, no Sup., to swallow.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
6. prandeo,	prandēre,	prandi,	pransum,	<i>dine.</i>
7. respondeo,	respondēre,	respondi,	responsum,	<i>answer</i> <sup>1</sup> .
8. sēdeo,	sedēre,	sēdi,	sessum,	<i>sit</i> <sup>2</sup> .
9. vīdeo,	vidēre,	vīdi,	visum,	<i>see.</i>

(e) Those having reduplicated Perf., -sum in Supine.

1. mordeo,	mordēre,	mōmordi,	morsum,	<i>bite.</i>
2. pendeo,	pendēre,	pēpendi,	pensum,	<i>be suspended.</i>
3. spondeo,	spondēre,	spōpondi,	sponsum,	<i>promise.</i>
4. tondeo,	tondēre,	tōtondi,	tonsum,	<i>shear.</i>

(f) Semi-deponent Verbs.

1. audeo,	audēre,	ausus sum,	<i>dare.</i>
2. gaudeo,	gaudēre,	gavissus sum,	<i>rejoice.</i>
3. sōleo,	solēre,	solītus sum,	<i>be accustomed.</i>

(g) The following have regular Perfect but seldom or never a Supine:—arceo, *ward off*; caleo, *be warm* (calītum); egeo, *be in want*; floreo, *flourish*; horreo, *shudder*; lateo, *lie hid*; madeo, *be wet*; niteo, *shine*; oleo, *smell*; pateo, *lie open*; rigeo, *be stiff*; rubeo, *be red*; sileo, *be silent*; studeo, *pay attention to*; stupeo, *be amazed*; tepeo, *be warm*; timeo, *fear*; tumeo, *swell*; vigeo, *flourish*; vireo, *be green*.

### § 151. Third Conjugation.

No regular form. Infinitive ends in -ēre. The principal varieties of Conjugation are the following:—

(a) Those having -si in Perf., -tum in Supine. [Note. Perfects in -xi are considered as ending in -si, since x is only a double letter standing for cs, gs, ks, or qs.]

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
1. allicio,	allicēre,	allexi,	allectum,	<i>entice</i> <sup>3</sup> .
2. aspicio,	aspicēre,	aspexi,	aspectum,	<i>behold</i> <sup>4</sup> .
3. carpo,	carpēre,	carpsi,	carptum,	<i>pluck.</i>
4. cingo,	cingēre,	cinxī,	cinctum,	<i>surround.</i>
5. cōmo,	comēre,	compsi,	comptum,	<i>adorn.</i>

<sup>1</sup> So all compounds of spondeo, *to promise*. Note that compounds of reduplicated Verbs rarely retain the reduplication.

<sup>2</sup> The compounds, except circumsedeo and supersedeo, make -sideo, -sēdi, -sessum, as obsideo, *to besiege*.

<sup>3</sup> So all compounds [except 'elicio'] of the unused Verb lacio, *to entice*.

<sup>4</sup> So all compounds of the unused Verb specio, *to see*.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
6. contemno,	contemnere,	contempsi,	contemptum,	<i>despise</i> <sup>1</sup> .
7. cōquo,	coquere,	coxi,	coctum,	<i>cook</i> .
8. dēmo,	demere,	dempsi,	demptum,	<i>take away</i> .
9. dīco,	dicere,	dixi,	dictum,	<i>say, tell</i> .
10. dūco,	ducere,	duxi,	ductum,	<i>lead</i> .
11. emungo,	emungere,	emunxi,	emunctum,	<i>blow the nose</i> .
12. extinguo,	extinguere,	extinxi,	extinctum,	<i>extinguish</i> <sup>2</sup> .
13. fingo,	ingere,	finxi,	fictum,	<i>invent</i> .
14. frīgo,	frigere,	(frixi),	frictum,	<i>roast</i> .
15. gēro,	gerere,	gessi,	gestum,	<i>carry on</i> .
16. infligo,	infligere,	infixi,	inflictum,	<i>inflict</i> <sup>3</sup> .
17. jungo,	jungere,	junxi,	junctum,	<i>join</i> .
18. (ninguo),	ninguere,	(ninx),	. . .	<i>snow</i> <sup>4</sup> .
19. nūbo,	nubere,	nupsi,	nuptum,	<i>be married</i> <sup>5</sup> .
20. pingo,	pingere,	pinxi,	pictum,	<i>paint</i> .
21. plango,	plangere,	planxi,	plantum,	<i>beat the breast</i> .
22. prōmo,	promere,	prompsi,	promptum,	<i>draw out</i> .
23. rēgo,	regere,	rexī,	rectum,	<i>rule</i> <sup>6</sup> .
24. rēpo,	repere,	repsi,	(reptum),	<i>creep</i> .
25. {scalpo,	scalpere,	scalpsi,	scalptum,	} <i>engrave</i> .
{sculpo,	sculpere,	sculpsi,	sculptum,	
26. scribo,	scribere,	scripsi,	scriptum,	<i>write</i> .
27. stringo,	stringere,	strinxi,	strictum,	<i>squeeze</i> .
28. strūo,	struere,	struxi,	structum,	<i>build</i> .
29. sūgo,	sugere,	suxi,	suctum,	<i>suck</i> .
30. sūmo,	sumere,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	<i>take</i> .
31. tēgo,	tegere,	texi,	tectum,	<i>cover</i> .
32. tinguo,	tinguere,	tinxi,	tinctum,	<i>dye</i> .
33. trāho,	trahere,	traxi,	tractum,	<i>draw</i> .
34. unguo,	unguere,	unxi,	unctum,	<i>anoint</i> .
35. ūro,	urere,	ussi,	ustum,	<i>burn</i> .
36. vēho,	vehere,	vexi,	vectum,	<i>carry</i> .
37. vīvo,	vivere,	vixi,	victum,	<i>live</i> .

<sup>1</sup> The simple form *temno*, *despise*, is seldom found in Perf. or Supine.

<sup>2</sup> So all compounds of *stinguo*, to *quench*, which has no Perfect or Supine.

<sup>3</sup> So all compounds of the unused Verb *figo*, to *smite*, except *profigo*, *reut*, which is of the 1st Conjugation.

<sup>4</sup> Not found except as Impersonal *ninguit*, it *snows*, *ninxit*, etc.

<sup>5</sup> Lit. *put on a bridal veil*, and always, therefore, used of a *woman*.

<sup>6</sup> The compounds make *-rigo*, *-rexī*, *-rectum*, as *dirigo*, *direct*. *Pergo*, *proceed*, and *surgo*, *rise*, are for *perrigo*, *surrigo* (*per-rigo*, *sub-rigo*), and make *pergere*, *perrexī*, *perrectum*, *surgere*, *surrexī*, *surrectum*.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
7. <i>facesso</i> ,	<i>facessere</i> ,	<i>facessi</i> ,	<i>facessitum</i> ,	<i>execute.</i>
8. <i>facio</i> <sup>1</sup> ,	<i>facere</i> ,	<i>fēci</i> ,	<i>factum</i> ,	<i>make, do.</i>
9. <i>frango</i> <sup>2</sup> ,	<i>frangere</i> ,	<i>frēgi</i> ,	<i>fractum</i> ,	<i>break.</i>
10. <i>fugio</i> ,	<i>fugere</i> ,	<i>fūgi</i> ,	<i>fugitum</i> ,	<i>fly.</i>
11. <i>īco</i> ,	<i>īcere</i> ,	<i>īci</i> ,	<i>ictum</i> ,	<i>strike.</i>
12. <i>impingo</i> ,	<i>impingere</i> ,	<i>impēgi</i> ,	<i>impactum</i> ,	<i>strike upon</i> <sup>3</sup> .
13. <i>jacio</i> <sup>4</sup> ,	<i>jācere</i> ,	<i>jēci</i> ,	<i>jactum</i> ,	<i>throw.</i>
14. <i>lambo</i> ,	<i>lambere</i> ,	<i>lambi</i> ,	. . .	<i>lick.</i>
15. <i>lēgo</i> <sup>5</sup> ,	<i>lēgere</i> ,	<i>lēgi</i> ,	<i>lectum</i> ,	<i>choose, read.</i>
16. <i>relinquo</i> ,	<i>relinquere</i> ,	<i>reliqui</i> ,	<i>relictum</i> ,	<i>leave</i> <sup>6</sup> .
17. <i>rumpo</i> ,	<i>rumpere</i> ,	<i>rūpi</i> ,	<i>ruptum</i> ,	<i>burst through.</i>
18. <i>vinco</i> ,	<i>vincere</i> ,	<i>vīci</i> .	<i>victum</i> ,	<i>conquer.</i>

(e) Those having *-i* in Perf., *-sum* in Supine.

1. <i>accendo</i> ,	<i>accendere</i> ,	<i>accendi</i> ,	<i>accensum</i> ,	<i>set on fire</i> <sup>7</sup> .
2. <i>contundo</i> ,	<i>contundere</i> ,	<i>contūdi</i> ,	{ <i>contunsum</i> ,	{ <i>bruise</i> <sup>8</sup> .
			<i>contūsum</i> ,	
3. <i>defendo</i> ,	<i>defendere</i> ,	<i>defendi</i> ,	<i>defensum</i> ,	<i>defend</i> <sup>9</sup> .
4. <i>ēdo</i> ,	<i>ēdere</i> ,	<i>ēdi</i> ,	<i>ēsum</i> ,	<i>eat.</i>
5. <i>excūdo</i> ,	<i>excudere</i> ,	<i>excūdi</i> ,	<i>excūsum</i> ,	<i>hammer out</i> <sup>10</sup> .
6. <i>findo</i> ,	<i>findere</i> ,	<i>fīdi</i> ,	<i>fissum</i> ,	<i>cleave.</i>
7. <i>fōdio</i> ,	<i>fōdere</i> ,	<i>fōdi</i> ,	<i>fossum</i> ,	<i>dig.</i>
8. <i>fundo</i> ,	<i>fundere</i> ,	<i>fūdi</i> ,	<i>fūsum</i> ,	<i>pour.</i>
9. <i>mando</i> ,	<i>mandere</i> ,	<i>mandi</i> ,	<i>mansum</i> ,	<i>chew.</i>
10. <i>occīdo</i> ,	<i>occidere</i> ,	<i>occīdi</i> ,	<i>occāsum</i> ,	<i>fall</i> <sup>11</sup> .
11. <i>occido</i> ,	<i>occidere</i> ,	<i>occidi</i> ,	<i>occisum</i> ,	<i>kill</i> <sup>12</sup> .

<sup>1</sup> *Facio*, when compounded with a Preposition, makes *-ficio*, *-ficere*, *-fēci*, *-fectum*, and the Passive is formed regularly in *-or*, as *afficio*, *affect*, Pass. *afficior*. But when compounded with *bene*, *satis*, *male*, or a Verb, the form *-facio* is retained, and the Passive is *-fio*, as *benefacio*, *benefit*, *patefacio*, *lay open*, Pass. *benefio*, *patefio*. [*Confieri* is found in Virg. Aen. iv. 116.]

<sup>2</sup> The compounds make *-fringo*, *-fringere*, *-frēgi*, *-fractum*, as *effringo*.

<sup>3</sup> From *pango*, *to fasten*. Some compounds retain the *a*, as *depango*.

<sup>4</sup> The compounds make *-jicio*, *-jicere*, *-jeci*, *-jectum*, as *conjicio*.

<sup>5</sup> The compounds are sometimes written *-lego*, as *perlēgo*, *read through*, sometimes *-līgo*, as *delīgo*, *choose*. Most make *-lēgi*, *-lectum* in Perfect and Supine; but *diligo*, *love*, *intellego*, *understand*, and *neglego*, *neglect*, make *-lexi*, *-lectum*.

<sup>6</sup> So all compounds of *linquo*, Perf. *liqui*, *to leave*, which has no Supine.

<sup>7</sup> So all compounds of the unused Verb *cando*, *to set on fire*.

<sup>8</sup> So most compounds of *tundo*, *to beat* or *pound*.

<sup>9</sup> So all compounds of the unused Verb *fendo*, *to strike*.

<sup>10</sup> So all compounds of *cūdo*, *cūdi*, *cūsum*, *to hammer* (rarely used).

<sup>11</sup> So all compounds of *cado*, *to fall*; but the Supine is rarely found.

<sup>12</sup> So all compounds of *caedo*, *to cut* or *kill*.



Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
12. pando,	pandēre,	pandi,	{ pansum, passum, }	<i>unfold.</i>
13. percello,	percellēre,	perculi,	perculsum,	<i>strike down.</i>
14. prehendo,	prehendēre,	prehendi,	prehensum,	<i>seize.</i>
15. repello,	repellēre,	repuli,	repulsum,	<i>repel<sup>1</sup>.</i>
16. scando <sup>2</sup> ,	scandēre,	scandi,	scansum,	<i>climb.</i>
17. scindo,	scindēre,	scidi,	scissum,	<i>cut.</i>
18. sīdo,	sīdēre,	sīdi.	. . . .	<i>settle.</i>
19. succurro,	succurrēre,	succurri,	succursum,	<i>succour<sup>3</sup>.</i>
20. suspendo,	suspendēre,	suspendi,	suspensum,	<i>suspend<sup>4</sup>.</i>
21. vello,	vellēre,	{ velli, vulsi, }	vulsum,	<i>pluck.</i>
22. verro,	verrēre,	verri,	versum,	<i>sweep.</i>
23. verto,	vertēre,	verti,	versum,	<i>turn.</i>
24. vīso,	vīsēre,	vīsi,	vīsum,	<i>visit.</i>

(f) Those having -ūi in Perf., -tum or -sum in Supine.

1. accumbo,	accumbēre,	accūbui,	accubitum,	<i>sit at meat<sup>5</sup>.</i>
2. ālo,	ālēre,	ālūi,	{ alitum, altum, }	<i>nourish.</i>
3. cōlo,	cōlēre,	cōlūi,	cultum,	<i>cultivate.</i>
4. compesco,	compescēre,	compescui,	. . . .	<i>restrain.</i>
5. concīno,	concinēre,	concinui,	(concentum),	{ sing in har- mony <sup>6</sup> .
6. consūlo,	consūlēre,	consūlūi,	consultum,	<i>consult.</i>
7. ēlicīo,	ēlicēre,	ēlicūi,	ēlicitum,	<i>elicit.</i>
8. excello,	excellēre,	excellui,	excelsum,	<i>excel<sup>7</sup>.</i>
9. frēmō,	frēmēre,	frēmūi,	frēmītum,	<i>roar.</i>
10. frendo,	frendēre,	(frendui),	{ frēsum, fressum, }	<i>gnash the teeth.</i>
11. fūro,	furēre,	(furai),	. . . .	<i>rage.</i>
12. gēmo,	gēmēre,	gēmūi,	gēmītum,	<i>groan.</i>
13. gīno,	gignēre,	gēnūi,	gēnītum,	<i>beget.</i>

<sup>1</sup> So all compounds of pello. Rēpuli is also spelt reppuli.

<sup>2</sup> Scando becomes scendo in compounds, as, descendo, descendi, descensum, *to descend*.

<sup>3</sup> So all compounds of curro, *to run*. But some have the reduplicated form also, as, decurro, *to run down*, which has Perf. decurri and decurri.

<sup>4</sup> So all compounds of pendo, *to weigh*.

<sup>5</sup> So all compounds of the unused Verb cumbo, *to lie* (a form of cūbo, cubāre).

<sup>6</sup> So most compounds of cano, *to sing*.

<sup>7</sup> So all compounds, except percello, § 151 e, of the unused Verb cello, *to impel*.



Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
14. mēto,	mētēre,	messūi,	messum,	<i>reap.</i>
15. mōlo,	mōlēre,	molūi,	molitum,	<i>grind.</i>
16. occūlo,	occūlēre,	occūlūi,	occultum,	<i>hide.</i>
17. pōno,	pōnēre,	pōsūi,	pōsitum,	<i>put, place.</i>
18. rāpio <sup>1</sup> ,	rāpēre,	rāpūi,	raptum,	<i>seize.</i>
19. sēro,	sērēre,	sērūi,	sertum,	<i>sew.</i>
20. sterto,	stertēre,	(stertui)	. . .	<i>snore.</i>
21. strēpo,	strēpēre,	strēpūi,	strēpitum,	<i>make a noise.</i>
22. texo,	texēre,	texūi,	textum,	<i>weave.</i>
23. trēmo,	trēmēre,	trēmūi,	. . .	<i>tremble.</i>
24. vōmo,	vōmēre,	vōmūi,	vōmitum,	<i>vomit.</i>

(g) Those having -vi in Perf., -tum in Supine.

1. abolesco,	abolescēre,	abolēvi,	(abolitum),	<i>decay.</i>
2. adscisco,	adsciscēre,	adscivi,	adscitum,	<i>take.</i>
3. arcesso,	arcessēre,	arcessivi,	arcessitum,	<i>summon<sup>2</sup>.</i>
4. cerno,	cernēre,	crēvi,	crētum,	<i>discern.</i>
5. cognosco,	cognoscēre,	cognōvi,	cognitum,	<i>know<sup>3</sup>.</i>
6. cresco,	crescēre,	crēvi,	crētum,	<i>grow.</i>
7. cūpio,	cūpēre,	cūpivi,	cūpitum,	<i>desire.</i>
8. incesso,	incessēre,	incessivi,	. . .	<i>attack.</i>
9. lino,	linēre,	{ lēvi, livi, }	litum,	<i>smear.</i>
10. nosco,	noscēre,	nōvi,	nōtum,	{ become ac- quainted with
11. pascō,	pascēre,	pāvi,	pastum,	<i>feed.</i>
12. pēto,	pētēre,	pētivi,	pētītum,	<i>seek.</i>
13. quaero <sup>4</sup> ,	quaerēre,	quaesivi,	quaesitum,	<i>ask.</i>
14. quiesco,	quiescēre,	quīēvi,	quīētum,	<i>rest.</i>
15. rūdo,	rudēre,	rudīvi,	(rudītum),	<i>bray.</i>
16. scisco,	sciscēre,	scīvi,	scītum,	<i>ratify.</i>
17. sēro,	sērēre,	sēvi,	sātum,	<i>sow<sup>5</sup>.</i>
18. sīno,	sīnēre,	sīvi,	(sītum),	<i>allow.</i>
19. sperno,	spernēre,	sprēvi,	sprētum,	<i>despise.</i>
20. sterno,	sternēre,	strāvi,	strātum,	<i>throw down.</i>

<sup>1</sup> The compounds make -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, as, diripio, *tear in pieces*.

<sup>2</sup> So capesso, *take in hand*, and lacesso, *provoke*. Arcesso and lacesso sometimes have -iri for -i in Present Infinitive Passive. Arcesso is sometimes written accerso.

<sup>3</sup> So agnosco, *to recognise*. Other compounds of nosco, *to become acquainted with*, have no Supine, except ignosco, *pardon*, which has ignotum.

<sup>4</sup> The compounds make -quiro, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitum, as exquiro.

<sup>5</sup> The compounds, as, insero, *engraft*, make -sēvi, -sītum.

	Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
21.	suēscō,	suēscēre,	suēvi,	suētum,	<i>be accustomed.</i>
22.	tēro,	tērēre,	trīvi,	trītum,	<i>rub.</i>

(b) Those ending in -uo in Present Indicative First Person Singular, which [with the exception of some already mentioned, as, struo, struxi, etc.] make -ūi in Perf. and -ūtum in Supine, as, trībūo, trībūere, trībūi, trībūtum, *assign*. Pluo, *to rain*, has Perf. pluī or pluvi. In this class must be included

1. solvo, solvēre, solvi, solūtum, *loose, pay.*
2. volvo, volvēre, volvi, volūtum, *roll.*

Ruo, *rush down*, makes Supine rūtum. The following have no Supine: annuo, *assent*; congruo, *agree*; metuo, *fear*; pluo, *rain*.

(f) Inceptives in -sco. These Verbs are formed (a) from Verbs chiefly of the Second Conjugation, (b) from Nouns. The former have no Perfects, except those of the Verbs from which they are derived, as, pallesco [*from palleo*], *I grow pale*, Perf. pallūi; the latter either have no Perfects or form them in the same way in -ui, as, duresco [*from durus*], *I grow hard*, Perf. durūi. Scarcely any Inceptives have a Supine.

Of the exceptions to the above rule some, as abolesco, adolesco, scisco, suesco, have already been given. Notice the following:—

1. concupisco, concupiscēre, concupīvi, concupītum, *desire.*
2. exardesco, exardescēre, exarsi, exarsum, *blaze forth.*
3. expavescō, expavescēre, expāvi, . . . *grow alarmed.*
4. illucesco, illucescēre, illuxi, . . . *grow light.*
5. inveterasco, inveterascēre, inveteravi, . . . *grow old.*

(k) The Semi-Deponent, fido, *trust*, has Perfect fisis sum. The compounds confido, *trust confidently*, and diffido, *mistrust*, have Perfects confīdi and confisus sum, diffīdi and diffisus sum.

#### § 152. The Fourth Conjugation.

	Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.
Regular Form,	-iō,	-īre,	-īvi,	-ītum.
as,	audiō,	audīre,	audivi,	audītum.

Exceptions:—

(a) Those having regular Perf., but -tum in Supine.

	Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
1.	ēo,	īre,	īvi (ii),	ītum,	<i>go</i> <sup>1</sup> .
2.	sēpeliō,	sepelīre,	sēpēlivi,	sēpultum,	<i>bury.</i>

<sup>1</sup> The compounds usually make ii in Perf. Vēneo, *am for sale*, is used as the Passive of vendo, *to sell*, but has no Supine.

## (b) Those having -i in Perf., -tum in Supine.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
1. compĕrĭo, compĕrĭre,	compĕrĭ,	compertum,	ascertain.	
2. rĕpĕrĭo, rĕpĕrĭre,	rĕpĕrĭ,	rĕpertum,	find.	
3. vĕnĭo, vĕnĭre,	vĕnĭ,	ventum,	come.	

## (c) Those having -si in Perf., -tum or -sum in Supine.

1. confĕrĭo, confĕrĭre,	confĕrĭ,	confertum,	press together <sup>1</sup> .
2. ferĭo, ferĭre,	...	...	strike <sup>2</sup> .
3. fulcĭo, fulcĭre,	fulsi,	fultum,	prop.
4. haurĭo, haurĭre,	hausi,	haustum,	draw up.
5. sancĭo, sancĭre,	saxi,	sanctum,	decree.
6. sarcio, sarcĭre,	sarsi,	sartum,	mend.
7. sentĭo, sentĭre,	sensi,	sensum,	feel.
8. saepĭo, saepĭre,	saepsi,	saeptum,	fence round.
9. vincĭo, vincĭre,	vinxi,	vinctum,	bind.

## (d) Those having -ui in Perf., -tum in Supine.

1. amicio, amicĭre,	{ amicuī, amixi,	} amictum,	clothe.
2. āpĕrĭo, āpĕrĭre,	āpĕrŭī,	āpertum,	uncover, open.
3. ōpĕrĭo, ōpĕrĭre,	ōpĕrŭī,	ōpertum,	cover.
4. sālĭo <sup>3</sup> , sālĭre,	salŭī,	(saltum),	leap.

(e) Desideratives (§ 75) have no Supine, and with the exception of esurio, nupturio, parturio, no Perfect.

## § 153. Deponent Verbs.

(a) Deponents of the First Conjugation are all regular, making Infīn. in -āri and Perfect Participle in -ātus.

(b) Deponents of the Second Conjugation make Inf. in -ēri and Perf. Part. in -ītus, except

Pres.	Inf.	Perf. Part.	Meaning.
1. fātĕor <sup>4</sup> ,	fatĕrĭ,	fassus,	acknowledge.
2. mīsĕrĕor,	mīsĕrĕrĭ,	mīsĕrītus or mīsertus,	pity.
3. rĕor,	rĕrĭ,	rātus,	think.

<sup>1</sup> So all compounds of farcio, farcire, farsī, fartum, to stuff.

<sup>2</sup> Percussi, percussum, from percutio, are used for the Perfect and Supine of this Verb.

<sup>3</sup> The compounds make -silio, -silire, -silui or -sillī, -sultum, as, rēsilio, to leap back.

<sup>4</sup> The compounds make -fītĕor, -fītĕrĭ, -fessus, as confītĕor, to confess.

(c) Deponents of the Third Conjugation have no regular form.  
A great number end in -*scor* in Pres. Indic., e. g. :—

Pres.	Inf.	Perf. Part.	Meaning.
1. <i>ādīpiscor</i> ,	<i>ādīpisci</i> ,	<i>ādeptus</i> ,	<i>obtain</i> <sup>1</sup> .
2. <i>commīniscor</i> ,	<i>commīnisci</i> ,	<i>commentus</i> ,	<i>devise</i> .
3. <i>expergiscor</i> ,	<i>expergisci</i> ,	<i>experrectus</i> ,	<i>awake</i> .
4. <i>īrascor</i> ,	<i>īrasci</i> ,	<i>īrātus</i> ,	<i>become angry</i> .
5. <i>nanciscor</i> ,	<i>nancisci</i> ,	<i>nactus or nactus</i> ,	<i>obtain</i> .
6. <i>nascor</i> ,	<i>nasci</i> ,	<i>nātus</i> ,	<i>be born</i> .
7. <i>obliscor</i> ,	<i>obliscisci</i> ,	<i>oblītus</i> ,	<i>forget</i> .
8. <i>pāciscor</i> ,	<i>pācisci</i> ,	<i>pactus</i> ,	<i>bargain</i> .
9. <i>pascor</i> ,	<i>pasci</i> ,	<i>pastus</i> ,	<i>feed</i> .
10. <i>prōficiscor</i> ,	<i>prōficisci</i> ,	<i>prōfectus</i> ,	<i>set out, march</i> .
11. <i>reminiscor</i> ,	<i>reminisci</i> ,	. . .	<i>remember</i> .
12. <i>vescor</i> ,	<i>vesci</i> ,	. . .	<i>eat</i> .
13. <i>ulciscor</i> ,	<i>ulcisci</i> ,	<i>ultus</i> ,	<i>avenge</i> .

The others are :—

14. <i>amplector</i> ,	<i>amplecti</i> ,	<i>amplexus</i> ,	<i>embrace</i> .
15. <i>frūor</i> ,	<i>frūi</i> ,	<i>fructus and frūitus</i> ,	<i>enjoy</i> .
16. <i>fungor</i> ,	<i>fungi</i> ,	<i>functus</i> ,	<i>perform</i> .
17. <i>grādīor</i> <sup>2</sup> ,	<i>grādi</i> ,	<i>gressus</i> ,	<i>march</i> .
18. <i>lābor</i> ,	<i>lābi</i> ,	<i>lapsus</i> ,	<i>glide</i> .
19. <i>lōquor</i> ,	<i>lōqui</i> ,	<i>locūtus</i> ,	<i>speak</i> .
20. <i>mōrīor</i> ,	<i>mōri</i> ,	<i>mortūus</i> ,	<i>die</i> .
21. <i>nītor</i> ,	<i>nīti</i> ,	<i>nīsus or nixus</i> ,	<i>strive</i> .
22. <i>pātīor</i> <sup>3</sup> ,	<i>pāti</i> ,	<i>passus</i> ,	<i>suffer, allow</i> .
23. <i>quēror</i> ,	<i>quēri</i> ,	<i>questus</i> ,	<i>complain</i> .
24. <i>sēquor</i> ,	<i>sēqui</i> ,	<i>secūtus</i> ,	<i>follow</i> .
25. <i>ūtōr</i> ,	<i>ūti</i> ,	<i>usus</i> ,	<i>use</i> .

(d) Deponents of the Fourth Conjugation make Inf. in -*īri*,  
and Perf. Part. in -*ītus*, except

1. <i>assentīor</i> ,	<i>assentīri</i> ,	<i>assensus</i> ,	<i>assent</i> .
2. <i>expērīor</i> ,	<i>expērīri</i> ,	<i>expertus</i> ,	<i>make trial of</i> .
3. <i>mētīor</i> ,	<i>mētīri</i> ,	<i>mensus</i> ,	<i>measure</i> .
4. <i>oppērīor</i> ,	<i>oppērīri</i> ,	<i>oppertus</i> ,	<i>wait for</i> .
5. <i>ordīor</i> ,	<i>ordīri</i> ,	<i>orsus</i> ,	<i>begin</i> .
6. <i>ōrīor</i> ,	<i>ōrīri</i> ,	<i>ortus</i> ,	<i>rise</i> .

<sup>1</sup> So all compounds of *apiscor*, *apisci*, *aptus*, to obtain.

<sup>2</sup> The compounds make -*grēdīor*, -*grēdi*, -*gressus*, as *aggrēdīor*, to attack.

<sup>3</sup> The compounds make -*petīor*, -*peti*, -*pessus*, as *perpetīor*.

## A TABLE OF RULES FOR THE GENDERS OF LATIN NOUNS.

### § 154. General Rules.

- (a) **Males, Mountains, Months, the Winds, the Stream,  
And People Masculine we deem:**  
Isles are Feminine; to these  
Add Females, Cities, Countries, Trees:  
Indeclinables we call  
Neuter Gender, one and all.

*Note.* For exceptions see Madvig §§ 28-31.

- (b)
1. Common are to either sex
  2. Artífex, and opífex,
  3. Conviva, vates, advēna,
  4. Testis, civis, incōla,
  5. Parens, sacerdos, custos, vindex,
  6. Adolescens, infans, index,
  7. Judex, heres, comes, dux,
  8. Princeps, municeps, conjux,
  9. Obses, ales, interpres,
  10. Auctor, exul; and with these
  11. Bos, dama, talpa, tigris, grus,
  12. Canis and anguis, serpens, sus<sup>1</sup>.

### § 155. Genders of the Five Declensions.

(a) *First Declension.* Feminine, except names of men, as Publicola, *Publicola*, and designations of men, as poēta, *a poet*, nauta, *a sailor*, together with Hadria, or Adria, *the Adriatic Sea*, and Greek Nouns in -as and -es, as Aeneas, Atrides, which are Masculine.

(b) *Second Declension.* -us and -er, Masculine; -um, Neuter.

Exceptions:—

- us.] 1. Alvus, colus, carbāsus,  
2. hūmus, vannus, pampīnus,

<sup>1</sup> Line 2. *artificer, workman*; 3. *guest, prophet, new-comer*; 4. *witness, citizen, inhabitant*; 5. *parent, priest or priestess, guardian, avenger*; 6. *young man or woman, infant, informer*; 7. *judge, heir, companion, guide*; 8. *chief, burgess, husband or wife*; 9. *hostage, bird, interpreter*; 10. *author, exile*; 11. *ox or cow, deer, mole, tiger, crane*; 12. *dog, snake, serpent, swine*. Some other words, as *hospes, guest or host, miles, soldier, hostis, enemy*, etc., which from their meaning may be of either sex, are sometimes, but rarely, Feminine.

3. domus [Fourth as well as Second<sup>1</sup>],
4. and jewels, Feminine are reckoned.
5. Then come pelāgus [*the sea*],
6. Vulgus<sup>2</sup>, virus, Neuters three<sup>3</sup>.

(c) *Third Declension.* Gender various, according to termination of Nom. Case.

(1) Masculine terminations:—

{ Masculines -er, -or, and -o,  
-os, and -es increasing, shew.

Exceptions:—

- er.] 1. Cadāver, and all *plants* in -er,  
2. With iter, uber, verber, ver,  
3. To the Neuters we refer;  
4. One is Feminine, linter<sup>4</sup>.
- or.] 1. Four in -or, are Neuter, cor,  
2. Marmor, aequor, and ador;  
3. One is Feminine, arbor<sup>5</sup>.
- o.] 1. Caro, *flesh*, and endings three,  
2. -do, -io, -go, must reckoned be  
3. In Feminino Genere.
- os.] 1. Feminine are cos and dos,  
2. With the Neuters reckon os<sup>6</sup>.
- es, increasing.] 1. Feminine are compes, teges,  
2. Merces, merges, quies, seges.  
3. Aes [aeris], is Neuter<sup>7</sup>.

(2) Feminine terminations:—

{ Feminines -do, -io, -go,  
-is, -as, -aus, and -x, will shew,  
-es, if no increase is needed,  
-s by Consonant preceded.

<sup>1</sup> 'Domus' is declined like both the Second and Fourth Declensions, except that it avoids the endings, -me, -mu, -mi [in Plural], and -mis. Hence the memorial line,

Sperne me, mu, mi, mis, si declinare domus vis.

<sup>2</sup> 'Vulgus' is once or twice found masculine also.

<sup>3</sup> Line 1. belly, distaff, canvas; 2. ground, winnowing-fan, vine-leaf;  
3. house; 6. common people, poison.

<sup>4</sup> Line 1. corpse; 2. journey, udder, whip, spring; 4. boat.

<sup>5</sup> Line 1. heart; 2. marble, sea, spelt; 3. tree.

<sup>6</sup> Line 1. whetstone, dowry; 2. bone [ōs, G. ossis] or mouth [ōs, G. ōris].

<sup>7</sup> Line 1. fetter, mat; 2. reward, corn-sheaf, rest, crop; 3. brass.

## Exceptions:—

- do, -go, -io.] 1. Males are ligo, vesperilio,  
 2. Cardio, ordo, and papilio,  
 3. Pugio, scipio, and quaternio,  
 4. Curculio, harpago, and ternio<sup>1</sup>.

*Note.* Besides ternio and quaternio, all names of numbers, as unio, binio, quinio, senio, etc., are Masculine. Optio, *an adjutant*, is, by meaning, Masculine. Margo, *edge*, is common.

- is.] 1. Many Latin Nouns in -is  
 2. Are Masculini Generis.  
 3. Amnis, axis, fascis, follis,  
 4. Callis<sup>2</sup>, caulis, crinis, collis,  
 5. Fustis, ignis, orbis, ensis,  
 6. Panis, piscis, postis, mensis,  
 7. Torris, unguis, and annālis,  
 8. Glis, natālis, and canālis,  
 9. Vectis, vermis, cucūmis,  
 10. Lapis, pulvis, and cinis<sup>2</sup>,  
 11. Sanguis, sentis<sup>2</sup>, and vomis.  
 12. *Chiefly* Masculine are clunis,  
 13. Corbis, torquis, finis, funis<sup>3</sup>.

- as.] 1. As, adamas, and elephas,  
 2. Are Masculina; Neuter vas<sup>4</sup>.

- x.] 1. Male are Nouns in e *plus* x,  
 2. Save nex, supellex, forfex, lex.  
 3. Common imbrex, and obex,  
 4. Pumex, cortex, and silex.  
 5. Three are Masculine in -ix,  
 6. Fornix, phoenix, and cālix<sup>5</sup>.

- es not increasing.] 1. Two are Masculine in -es,  
 2. Verres and acīnaces<sup>6</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Line 1. *spade, bat*; 2. *hinge, order, butterfly*; 3. *dagger, staff, the number four*; 4. *weevil, grappling-hook, the number three*.

<sup>2</sup> Callis, cinis, and sentis are sometimes Feminine, but *very* rarely.

<sup>3</sup> Line 3. *river, axle, bundle, pair of bellows*; 4. *path, cabbage, hair, hill*; 5. *club, fire, circle, sword*; 6. *bread, fish, doorpost, month*; 7. *torch, nail, chronicle*; 8. *dormouse, birthday, canal*; 9. *lever, worm, cucumber*; 10. *stone, dust, cinder*; 11. *blood, thorn, ploughshare*; 12. *haunch*; 13. *basket, necklace, end, rope*.

<sup>4</sup> Line 1. *as* [a Roman coin], *adamant, elephant*; 2. *vase*. [But *vas, vādis, bail, surety*, is Masc.]

<sup>5</sup> Line 2. *murder, furniture, shears, law*; 3. *tile, bolt*; 4. *pumice-stone, bark, flint-stone*; 6. *arch, phoenix, cup*.

<sup>6</sup> Line 2. *boar, scimitar*.

- s preceded by  
a Consonant.]
1. Masculine are fons and mons,
  2. Rudens, torrens, dens, and pons,
  3. Chalybs, hydrops, tridens, cliens,
  4. Fractions of the as, as triens,
  5. Bidens [*boe*] and confluent,
  6. Oriens and occidens.
  7. Common Gender is forceps,
  8. Common also stirps, adeps<sup>1</sup>.

## (3) Neuter terminations:—

{ Neuters end in -a, -c, -e,  
-ar, -ur, -us, -l, -n, and -t.

## Exceptions:—

- ur.] 1. Four are Masculine in -ur,  
2. Furfur, turtur, vultur, fur<sup>2</sup>.
- us.] 1. Feminine are some in -us  
2. Increasing long, as servitus,  
3. Tellus, juvenus, incus, palus,  
4. Virtus, senectus, *atque* salus;  
5. And [Genitive, pecūdis] pecus.  
6. Masculine are lepus, mus<sup>3</sup>.
- l.] 1. Masculines in -l are mugil,  
2. Sal and consul, sol and pugil<sup>4</sup>.
- n.] 1. Males in -n are ren and splen,  
2. Lien, pecten, attagen<sup>5</sup>.

## (d) Fourth Declension. -us, Masculine; -u, Neuter.

## Exceptions:—

- us.] 1. Feminine are *trees* in -us,  
2. With tribus, acus, porticus,  
3. Domus, Idus and manus<sup>6</sup>.

Note. Specus, cave, Masc. or Fem., is also Neut. in N. V. A. Sing.

## (e) Fifth Declension. Feminine, except dies, a day, which is Common in the Singular, Masculine in the Plural.

<sup>1</sup> Line 1. fountain, mountain; 2. rope, torrent, tooth, bridge; 3. steel, dropsy, trident, client; 4. third part; 5. confluence; 6. east, west; 7. pincers; 8. stock, fat.

<sup>2</sup> Line 2. bran, turtle-dove, vulture, thief.

<sup>3</sup> Line 2. slavery; 3. earth, youth, anvil, marsh; 4. virtue or valour, old age, safety; 5. beast; 6. hare, mouse.

<sup>4</sup> Line 1. mullet; 2. salt, consul, sun, boxer.

<sup>5</sup> Line 1. kidney, spleen; 2. spleen, comb, woodcock.

<sup>6</sup> Line 2. tribe, needle, portico; 3. house, Ides, hand.



## NOTES ON THE DECLENSIONS.

## § 156. First Declension.

(a) Several Greek Proper Names in *-as* and *-es*, all Masculine, as, Aeneas, *Aeneas*, Atrides, *son of Atreus*, and some Feminine Nouns in *-e*, as, Circe, *Circe*, crambe, *cabbage*, belong to this Declension.

N.	Aenēas,	Atrīdes,	Circē,
V.	Aeneā,	Atridē [ā or ā, rare],	Circē,
Acc.	Aeneān [or -am],	Atridēn [or -am],	Circēn,
G.	Aeneae,	Atridae,	Circēs [or -ae],
D.	Aeneae,	Atridae,	Circae,
Ab.	Aeneā.	Atridē [or -ā].	Circē.

*Notes.* The termination *-ides* or *-ades* means 'son of.' Nouns ending thus, as Atrides, are called *Patronymics*<sup>1</sup> (i.e. *father-named*).

The above Greek Nouns are declined in the Plural like 'mensa,' but, with the exception of the *Patronymics* [which have *-um* in Gen. Pl.], are rarely found in this Number.

(b) The old Latin Genitive Singular of this Declension ended in *-as*. Hence *paterfamilias*, *father of a family*. Another ending, used chiefly by poets, is *-āi*, as, *aulāi* for *aulae*.

(c) *-um* for *-arum* appears as Genitive Plural (1) of *Patronymics*, (2) of *drachma* and *amphora*, (3) in poetry of certain people, as, *Lapithūm*, *Teleboūm*, (4) of compounds of *colo* and *gigno*, as, *coelicolūm*, *terrigenūm*. *Duum* for *duarum* is frequent.

(d) *Dea*, *filia*, *liberta*<sup>2</sup>, make *-abus* for *-is* in Dative and Ablative Plural, to distinguish them from the Datives and Ablatives of *deus*, *filius*, *libertus*.

## § 157. Second Declension.

(a) Several Greek Nouns in *-os* and *-on* belong to this Declension.

N. V.	Dēlōs,	Androgeōs,	Pelion,
Acc.	Delōn [or -um],	Androgeōn [ō or ōna],	Pelion,
Gen.	Deli,	Androgei [or -ō],	Pelii,
D. Ab.	Delo.	Androgeo.	Pelio.

<sup>1</sup> Feminine *Patronymics* end in *-is* or *-ias*, as *Thesēis*, *daughter of Theseus*, *Pleias*, *daughter of Pleione*.

<sup>2</sup> Goddess, daughter, freedwoman.

(b) Vir, a man, makes Acc. vir-um, Gen. vir-i, and so throughout. Deus, God, is thus declined:—

	N. V.	Acc.	Gen.	D. Abl.
Sing.	Deus,	Deum,	Dei,	Deo,
Plur.	Di [or dii],	Deos,	Deum [or deorum],	Dis [or diis].

(c) -um for -orum appears as Genitive Plural (1) of trades, coins, weights, measures, and distributive numerals, as fabrum, talentum, denum<sup>1</sup>; (2) in poetry, of names of people, as Rutulum; (3) of deus, vir, and liberi<sup>2</sup>, as deum, virum, liberum, and some others, chiefly in poetry. Duum for duorum is frequent.

### § 158. Third Declension.

(a) The Stems of this Declension are very numerous, and can only be learnt by practice. The following list of Nouns with their Genitive Cases will afford examples of the principal varieties. Some Adjectives which follow the Third Declension are also included. Greek Nouns are, as a rule, not included.

-E. rēte, <i>net</i> , rēt-is.	hīrundo, <i>savallow</i> ,
-L. ānīmal, <i>animal</i> , animāl-is.	hirundīn-is <sup>6</sup> .
sal, <i>salt</i> , sāl-is <sup>3</sup> .	margo, <i>edge</i> , marg-inīs <sup>7</sup> .
-N. carmen, <i>song</i> , carmīn-is <sup>4</sup> .	-A.R. calcar, <i>spur</i> , calcār-is.
-O. latro, <i>robber</i> , latrōn-is <sup>5</sup> .	Caesar, <i>Caesar</i> , Caesār-is <sup>8</sup> .
oratio, <i>speech</i> , oratiōn-is.	-ER. carcer, <i>prison</i> , carcēr-is <sup>9</sup> .

<sup>1</sup> From faber, *smith*, talentum, *talent*, deni, *ten apiece*.

<sup>2</sup> God, man, children.

<sup>3</sup> So the proper names, Hannibal, Hasdrubal, &c. But nearly all other nouns in -al follow animal, and make -ālis. Sol, *sun*, makes sōl-is; mel, *honey*, mell-is; exul, *exile*, consul, *consul*, exul-is, consul-is; pugil, *boxer*, vigil, *wakeful*, pugil-is, vigil-is.

<sup>4</sup> So all verbal nouns in -men. Attagen, *heath-cock*, lien or spleen, *spleen*, ren, *kidney*, make -ēnis.

<sup>5</sup> So Aquilo, *North wind*, bubo, *owl*, leo, *lion*, ligo, *spade*, praedo, *pirate*, &c. Macedo, *Macedonian*, makes Macedōn-is; Apollo, *Apollo*, hōmo, *man*, turbo, *whirlwind*, Apollīn-is, homīn-is, turbīn-is; caro, *flesh*, carnis.

<sup>6</sup> So nearly all in -do, as, cardo, *hinge*, grando, *hail*, ordo, *rank*, &c., and all abstract nouns in -do, as, fortitudo, *bravery*, dulcedo, *sweetness*.

<sup>7</sup> So nearly all in -go, as, caligo, *darkness*, Carthāgo, *Carthage*, &c., and all derived nouns in -go, as ferrūgo, *rust*, robīgo, *mildew*.

<sup>8</sup> So nectar, *nectar*, baccar, *baccar* (a plant), jubar, *sunbeam*, par, *equal*. Far, *spelt*, farr-is. But most in -ar follow calcar.

<sup>9</sup> So anser, *goose*, cadaver, *corpse*, &c.; plants in -er, as, acer, *maple*, papāver, *poppy*, &c.; uber, *fertile*, pauper, *poor*, puber, *grown up*, degener, *degenerate*. Ver, *spring*, makes vēr-is; iter, *journey*, itinēr-is.

	pater, <i>father</i> , patr-is <sup>1</sup> .		quies, <i>rest</i> , quiēt-is <sup>8</sup> .
-OR.	labor, <i>labour</i> , labōr-is <sup>2</sup> .		miles, <i>soldier</i> , milit-is <sup>9</sup> .
-UR.	fulgur, <i>lightning</i> , fulgūr-is <sup>3</sup> .	-IS.	āvis, <i>bird</i> , av-is <sup>10</sup> .
-AS.	civitas, <i>state</i> , civitāt-is <sup>4</sup> .	-OS.	nēpos, <i>grandson</i> , nepōt-is <sup>11</sup> .
-ES.	nūbes, <i>cloud</i> , nub-is.	-US.	opus, <i>work</i> , opēr-is <sup>12</sup> .
	obses, <i>hostage</i> , obsid-is <sup>5</sup> .		corpus, <i>body</i> , corpōr-is <sup>13</sup> .
	pes, <i>foot</i> , ped-is <sup>6</sup> .		tellūs, <i>earth</i> , tellūr-is <sup>14</sup> .
	sēges, <i>cornfield</i> , segēt-is <sup>7</sup> .		virtus, <i>virtue</i> , virtūt-is <sup>15</sup> .
		-NS.	frons, <i>forehead</i> , front-is <sup>16</sup> .

<sup>1</sup> So frater, *brother*, mater, *mother*, accipiter, *hawk*, linter, *boat*, uter, *wine-skin*; acer, *keen*, and Adjectives declined like acer, as, campester, *pedester*, &c.

<sup>2</sup> So all in -or, except aequor, *sea*, arbor, *tree*, memor, *mindful*, and marmor, *marble*, which make aequōr-is, arbōr-is, &c. Cor, *heart*, cord-is.

<sup>3</sup> So furfur, *bran*, turtur, *turtle*, vultur, *vulture*. Robur, *strength*, and ēbur, *ivory*, make robōr-is, ebōr-is; fur, *thief*, fūr-is. For jecur see § 163 b.

<sup>4</sup> So all abstract nouns in -as, -itas; also, nostras, *of our country*, vestras, *of your country*, cujas, *of what country?* Anas, *duck*, makes anāt-is; as, as (a coin), ass-is; mas, *male*, mār-is; vas, *surety*, vād-is; vas, *vessel*, vās-is.

<sup>5</sup> So all derivatives from sedeo, as, dēses, *inactive*, rēses, *inactive*.

<sup>6</sup> So compounds of pes, as, (compes) fetter, quadrupes, *four-footed*.

<sup>7</sup> So abies, *pine-tree*, aries, *ram*, hēbes, *blunt*, interpres, *interpreter*, paries, *wall*, teges, *tile*, tēres, *smoothly rounded*.

<sup>8</sup> So requies, *rest*, (§ 163, b), and locuples, *rich*.

<sup>9</sup> So cōmes, *companion*, cespes, *sod*, and numerous adjectives, as, ales, *winged*, dives, *rich*, hospes, *friendly*, sospes, *safe*, superstes, *surviving*.

*Note.*—Merces, *pay*, hēres, *heir*, make mercēd-is, herēd-is; praes, *surety*, praed-is; Cēres, *Ceres*, Cerēr-is; aes, *copper*, aer-is; bes,  $\frac{2}{3}$  of an as, bess-is.

<sup>10</sup> So most in -is. Tigris, *tiger*, makes tigr-is and tigrid-is; lapis, *stone*, cassis, *helmet*, cuspis, *spear-point*, lapid-is, cassid-is, cuspid-is; sanguis, *blood*, sanguin-is; cinis, *ash*, pulvis, *dust*, cinēr-is, pulvēr-is; glis, *dormouse*, glīr-is; lis, *lawsuit*, lit-is; semis, *half-an-as*, semiss-is.

<sup>11</sup> So cos, *whetstone*, dos, *dowry*, sacerdos, *priest*. Bos, *ox*, bōv-is. Compos, impos, (§ 161, a), compōt-is, impōt-is. Custos, *guardian*, custōd-is. Mos, *custom*, ros, *dew*, mōr-is, rōr-is, and so all nouns in -os having duplicate forms in -or, as, honos, labos.

<sup>12</sup> So foedus, *treaty*, funus, *funeral*, hōlus (or ōlus), *vegetables*, latus, *side*, munus, *gift*, ōnus, *burden*, pondus, *weight*, scēlus, *crime*, sidus, *star*, vellus,  *fleece*, vetus, *old*, vulnus, *wound*.

<sup>13</sup> So decus, *honour*, facinus, *crime*, frigus, *cold*, lēpus, *hare*, litus, *shore*, nēmus, *grove*, pectus, *breast*, pignus, *pledge*, tempus, *time*.

<sup>14</sup> So crus, *leg*, jus, *right*, jus, *broth*, mus, *mouse*, rus, *country*, tus, *incense*.

<sup>15</sup> So juvenūs, *youth*, salūs, *safety*, senectūs, *old age*, servitūs, *slavery*.

*Note.*—Incūs, *anvil*, palūs, *marsh*, make ūdis; pēcus, *beast*, pectid-is or pecōr-is; grus, *crane*, sus, *sow*, gru-is, su-is.

<sup>16</sup> Frons, *leaf*, and glans, *acorn*, make frond-is, gland-is. But most nouns, and all adjectives and participles in -ns make -ntis.

-PS. princeps, *chief*,  
princĭp-is<sup>1</sup>.  
-AX. pax, *peace*, pāc-is<sup>2</sup>.  
-EX. pollex, *thumb*, pollĭc-is<sup>3</sup>.

-IX. radix, *root*, radĭc-is<sup>4</sup>.  
salix, *willow*, salĭc-is<sup>5</sup>.  
-OX. vox, *voice*, vōc-is<sup>6</sup>.  
-UX. nux, *nut*, nūc-is<sup>7</sup>.

Note.—Other terminations, mostly rare, are, -MA, (all Greek), as, pōemā, *poem*, poemāt-is; -C, as, lac, *milk*, lact-is; -BS, as, urbs, *city*, urb-is, caelebs, *bachelor*, caelĭb-is; -LX, as, calx, *heel*, and calx, *lime*, calc-is; -MS, as, hiems, *winter*, hiēm-is; -RS, as, ars, *art*, art-is,—so, pars, *part*, cohors, *cohort*; -AUS, as, fraus, *deceit*, laus, *praise*, fraud-is, laud-is; -T, as, caput, *head*, capĭt-is; -RX, as, arx, *citadel*, arc-is.

(b) List of Nouns having -im in Accusative, and -i in Ablative.

1. Vis, ravis, pelvis, sitis, tussis,
2. Sināpis, cūcūmis, āmussis,
3. Praesēpis, cannābis, secūris,
4. Charybdis, tigris, *atque* būris,
5. *Et Propria Nomina in -IS*,
6. Ut Syrtis, Tĭbris, Tamēsis<sup>8</sup>.

(c) List of Nouns having -em or -im in Accusative, and -e or -i in Ablative.

1. Restis, puppis, turris, navis,
2. Strigilis, sementis, clavis,
3. Messis, febris, *et* aqualis,
4. -em *vel* -im dant, utrum malis<sup>9</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> So all derivatives from capio, except auceps, *birdcatcher*, aucĭp-is. Compounds of caput, as, biceps, *two-headed*, make -cipitis; inops, *poor*, inōp-is. Adeps, *fat*, follows princeps. Stirps, *stem*, stirp-is.

<sup>2</sup> So fornax, *furnace*, and verbals in -ax, as, audax. Fax, *torch*, makes faci-is.

<sup>3</sup> So most in -ex. Nex, *death*, makes nec-is; lex, *law*, rex, *king*, lēg-is, rēg-is; grex, *flock*, grēg-is; rēmex, *rower*, remig-is; sēnex, *old man*, sen-is; supellex, *furniture*, supellectil-is.

<sup>4</sup> So cervix, *neck*, cicātrix, *scar*, &c., and all feminines in -trix (§ 168, a. 1).

<sup>5</sup> So calix, *cup*, fornix, *arch*. Nix, *snow*, niv-is; strix, *owl*, strĭg-is.

<sup>6</sup> So ferox, *spirited*, velox, *swift*, &c. Nōx, *night*, makes noct-is.

<sup>7</sup> So crux, *cross*, dux, *leader*, trux, *savage*. Lux, *light*, makes lūc-is, conjux, *husband or wife*, conjūg-is.

<sup>8</sup> Line 1. force, *hoarseness*, basin, *thirst*, cough; 2. mustard, cucumber, carpenter's rule; 3. enclosure, hemp, axe; 4. charybdis, tiger, plough-tail; 5. and Proper Names in -is, 6. as Syrtis, Tiber, Thames.

<sup>9</sup> Line 1. rope, stern, tower, ship; 2. flesh-scaper, seed-sowing, key; 3. harvest, fever, washing-basin, 4. give -em or -im, whichever you prefer.

(d) Nouns having regular Accusative in **-em** but Ablative in **-e** or **-i**, are linter, *boat*, uter, *wine-skin*, and,

1. Amnis, anguis, avis, billis,
2. Civis, ignis, imber, finis,
3. Neptis, orbis, patruelis,
4. Postis, unguis, **-i si velis**<sup>1</sup>.

(e) All Nouns which were originally Adjectives in **-is** follow tristis, and make Acc. **-em**, Abl. **-i**, as, Atheniensis [sc. 'homo'], *an Athenian*; Aprilis [sc. mensis], *April*; annālis [sc. liber], *chronicle*. September, October, November, December [sc. mensis], follow 'acer.' Nouns of this class when they become Proper Names of men, as Juvenalis, Martialis, have only **-e** in Abl.

(f) Neuters in **-e**, **-al**, **-ar**, as, cubile, *bed*, animal, *animal*, calcar, *spur*, make **-i** in Abl. Sing., **-ia** in N. V. Acc. Pl. Rēte, *net*, makes Abl. rete, *rarely* reti: mare, *sea*, makes Abl. marē in Poetry only. Note also the following exceptions,

1. Ablatives in **-e** are far,
2. Baccar, nectar, and jubar<sup>2</sup>.

(g) Rules for the Genitive Plural.

(A) Nouns *not increasing* make **-ium**, *except*,

1. Apis, senex, juvenis,
2. Proles, vates, volucris,
3. Pater, mater, frater, panis,
4. With accipiter and canis<sup>3</sup>.

(B) Nouns *increasing* make **-um**, *except*,

1. Monosyllabic Nouns of which the stem ends in two Consonants, as, dens, *tooth*, dent-, Gen. Pl. dent-**ium**.
2.
  1. Glis, mas, mus, lis,
  2. Compes, palus\* and penātes,
  3. Nix, strix, faux, vis,
  4. Servitus\*, and optimates<sup>4</sup>.
3. Neuters in **-al** and **-ar**, as, animal, *animal*, calcar, *spur*.
4. Nouns in **-as**, Gen. **-atis**, as civitas, *state*, and many Nouns and Participles in **-ns**, as parens, *a parent*, sapiens, *wise*, have both **-ium** and **-um** in Gen. Pl.
5.
  1. Sans Plural Genitives we class
  2. Cor, cos, and rus, sal, sol, and vas<sup>5</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Line 1. river, snake, bird, bile; 2. citizen, fire, shower, end; 3. grand-daughter, circle, cousin; 4. door-post, nail, -i if you like.

<sup>2</sup> Line 1. Spelt (a kind of grain); 2. baccar (a plant), nectar, sun-beam.

<sup>3</sup> Line 1. Bee, old man, young man; 2. offspring, prophet, bird; 3. father, mother, brother, bread; 4. hawk, dog.

<sup>4</sup> Line 1. dormouse, male, mouse, lawsuit; 2. fetter, march, household gods; 3. snow, screech-owl, throat, force; 4. slavery, aristocrats. Those marked \* have both **-ium** and **-um**.

<sup>5</sup> Line 2. Heart, whetstone, country, salt, sun, surety. Sans means *without*.

(b) Greek Nouns of this Declension in **-as, -er, -is, and -os**, make Acc. **-em**, or **-a**, as, *hēros, hero*, Acc. *hērōem* or *hērōā*; *āēr, air*, Acc. *āērem* or *āērā*. The Acc. Pl. usually ends in **-ās**.

Greek Nouns in **-is** and **-ys** make **-i** and **-y** in Voc. *Poēsis, poetry*, has Acc. *poēsīm* or *-in*, Voc. *poēsi*.

Greek Nouns in **-es** have the regular Latin form, and also, in certain cases, duplicate forms derived from the Greek, e.g. Acc. *-ēn, -ēā*, or *-ētā*, Gen. *-i, -ei*, or *-ētis*.

Orpheus is thus declined:—

Nom. Orpheus,	Acc. Orpheum or -ea,	D. Orpheo, -ēi, -ei,
Voc. Orpheu,	Gen. Orphei or -eos,	Ab. Orpheo.

### § 159. Fourth Declension.

(a) Like *ictus* are declined all Verbal Nouns in **-tus** and **-sus**, (§ 168, a, 2), except such as were originally Passive Participles, e.g. *legatus, ambassador*, *sponsus, bridegroom*, which are Second Declension.

(b) Nouns which take **-ūbus** in Dat. Abl. Pl. are dissyllables in **-cus**, as, *arcus, bow*; also, *tribus, tribe*; *partus, birth*; *portus, harbour*; *veru, spit*; *artus, Pl. limbs*. Several have both forms.

### § 160. Fifth Declension.

(a) The **-e** of the Genitive **-ei** is long when preceded by a vowel, as *faciēi*; *reī* and *fidēi* are perhaps doubtful.

(b) Only 'dies' and 'res' in this Declension have the Plural complete: the others either have N. V. Acc. Cases only, or no Plural at all.

### § 161. Adjectives.

(a) Many Adjectives signifying qualities that belong only to the male or female sex, as, *caelebs, unmarried*, have, as a rule, no Neuters<sup>1</sup>, and are classed as Adjectives of One Termination. They make **-e** in Abl. Sing. and **-um** in Gen. Plural. Such are;—

1. Pauper, puber, hospes, compos,
2. Superstes, senex, sospes, impos,
3. Ales, deses, and reses,
4. Dives (*rich*), and locuples,
5. Compounds add of corpus, pes,
6. *As bicorpor, quadrupes*<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Instances of the use of the Neuter are, *hospita aequora*, Virg. Aen. iii. 377, and *memor ingenium*, Liv. i. c. 32, but they are rarely found.

<sup>2</sup> Line 1. *poor, grown up, friendly, master of*; 2. *surviving, old, safe, not master of*; 3. *winged, inactive, inactive*; 4. *rich*; 6. *double-bodied, four-footed*.

The following are like the above, but have -i in Ablative Sing.

1. Degener, inops, memor,
2. Vigil, uber, immemor<sup>1</sup>.

(b) *Vetus*, *old*, has endings like *melior* in the Oblique Cases. *Anceps*, *double*, *praeceps*, *headlong*, and *par*, *equal*, which are otherwise declined like *ingens*, have only -i in Abl. Singular. Compounds of *par*, as, *dispar*, *unequal*, have both -i and -e in Abl. Sing., but make -um in Gen. Plural. *Hebes*, *blunt*, and *teres*, *smoothly rounded*, are like *ingens*, but have no Gen. Plural.

(c) *Plus*, *more*, is defective in the Singular.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
N. V. A.	. . . plus.	plures.	plura.
Gen.	pluris.	plurium.	
Dat.	. . .	pluribus.	
Ab.	(plure).	pluribus.	

*Complures*, *several*, has Neut. *complura*, *rarely* *compluria*.

(d) The Adjectives (*cēterus*), *cetera*, *ceterum*, *the rest*, and (*ludīcer* or *ludīcrus*), *ludīcra*, *ludīcrum*, *sportive*, have their Declension complete, with the exception of the Singular Nominative Masculine, which is not found in any writer.

### § 162. Comparison of Adjectives.

(a) The following instances of irregular Comparison, in addition to those given in § 27, are to be noticed. N.B. Square brackets, as [*egentior*], denote that the degree of Comparison is borrowed from some word of equivalent meaning; round brackets, as (*piissimus*), denote that the word is rare in Classical Latin.

mātūrus, <i>ripe</i> ,	maturior,	maturissimus.
ēgēnus, <i>needy</i> ,	[ <i>egentior</i> ],	maturrimus. }
prōvidus, <i>provident</i> ,	[ <i>providentior</i> ],	[ <i>egentissimus</i> ].
{ dīves, <i>rich</i> ,	divitior,	[ <i>providentissimus</i> ].
{ (dis), <i>rich</i> ,	ditior,	divitissimus.
vetus, <i>old</i> ,	{ [ <i>vetustior</i> ] },	ditissimus.
(potis, <i>able</i> ),	( <i>veterior</i> ) },	veterrimus.
[ <i>ᾠκύς</i> , <i>swift</i> ],	potior, <i>preferable</i> ,	potissimus.
frugi, <i>virtuous</i> ,	ocior,	ocissimus.
	frugalior,	frugalissimus.

<sup>1</sup> Line 1. *Degenerate*, *needy*, *mindful*; 2. *wakeful*, *fruitful*, *unmindful*.

(b) There are several exceptions to the rule given in § 26 (c) respecting Adjectives in -us preceded by a vowel, e. g.,

assiduus, <i>constant</i> ,	assiduor,	assiduissimus.
egregius, <i>eminent</i> ,	egregior,	

pious, <i>dutiful</i> ,	magis pious,	{ maxime pius. (piissimus). (pientissimus). strenuissimus.
strenuus, <i>active</i> ,	strenuor,	

(c) Adolescens, diuturnus, ingens, opimus, pronus, rusticus, satur<sup>1</sup>, have Comparative, but no Superlative.

(d) Bellus, diversus, falsus, inclitus, invitus, meritus, novus, par<sup>2</sup>, have Superlative, but no Comparative.

(e) Many Adjectives have no Comparative or Superlative. It is impossible to give comprehensive rules for these, but the following classification will assist the learner.

(1) Adjectives derived from Substantives, and signifying *made of, endowed with, and of or belonging to*, as, ligneus, *wooden*, auritus, *long-eared*, Gallicus, *Gallie*. See § 169, b.

(2) Most Adjectives compounded of Verbs or Substantives, as, armiger, *armour-bearing*, inops, *poor*.

*Note.* The exceptions are Adjectives ending in -dicus, -ficus, -volus, § 26. (4), and compounds of ars, meus, and cor, as iners, *inactive*, demens, *mad*, vecors, *foolish*, which are compared regularly, as, inertior, *dementior*, etc.

- (3)
1. Ferus, mirus, gnarus, gnavus,
  2. Rudis, trux, *non habent gradus*<sup>3</sup>.

(f) Comparison of Adverbs.

bene, <i>well</i> ,	melius,	optimē.
male, <i>badly</i> ,	pejus,	peissime.
magnopere, <i>greatly</i> ,	magis,	maxime.
parum, <i>too little</i> ,	minus, <i>less</i> ,	minime.
multum, <i>much</i> ,	plus,	plurimum.
diu, <i>for a long time</i> ,	diutius,	diutissime.
intus, <i>within</i> ,	interius,	intime.
nuper, <i>lately</i> ,	. . .	nuperrime.
[prae, <i>before</i> ],	prius,	primum.
prope, <i>near</i> ,	propius,	proxime.
saepe, <i>often</i> ,	saepius,	saepissime.
satis, <i>enough</i> ,	satius, <i>better</i> .	. . .
secus, <i>otherwise</i> ,	setius, <i>less</i> .	. . .

<sup>1</sup> Youthful, long-continued, vast, rich, bending-forward, rustic, full of food.

<sup>2</sup> Pretty, different, false, famous, unwilling, deserved, new, equal.

<sup>3</sup> Line 1. Fierce, wonderful, knowing, active; 2. unpolished, savage, have no degrees (of comparison).



## § 163. Anomalous and other Substantives.

(a) The following are a few Declensions to be noticed:—

- N. V. Jūpiter, *Jupiter*, has Acc. Jōvem, Gen. Jōvis, etc.  
 N. V. Bos, *ox*, Acc. bōvem, has Gen. Pl. bōum, Dat. Abl. bōbus or būbus.  
 N. V. Paterfamilias, *father of a family*, Acc. patremfamilias, Gen. patrisfamilias, etc. Here familias is an old form of the Gen., but there is also a form paterfamiliae, Acc. patremfamiliae, etc. In the Pl. we find patres familias, patresfamiliae, and patres familiarum. So mater familias, filiusfamilias, etc.  
 N. V. Acc. Jusjurandum, *oath*, Gen. jurisjurandi, Dat. jurijurando, etc. No Plural.  
 N. V. Respublica, *state*, Acc. rempublicam, Gen. reipublicae.  
 N. V. Supellex, *furniture*, Acc. supellectilem, Gen. supellectilis, Abl. supellectili or -e. No Plural.

(b) Heteroclite Nouns are Nouns of varied declension. They are of two kinds:—

- (1) Those having one form of the Nom. but more than one of the Oblique Cases. Thus, many names of trees in -us, as, cupressus, *cypress*, ficus, *fig-tree*, laurus, *bay*, pinus, *pine*, are declined like both 2nd and 4th Declensions. (*Note. Quercus, oak*, is 4th Declension only, except Gen. Pl. quercorum.) Notice also,  
 fēmūr, *thigh*, Gen. femōris and femīnis.  
 jēcūr, *liver*, „ jecōris, and jecinōris.  
 jūgērū, *acre*, „ jugēri, but Gen. Pl. jugerum (3rd Decl.), D. Abl. jugeribus (*rarely* jugeris).  
 rēquies, *rest*, „ requiētis, but Acc. requiētem and requiem, Abl. requiete and requie (3rd and 5th Declensions).  
 vās, *vessel*, „ vasis, but Pl. vasa, vasorum, vasis (2nd Decl.).

*Note.* Many other instances will be found under the head of Heterogeneous Nouns, § 163, c.

- (2) Those having two or more forms of Declension, as, ēlēphantus, G. -i, 2, and ēlēphas, G. -antis, 3, *an elephant*. Many Nouns of the 2nd Declension have forms in -us, and -um, as, jūgūlus and jugulum, *throat*. Many names of qualities follow both the 1st and 5th Declensions, as, luxuria and luxuries, *luxury*. Notice also,

pēnus,	Gen. penōris, 3,	} <i>provisions.</i>
pēnus,	„ penūs, 4,	
pēnum,	„ peni, 2,	

plebs,	Gen. plēbis, 3,	} <i>the common people.</i>
plēbes,	" plebis, 3,	
plēbes,	" plebei, 5,	
praesēpe,	" praesepis, 3,	} <i>manger.</i>
praesēpes,	" praesepis, 3,	
praesēpium,	" praesepii, 2,	
tāpes,	" tapētis, 3,	} <i>carpet.</i>
tapēte,	" tapētis, 3,	
tapētum,	" tapeti, 2,	
vespēra,	Gen. vesperae, 1,	} <i>evening.</i>
vesper,	Acc. vesperum, 2,	
vesper,	Abl. vespere, or -i, 3,	

(c) Heterogeneous Nouns are such as have different Gender (accompanied almost always by different form also) in Pl. from Sing., as,

carbāsus, f.,	<i>canvas,</i>	Pl. carbāsā, n.,	<i>sails.</i>
caelum, n.,	<i>heaven,</i>	" caeli, m.	
frenum, n.,	<i>bit,</i>	" freni, m., and frena, n.	
jōcus, m.,	<i>a jest,</i>	" joci, m., and joca, n.	
lōcus, m.,	<i>place,</i>	" loci, m., and loca, n.	
ostrea, f.,	<i>oyster,</i>	" ostreae, f., and ostrea, n.	
Pergāmus, m.,	<i>Pergamus,</i>	" Pergama, n.	
rastrum, n.,	<i>barrow,</i>	" rastrī, m., and rastra, n.	
sībilus, m.,	<i>hissing,</i>	" sibili, m., and sibila, n.	
Tartārus, m.,	<i>Tartarus,</i>	" Tartara, n.	

*Note.* The Pl. balneae, a *public bath*, has no Sing. except balneum, a *private bath*, pl. balnea; and, on the other hand, epūlac, a *private banquet*, has no Sing. except epūlum, a *public entertainment*.

(d) The following Nouns (commonly called Indeclinable Nouns), have no flexions (§ 12); fas, *right*, nēfas, *wrong*; names of letters of the alphabet, as, alpha, beta; together with the Adjectives frugi, *virtuous*, and nequam, *worthless*, and the Numerals from quattuor, *four*, to centum, a *hundred*.

(e) Some Nouns are found only in one Oblique Case in the Singular, as,

verbēre, Abl., full pl., from (verber), *whip*.

So ambāge, from (ambages), *roundabout way*, compēde, from (compes), *fetter*, fauce, from (faux), *throat*, obīce, from (obex), *bolt*, have full plural but are only found in Ablative in the Singular.

*Note.* Round brackets, as (verber), denote that the word is not found in classical Latin.

Sponte, *by impulse*, noctu, *by night*, jussu, *by order*, injussu, *without orders*, natu, *by birth*, are only found in Abl. Sing., and have no plural.

(f) Some Nouns have only two cases in the Singular, as—

fors, *chance*, Abl. forte, no plural.  
impētis, impete, no pl., from (impes), *violence*.  
sordem, sorde, full pl., from (sordes), *filth*.  
vepre, vepre, full pl., from (vepres), *bramble*.

(g) Some have only three cases in the Singular, as—

fīdem, fidis, fide, full pl., from (fides), *lyre*.  
lues (Nom.), luem, lue, no pl., *a pestilence*.  
ōpem, opis, ope, full pl., in the sense of *riches, power*, from (ops), *help*.  
precem, preci, prece, full pl., from (prex), *a prayer*.  
vīcem, vicis, vice, pl. vices, vicibus, no Gen., from (vicis), *change*.  
vis (Nom.), vim, vi, *violence*. Pl. vīres, virium, viribus, *strength*.

(h) Some have only four cases in the Singular, as—

dāpem, dapis, dapi, dape, full pl., from (daps), *a feast*.  
dicion-em, -is, -i, -e, full pl., from (dicio), *dominion*.  
frug-em, -is, -i, -e, full pl., from (frux), *fruit*.  
internecion-em, -is, -i, -e, full pl., from (internecio), *destruction*.

(j) Nouns used only in the Singular.

Names of Qualities, as sapientia, *wisdom*, senectus, *old age*, and of Materials, as ferrum, *iron*, aes, *bronze*, lignum, *wood*, are, from their meaning, only used in the Singular. Names of materials are, however, sometimes found in the Plural signifying objects made of the material, as aera, *works in bronze*, ligna, *logs*; and names of qualities are sometimes used in the Plural to denote instances of the quality, as omnes avaritiae, *all forms of avarice*. Proper Names are, of course, Singular, but may be used in the Plural to denote a class of names, just as in English. For, Cneius and Publius Scipio, *write*, Cneius et Publius Scipiones.

Pelagus, *the sea*, vulgus, *the common people*, virus, *poison*, besides many others already noticed, have no Plural.

(k) Nouns used only in the Plural.

There are very many nouns of this class in Latin. See Madvig, Lat. Gr. § 51. The following are a few:—

- |                                   |                                            |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| 1. Artus, <i>limbs</i> , majōres, | 3. Towns, as Veii; <i>inter alia</i>       |
| 2. Casses, mānes, and primōres,   | 4. Festivals, as Saturnalia <sup>1</sup> . |

<sup>1</sup> Line 1. Limbs, flanks, ancestors; 2. net, ghost, chief men; 3. Veii; 4. Saturnalia.

(I) List of Nouns which vary their meaning in the Plural:—

S. Aedes, <i>a temple.</i>	Littēra, <i>letter of the alphabet.</i>
P. Aedes, <i>a house.*</i>	Litterae, <i>epistle, literature.*</i>
S. Auxilium, <i>help.</i>	Ludus, <i>play.</i>
P. Auxilia, <i>auxiliary forces.</i>	Ludi, <i>public games.*</i>
S. Carcer, <i>prison.</i>	Lustrum, <i>space of five years.</i>
P. Carcēres, <i>starting place.*</i>	Lustra, <i>dens, lairs.*</i>
S. Castrum, <i>fort.</i>	Mos, <i>custom.</i>
P. Castra, <i>camp.</i>	Mores, <i>character.*</i>
S. Copia, <i>plenty.</i>	Opēra, <i>labour.</i>
P. Copiae, <i>forces.</i>	Operae, <i>work-people.</i>
S. Finis, <i>end.</i>	Opem [Acc.], <i>help.</i>
P. Fines, <i>boundaries.</i>	Opes, <i>power, wealth.</i>
S. Gratia, <i>favour, popularity.</i>	Rus, <i>the country.</i>
P. Gratiae, <i>thanks or the Graces.</i>	Rura, <i>fields.</i>
S. Impedimentum, <i>hindrance.</i>	Sal, <i>salt.</i>
P. Impedimenta, <i>baggage.*</i>	Sāles, <i>twit.</i>

*Note.* The Plurals in the above list which are marked with an asterisk may also follow the meanings of their Nominative Singular.

## NUMERAL ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

§ 164. Numerals are of various kinds.

(a) *Cardinal*, as, unus, *one*, duo, *two*, etc. The first three Cardinals have been already declined (see § 23). From quattuor, *four*, to centum, *a hundred*, they are indeclinable.

(b) *Ordinal*, as, primus, *first*, sēcundus, *second*.

(c) *Distributive*, as, singūli, *one apiece*, bini, *two apiece*.

(d) *Multiplicative*, as, simplex, *simple*, duplex, *twofold*.

(e) *Adverbial Numerals*, as, sēmel, *once*, bis, *twice*.

(f) There are also *Proportional Numerals*, ending in -plus, and meaning 'how many times as great,' as, duplus, *twice as great*; and a class of Adverbs formed from the Ordinals and ending in -o or -um, as, primo or primum, *for the first time*.

(g) The principal Numerals are given in the following Table:—

Arabic Numbers.	Roman Symbols.	Cardinals.	Ordinals.	Distributives.	Multiplicatives.	Adverbs.
1	I	ūnus	prīmus, -a, -um	singŭli, -ae, -a	sem̄l	
2	II	dŭo	secundus <i>or</i> alter	bini	bis	
3	III	trēs	tertius	terni <i>or</i> trini	ter	
4	IV	quattuor	quartus	quaterni	quadruplex	quātēr
5	V	quinque	quintus	quini	quincuplex	quinquēs
6	VI	sex	sextus	seni	· · ·	sexies
7	VII	septem	septimus	septeni	semplex	septies
8	VIII	octo	octavus	octōni	· · ·	octies
9	IX	nōvem	nōnus	nōveni	· · ·	nōvies
10	X	dēcem	dēcimus	deni	dēcomplex	dēcies
11	XI	undēcim	undēcimus	undēni	· · ·	undēcies
12	XII	duōdēcim	duōdēcimus	duōdēni	· · ·	duōdēcies
13	XIII	trēdēcim	tertius dēcimus	terni deni	· · ·	trēdēcies
14	XIV	quattuordēcim	quartus dēcimus	quaterni deni	· · ·	quattuordēcies
15	XV	quindēcim	quintus dēcimus	quini deni	· · ·	quindēcies
16	XVI	sēdēcim	sextus dēcimus	seni deni	· · ·	sēdēcies
17	XVII	septemdēcim	septimus dēcimus	septeni deni	· · ·	septies decies
18	XVIII	duōdēviginti	duōdēvicesimus	duōdēvicensi	Few Multi-	duōdēvices
19	XIX	undēviginti	undēvicesimus	undēvicensi	plicatives of	undēvices
20	XX	vīginti	vicesimus	vicensi	high num-	vices
21	XXI	vīginti ūnus <i>or</i> unus et vīginti	vicesimus primus <i>or</i> unus et vicesimus	vicensi singuli	bers are	sen̄l et vices
22	XXII	vīginti duō <i>or</i> duo et vīginti	vicesimus secundus <i>or</i> alter et vicesi- mus	vicensi bini	found in La- tin, except	bis et vices
					centuplex, <i>a</i>	

30	XXX	trīgintā	trīgēsimus	trīcēni	<i>hundred-fold, trices</i> <i>and one or</i> <i>two more.</i>
40	XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus	quingēni	quadragies
50	L	quinquāgintā	quinquagēsimus	sexagēni	quinquagies
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexagēsimus	septuagēni	sexagies
70	LXX	septuāgintā	septuagēsimus	octogēni	octogies
80	LXXX	octōgintā	octogēsimus	nonagēni	nonagies
90	LXXX	nonāgintā	nonagēsimus	centēni	centies
100	C	centum	centēsimus	centeni singuli	centies sēmīl
101	CI	centum et unus	centesimus primus	dūcēni	dūcenties
200	CC	dūcenti, -ae, -a	dūcentesimus	trīcēni	trīcenties
300	CCC	trīcenti, -ae, -a	trīcentesimus	quadrīngēni	In quadringenties
400	CCCC or CD	quadrīngenti, -ae, -a	quadrīngentesimus	quingēni	Note. In the Ordinals -esimus is often written for -esimus, and in the Ad-verbs -iens is often written for -ies.
500	D or ICD	quingenti, -ae, -a	quingentesimus	sexcenti	quingenties
600	DC	sexcenti, -ae, -a	sexcentesimus	septingēni	sexcenties
700	DCC	septingenti, -ae, -a	septingentesimus	octingēni	septingenties
800	DCCC	octingenti, -ae, -a	octingentesimus	nongēni	octingenties
900	DCCCC	nongenti, -ae, -a	nongentesimus	singulā millia	nongenties
1,000	M or CIO	millē or millia	millesimus	bīna millia	milles
2,000	MM or IIM	bis mille or duo millia	bis millesimus	quīna millia	bis millicies
5,000	VM or ICI	quinquies mille or quinque millia	quinquies millesimus	dena millia	quinquies millicies
10,000	XM or CCICD	decies mille or decem millia	decies millesimus	decies centēnā millia	decies millicies
1,000,000	CCCCICICICIC	cem millia	decies centies millesimus		decies centies millicies.

## § 165. Notes on the Numerals.

## (a) Cardinal Numerals.

(1) Mille is an indeclinable Adjective meaning *one thousand*, as, mille equites, 1000 *horsemen*: millia is a Neuter Plural Substantive of the Third Declension, meaning *thousands*, and takes a dependent Genitive, as, tria millia equitum, 3000 *horsemen*. Such phrases as tria millia quadringenti quadraginta sex milites interfecti sunt, 3446 *soldiers were killed*, are for tria millia militum et quadringenti quadraginta sex milites.

(2) bis mille, ter mille, etc., are found instead of duo, tria, etc., millia, chiefly in poetry; also with anni, as, bis mille anni, 2000 *years*, rather than duo millia annorum.

(3) When the smaller number is put first et is generally used, as, quattuor et viginti, like our 'four and twenty;' when the greater is put first et is omitted, as, viginti quattuor.

(4) Cardinals used *partitively* take a Genitive, '300 of the ships were lost,' trecentae navium amissae sunt.

(5) In translating twenty-one, thirty-one, etc., unus must be kept in the Singular. 'We sent twenty-one soldiers,' milites viginti unum, *or*, unum et viginti milites, misimus [i.e. unum militem et viginti milites].

## (b) Ordinal Numerals.

(1) For 'the first and second legions,' say, prima et secunda [not primae et secundae] legiones.

(2) For 'thirteenth,' 'fourteenth,' etc., say, tertius decimus, quartus decimus, not decimus tertius, etc., except when following higher numbers, as, ducentessimus decimus tertius, *the 213th*.

(3) For 'forty-fifth,' 'seventy-eighth,' etc., say, fortieth fifth, seventieth eighth, quadragessimus quintus, etc., not quadraginta quintus. The Cardinals are not joined with Ordinals in Latin, as they are in English, except that unus is sometimes used for primus, as, unus et vicesimus, *the 21st*.

(4) The date of a year is expressed in Ordinals: For 'in the year 2875 B.C.,' say, 'in the year before Christ born twice-thousandth, eight-hundredth, seventieth, fifth,' anno ante Christum natum bis millesimo octingentesimo septuagesimo quinto.

(5) Fractions are expressed by 'pars' with Ordinals, as, septima pars, *one-seventh*, duae septimae partes, *two-sevenths*, etc. Pars is often omitted, only tertia, quarta, etc., being used. One-half is pars dimidia. When the denominator exceeds the numerator by 1 only, it is often omitted, as, duae partes, *two-thirds*, quattuor partes, *four-fifths*, etc. For fractions of the *as* see § 173.

## (c) Distributive Numerals.

(1) Distributives shew that the number spoken of applies to each individual of a class. They are often indicated in English by the words *each*, *every*, or *apiece*. 'He gave each [*or*, every one] of them five books,' or, 'he gave them five books *apiece*,' *quinos libros iis dedit*. *Quinque libros iis dedit* would mean 'he gave them five books *in all*,' i.e. five books among the whole number.

(2) Use Distributives for Cardinals (1) with Substantives that have no Singular, (2) with Substantives that have a different meaning in the Plural from the Singular, as *una littera*, *one letter* (of the alphabet), but *binæ litteræ*, *two epistles*. *Unus*, however, is an exception: 'one camp,' *una castra*, not *singula castra*.

TABLE OF RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE,  
AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

## § 166. The Simple Forms.

The Relative Pronoun,	Qui, quæ, quod, <i>who</i> or <i>which</i> .
The Interrogative Pronoun,	{ Quis, (quis), quid, } <i>who?</i> or <i>what?</i> Qui, quæ, quod, }
The Indefinite Pronoun,	{ Quis, quæ, quid, } <i>any</i> . Qui, quæ, quod, }

*Note.* These duplicate forms of the Interrogative and Indefinite should be carefully remembered. The first is the *Substantival* Form, as, *Quis hoc fecit? Who did this?* *Si quis hoc faciat, If any one should do this*; the second is the *Adjectival*, used when some Substantive is introduced agreeing with the Pronoun, as, *Qui puer hoc fecit? What boy did this?* *Si qui puer hoc faciat, If any boy should do this*<sup>1</sup>. The same distinction is preserved in many of the following Compounds.

## § 167. The Compounds.

Quidam, <i>a certain person.</i>	Quidam, quædam, quiddam, Subst. } quoddam, Adj. }
Quivis, { <i>any you</i>	Quivis, quævis, quidvis, Subst. } quodvis, Adj. }
Quilibet, { <i>please.</i>	Quilibet, quælibet, quidlibet, Subst. } quodlibet, Adj. }

<sup>1</sup> These distinctions are by no means rigidly observed among Latin writers, e.g. 'si quis Deus, eni ego, dicat,' Hor., but they should be noticed by beginners.



Quicunque, } *whoso-* Quicunque, quaecunque, quodcunque.  
 Quisquis, } *ever.* The forms in use of quisquis are—

*Sing.* N. Quisquis, *neut.* quidquid or quicquid.

*Acc.* *neut.* quidquid or quicquid.

*Abl.* Quoquo, quâquâ, quoquo.

*Note.* Quisquis is generally used as a Substantive, quicunque as an Adjective.

Quisque, *each.* Quisque, quaeque, quicque or quidque, Subst. }  
 quodque, Adj.

Unusquisque, *each one.* Unusquisque, unaquaeque, unumquicque or -dque, Subst. }  
 unumquodque, Adj.

Aliquis, *some.* Aliquis, aliquâ, aliquid, Subst. }

Aliqui, aliquae, aliquod, Adj. }

Nescioquis (or nescio quis), *some*, is declined like aliquis.

Quispiam, *any one.* Quispiam, quaequam, quidpiam or quippiam, Subst. }  
 quodpiam, Adj. }

Quisquam, *any one at all.* } Quisquam, quidquam or quicquam.

*Note.* Quisquam is generally a Substantive; the Adjective is ullus, -a, -um, *any at all.*

Ecquis, ecqua, ecquid, } *any?* is an Interrogative-Indefinite Pronoun.  
 Ecqui, ecquae or -â, ecquod, }

The Interrogative part is translated by throwing the sentence in which the Pronoun occurs into the form of a question, and the Indefinite part by supplying the word *any*, as Ecqua puero cura est? *Has the boy any care?*

## TERMINATIONS OF DERIVED NOUNS.

§ 168. Derived Substantives are formed, (a) from Verbs, (b) from other Substantives, (c) from Adjectives.

(a) Substantives derived from Verbs.

(1) -tor and -sor express the *person who does* the action denoted by the Verb, as, amator, *a lover*, from amo; suasor, *an adviser*, from suadeo. A feminine form in -trix is sometimes found, as, victrix.

*Note.* Some Substantives in -tor are derived immediately from other Substantives, as viator, *a traveller*, from via.

(2) -tio, -tus, -sio, and -sus, express the *action of the Verb*, as, motio and motus, *a moving*, from moveo; visus and visio, *a seeing*, from video.

(3) -ium, -or, and -us express the *effect* of the action denoted by the Verb as, gaudium, *joy*, from gaudeo; amor, *love*, from amo; usus, *use*, from utor.

- (4) **-mentum** and **-men** express *means of attaining* that which the Verb denotes, as, *documentum, means of teaching*, from *doceo*; *tutamen, means of defence*, from *tutor*.  
 (5) **-ulum, -pulum, -eulum**, denote *instrument*, as, *jac-ulum, instrument for throwing*, from *jacio*.

(b) Substantives derived from other Substantives.

- (1) **-lus, -la, -lum** [the termination varies according to the gender of the Primitive Substantive], express *diminutives*. These terminations assume various forms, e. g. **-ŭlus, -cŭlus, -ellus, -illus**; as, *cornic-ŭla, a little crow*, from *cornix*; *corni-cŭlum, a little horn*, from *cornu*; *libellus, a little book*, from *liber*; *lapillus, a little stone*, from *lapis*.

*Note.* **-leus** is sometimes a diminutive ending, as, *equuleus, a colt*, from *equus*.

- (2) **-ium** denotes either *an office*, as, *sacerdotium, priesthood*, the office of the *sacerdos*; or *an assemblage of individuals*, as, *collegium, a college*, or *assembly of collegae*.  
 (3) **-ētum** denotes *a place where plants grow*, as *quercētum, a grove of oaks*, from *quercus*; *salictum (for salicētum), a willow-bed*, from *salix*.  
 (4) **-arium** denotes *a receptacle*, as, *armarium, a cupboard*, from *arma*; and so, *a place where things grow*, as, *violarium, a violet bed*.  
 (5) **-ile** denotes *a place where animals are kept*, as, *ovile, a sheepfold*, from *ovis*.  
 (6) **-ia** denotes a country, and is usually derived from the name of its people, as, *Italia, the country of the Itali*.  
 (7) **Patronymics** end in **-ādes**, if derived from Nouns of 1st Decl., or of 2nd Decl. in **-ius**, as *Aeneādes, son of Aeneas*; *Thestiādes, son of Thestius*; in **-ides** if from Nouns of 2nd Decl. in **-us**, as *Priamīdes, son of Priam*; in **-ides**, if from Nouns in **-eus**, as *Atrīdes, son of Atreus*. The feminines end in **-is**, as, *Nereis, daughter of Nereus*; or **-as**, as, *Thestias, daughter of Thestius*.

(c) Substantives derived from Adjectives.

These all denote the *quality* which the Adjective expresses attributively. The chief terminations are:

- (1) **-itas** or **-tas**, as, *bonitas, goodness*, the quality of the *bonus*.  
 (2) **-ia**, as, *audacia, boldness*, the quality of the *audax*.  
 (3) **-itia**, as, *justitia, justice*, the quality of the *justus*.  
 (4) **-tudo**, as, *fortitudo, bravery*, the quality of the *fortis*.

§ 169. Derived Adjectives are formed, (a) from Verbs, (b) from Substantives, (c) from Adverbs and Prepositions.

(a) Adjectives formed from Verbs.

These usually have the force of Participles. The following are the principal terminations:

- (1) **-bundus** and **-cundus**. These = Present Active Participles, with intensive meaning, as *lacrymabundus*, *weeping profusely*, from *lacrymor*; *iracundus*, *full of wrath*, from *irascor*.
- (2) **-ax** denotes *active inclination*, as, *pugnax*, *fona of fighting*, from *pugno*.
- (3) **-idus**, chiefly from Intransitive Verbs, denotes *activity*, as, *fervidus*, *glowing*, from *ferveo*.
- (4) **-ilis** and **-ibilis** denote *capability*, and are generally used Passively, as, *docilis*, *teachable*, from *doceo*; *mobilis* (*for movibilis*), *movable*, from *moveo*. But some are used Actively, as, *terribilis*, *terrible* (i.e. *capable of terrifying*), from *terreo*.
- (5) **-tivus** denotes *a state resulting from verbal action*, as, *captivus*, *captive* (i.e. in a state of having been taken), from *capio*.
- (6) **-tilis** and **-silis** have the force of Perfect Passive Participles, as, *sectilis*, *cut*, from *seco*; *pensilis*, *hung up*, from *pendo*.

(b) Adjectives formed from Substantives.

These express, (a) *made of*, (b) *full of*, (c) *endowed with*, (d) *of or belonging to*. The last class is by far the most numerous.

(1) The chief terminations expressing *made of* are:

1. **-eus**, as, *ligneus*, *wooden*, from *lignum*.
2. **-nus**, as, *quernus*, *oaken*, from *quercus*.

*Note.* These terminations may, however, express *of or belonging to*, when the Noun from which they are derived is not a Noun of Matter, as, *virgineus*, *maternus*.

(2) The chief terminations expressing *full of* are:

1. **-osus**, as, *nivōsus*, *full of snow*, from *nix*, *nivis*.
2. **-lentus**, as, *vinōlentus*, *full of wine*, from *vinum*.

(3) Adjectives signifying *endowed with* end in **-tus**, and have the nature of Perfect Passive Participles, as, *aurātus*, *gilded*, from *aurum*; *auritus*, *long-eared*, from *auris*; *nasūtus*, *long-nosed*, from *nasus*.

(4) The terminations expressing *of or belonging to* are very numerous. The following are the most common:

1. **-ius**, as, *regius*, *royal*, from *rex*.
2. **-icus**, as, *Gallicus*, *Gallic*, from *Gallus*.
3. **-ivus**, as, *aestivus*, *summer-*, from *aestas*.

4. -lis (or -ris), preceded by a vowel, as, *mortalis*, *mortal*, from *mors*; *popularis*, *popular*, from *populus*; *fidelis*, *faithful*, from *fides*; *hostilis*, *hostile*, from *hostis*.

*Note.* The termination -ris is the same as -lis in meaning, and seems to be used in order to avoid a repetition of the letter l, as, *solaris* for *solalis*.

5. -nus preceded by a vowel, as, *montānus*, *mountainous*, from *mons*; *terrēnus*, *of earth*, from *terra*; *canīnus*, *canine*, from *canis*.
6. -ter or -tis, as, *pedester*, *pedestrian*, from *pes*; *caelestis*, *heavenly*, from *caelum*.
7. -as and -ensis are usually confined to Adjectives derived from names of Places, as *Aquinas*, *of Aquinum*; *Atheniensis*, *Athenian*.

(c) A few Adjectives are derived from Adverbs and Prepositions, as, *diuturnus*, *lasting*, from *diu*; *posterus*, *next*, from *post*.

The terminations of derived Verbs are given above, § 75.

## THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

§ 170. The Roman Calendar agreed with our own in the number of months, and of the days in each; but their manner of dating was very different.

Each month had three distinctive days, namely:—

The Kalends [Kalendae, Gen. -arum], which fell on the 1st.

The Nones [Nonae, Gen. -arum], which fell on the 5th, *usually*.

The Ides [Idūs, Gen. -uum], which fell on the 13th, *usually*.

But in March, May, July, and October, the Nones fell on the 7th and the Ides on the 15th.

§ 171. In dating:—

(a) The 1st, 5th, and 13th were denoted by the Ablatives, Kalendis, Nonis, Idibus, with the name of the month added in agreement, as Kalendis Ianuariis, *the 1st of January*. But in March, May, July, and October, Nonis and Idibus stood for 7th and 15th respectively.

(b) The day before the Kalends, Nones, or Ides, was denoted by the Adverb pridie, *the day before*, used like a Preposition governing an Accusative Case, as, pridie Kalendas Ianuarias, *the 31st of December*, pridie Idus Ianuarias, *the 12th of January*, pridie Idus Martias, *the 14th of March*.

(c) All other days were denoted by reckoning *back* from the next ensuing Kalends, Nones, or Ides. The reckoning included not only the day reckoned *from* but the day reckoned *to*; thus the 30th of December was called the *third* not the *second* day before the Kalends of January. The form for expressing the date thus found is as follows:—

Ante diem tertium Kalendas Januarias, *the 30th of December.*

Ante diem octavum Idus Januarias, *the 6th of January.*

Ante diem quartum Nonas Martias, *the 4th of March.*

Ante diem duodevicesimum Kalendas Maias, *the 14th of April.*

§ 172. A short form for expressing the above dates is as follows:—

a. d. III. Kal. Jan., *the 30th of December.*

a. d. VIII. Id. Jan., *the 6th of January.*

a. d. IV. Non. Mart., *the 4th of March.*

a. d. XVIII. Kal. Mai., *the 14th of April.*

*Note 1.* An easy method of finding the Roman date corresponding to an English is by adding 1 to the Nones or Ides, or 2 to the days of the month, and then subtracting the English date from the result. Thus, to find the Roman date for the 6th of January:— $13 + 1 = 14$ , and  $14 - 6 = 8$ . Hence our 6th of January is the Roman 8th day before the Ides. So, the 4th of March is  $7 + 1 - 4 = 4$ ; the 14th of April is  $30 + 2 - 14 = 18$ , etc.

*Note 2.* In leap-year the 24th of February [ante diem sextum Kalendas Martias, or a. d. VI. Kal. Mart.] was reckoned for two consecutive days. Hence this day was called dies bissextus, and leap-year itself annus bissextus. In such years the additional day was not reckoned in calculating the date from the 14th to the 24th of February. Thus a. d. X. Kal. Mart. stood for the 20th of February, whether the year was leap year or not.

*Note 3.* The phrase for expressing a date was considered as a single word admitting of government by the Prepositions *in* and *ex*, as, Supplicationes edictae sunt in antediem quartum et tertium et pridie Kalendas Novembres, *Public thanksgivings were decreed for the 29th, 30th, and 31st of October*; Supplicatio indicta est ex antediem quintum Idus Octobres, *A public thanksgiving was decreed, beginning from the 11th of October.*

*Note 4.* The names of the months were Januarius, Februarius, Martius, Aprilis, Maius, Junius, Julius, Augustus, September, October, November, December. These are Adjectives, but may be used as Substantives, mensis being understood. See § 158, c.

*Note 5.* The months of July and August were called Quintilis and Sextilis before the time of the Emperor Augustus.

## ROMAN WEIGHTS AND MONEY.

§ 173. The *as*, or *pound*, also called *libra*, which served as the standard unit both for weights and coins, was divided into twelve parts.

Assis Romani partes sunt uncia, sextans,  
Quadrans, atque triens, quincunx, et semis, et inde  
Septunx, bes, dodrans; dextanti junde deuncem.

Uncia	= $\frac{1}{12}$	of an <i>as</i> = 1 ounce.
Sextans	= $\frac{2}{12}$	= $\frac{1}{6}$ of an <i>as</i> = 2 ounces.
Quadrans	= $\frac{3}{12}$	= $\frac{1}{4}$ " = 3 "
Triens	= $\frac{4}{12}$	= $\frac{1}{3}$ " = 4 "
Quincunx	= $\frac{5}{12}$	" = 5 "
Semis	= $\frac{6}{12}$	= $\frac{1}{2}$ " = 6 "
Septunx	= $\frac{7}{12}$	" = 7 "
Bes	= $\frac{8}{12}$	= $\frac{2}{3}$ " = 8 "
Dodrans	= $\frac{9}{12}$	= $\frac{3}{4}$ " = 9 "
Dextans	= $\frac{10}{12}$	= $\frac{5}{6}$ " = 10 "
Deunx	= $\frac{11}{12}$	" = 11 "

*Terms used in bequeathing property.* Heres ex *asse*, heir to the whole estate; heres ex *deunce*, dextante, etc., heir to eleven twelfths, five sixths, etc.

§ 174. *Interest.* In the later times of the republic the Romans reckoned interest by the month, not by the year. Hence, asses usurae = 1 *as* per cent. per mensem = 12 per cent. per annum; deunces usurae =  $\frac{1}{12}$  of an *as* per cent. per mensem = 11 per cent. per annum, and so on. Instead of asses usurae we sometimes find the phrase centesimae usurae, or simply centesimae, i. e. hundredth parts of the principal paid monthly, or 12 per cent. per annum. Binae centesimae = 24 per cent.

*Note.* For the phrase *fenus unciarum* see Smith's Dictionary of Antiquities.

§ 175. The Sestertius, or nummus sestertius, was a coin of the value of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  asses, being rather more than twopence of our money before the reign of Augustus, and rather less than that sum afterwards. It is denoted by the symbol HS. (i. e. L(ibra) L(ibra) S(emis), or perhaps IIS(emis),  $2\frac{1}{2}$  pounds).

The sum of 1000 Sestertii was called Sestertium, roughly equivalent to about £8 English money. This also was denoted by the symbol HS.

The expression for a million sestertii was decies centena millia sestertium (for -orum); for 1,100,000 sestertii, undecies centena millia sestertium, etc. The words centena millia are often understood; hence, decies sestertium, a *million*; millies HS., a *hundred millions*, etc.

In order to distinguish HS. meaning sestertia from HS. meaning sestertii, a line is sometimes written over the subjoined numeral. Thus, HS.MD.=1500 sestertii, but HS.MD.=1500 sestertia, i. e. 1,500,000 sestertii. To indicate centena millia sestertiūm a line is sometimes placed over the whole expression, as HS.MD.=millies et quingenties centena millia sestertiūm=150,000,000 sestertii or 150,000 sestertia.

## ABBREVIATIONS.

### § 176. Proper Names.

A.	Aulus.	N.	Nūmērius.
C., G.	Caius, Gaius.	P.	Publius.
Cn., Gn.	Cnaeus, Gnaeus.	Q.	Quintus.
D.	Decimus.	S., or Sex.	Sextus.
K.	Kaeso.	Ser.	Servius
L.	Lūcius.	Sp.	Spūrius.
M.	Marcus.	T.	Titus.
M'.	Mānius.	Ti.	Tīberius

For women's names these letters are inverted, as D. Gaia.

*Note.* All the above are **praenomina** or individual names. Besides his praenomen, a Roman had a **nomen** which showed his **gens**, and a **cognomen** showing to what branch or family of the gens he belonged. Thus, Marcus Tullius Cicero denotes 'Marcus of the Cicero branch of the Tullia gens.' An **agnomen** was usually a title of honour, e. g. Africanus, Magnus, etc., or a title denoting adoption, as Octavianus (being the name of his former gens with the termination *-anus*), assumed by C. Octavius after being adopted by C. Julius Caesar, whose praenomen, nomen and cognomen he also assumed, and became known as Caius Julius Caesar Octavianus.

### § 177. Miscellaneous.

A. U. C.	Anno urbis conditae.	P. C.	Patres conscripti.
Cos.	Consul, -e.	P. R.	Populus Romanus.
Coss.	Consul-es, -ibus.	S. C.	Senatūs consultum.
D. O. M.	Deo Optimo Maximo.	S.	Salutem.
D. D.	Dono dedit.	S. P. D.	Salutem plurimam dicit (or dat).
F.	Filius.	S. P. Q. R.	Senatus Populusque Romanus.
HS.	Sesterti-us, -um.	S. V. B. E. E. V.	Si vales bene est, Ego valeo.
Imp.	Imperator.		
Id.	Idus.		
Kal.	Kalendae.		
Non.	Nonae.		

*Note.* For a more complete list of Abbreviations see Roby's Latin Grammar, vol. i. Appendix G, or Public Schools Lat. Gr., Appendix K.

# EXPLANATION OF CERTAIN TERMS USED BY GRAMMARIANS.

## § 178. Letters.

*Uncial letters.* Capitals.

*Cursive letters.* Small letters.

*Mutes.* The letters *c* (*k, q*), *g, b; t, d; p, b, f* (*v*).

*Nasals.* The letters *m, n*.

*Liquids.* The letters *l, r*.

*Spirants.* The letters *f, b, j, s, v*.

*Double Letters.* The letters *x, z*.

*Gutturals.* The throat sounds, viz. *c, g, b, n, q, x*.

*Dentals.* The teeth sounds, viz. *d, f, l, n, r, s, t, z*.

*Labials.* The lip sounds, viz. *p, b, m, f, v*.

## § 179. Syllables, etc.

*Ultima.* The last syllable of a word.

*Penultima.* The last syllable but one.

*Antepenultima.* The last syllable but two.

*Enclitic.* A name given to words which are attached to the end of some other word in the sentence, as *-que, and*.

## § 180. Nouns.

*Parisyllabic.* Having the same number of syllables in the Oblique Cases as in the Nominative, i. e. not increasing.

*Imparisyllabic.* Increasing in the Oblique Cases.

*Root.* The Root of a word is that part which it has in common with other kindred words. Thus the root of *bellator, a warrior*, is *bell*, which it has in common with *bellum* and *bellare*.

*Nouns of Common Gender.* Nouns which can be used either as Masculine or Feminine, to suit the sex referred to, as, *parens, a parent*; see § 154 *b*.

*Nouns of Epicene Gender.* Certain names of animals having only one Gender, whichever be the sex referred to, as, *passer*, Masc. *a sparrow*; *vulpes*, Fem. *a fox*, *aquila*, Fem. *an eagle*. To indicate sex, when necessary, the words *mas* or *femina* are added, as *passer mas, cock-sparrow*.

*Nouns of Doubtful Gender.* Nouns which are used either Masculine or Feminine, without regard to the sex signified, as, *talpa*, Masc. or Fem., *a mole*.



## § 181. Verbs.

*Aorist* (=Indefinite). Properly the Tense denoting Indefinite Time, whether Past, Present, or Future (see p. 67), but in Latin restricted to Past Time.

*Protasis and Apodosis*. In a Conditional Sentence, as, *Si voluisset, fecisset*, the *si* clause is called the Protasis, the other the Apodosis.

## § 182. Etymological Figures.

*Assimilation*. When a consonant changes itself to one which follows it, or to one like that which follows; thus, *sub-pono* becomes *suppono*; *in-berbis* becomes *imberbis*.

*Aphaerësis*. Cutting off letters from beginning, as, *nosco* for *gnosco*.

*Syncopë*. Taking away from middle, as, *periculum* for *pericülum*.

*Apocopë*. Cutting off from end, as, *dic* for *dice*.

*Antithesis*. Changing one letter for another, as, *būbus* for *bōbus*.

*Metathësis*. Transposition of a letter or syllable, as, *cornus* for *corulus*, *accerso* for *arcesso*.

*Tmesis*. Separation of parts of a compound word by the insertion of one or more words between the parts, as, *septem subjecta trioni* for *subjecta septemtrioni*.

## § 183. Syntactical Figures.

*Ellipse*. Omission of something, e. g. of a Substantive, as, *ferina, venison* [supply *caro*]; of a Verb, as, *Nam Polydorus ego, For I am Polydorus* [supply *sum*].

*Pleonasm*. Using more words than are necessary to express the meaning, as, *sic ore locutus est*, where '*ore*' is redundant.

*Zeugma*. When two words or two clauses have the same Verb, which does not apply equally to both; so that for one of them another Verb (to be gathered from the sense of the passage) must be mentally supplied, as, *Inceptoque et sedibus haeret in isdem, He abides by his resolve, and remains seated in the same place*.

*Asyndëton*. Omission of Conjunctions, as, *veni, vidi, vici*.

*Hendiädys*. Use of two Substantives instead of Substantive and Adjective to express one object, as, *pateris libamus et auro* for *libamus aureis pateris*.

*Enallägë*. Use of one word for another, e. g. one Part of Speech for another, one Case for another, use of Singular for Plural, etc.

*Hypallägë*. Interchange of Cases, as, *dare classibus Austros* for *dare classes Austris*, or using an Adjective in agreement with a Noun other than that to which it belongs in sense, as, *sagitta celeris transilit umbras*.

*Prolepsis.* The poets sometimes put an Adjective or Participle in agreement with a Substantive, though the quality implied cannot belong to it until the action of the Verb to which the Substantive belongs is completed; as, *Scuta latentia* condunt, which means, *They stow away the shields so that they become hidden*, i. e. *hide the shields out of sight*; where *latentia* is said to belong to *scuta proleptically*, that is, by anticipation. Compare the English phrases 'to strike a man dead,' 'to beat him black and blue,' etc., and *Macbeth*, Act iii. Sc. 4, 'Ere humane statute purged the gentle weal.'

*Synësis* or *Constructio ad Sensum.* When the Verb agrees not in grammar but in sense with its Subject, the Adjective with its Substantive, or the Relative with its Antecedent, as, *fatale monstrum, quae*, etc., *Hor. Od. I.*, xxxvii. 21. See also §§ 216, 220.

*Anacoluthon.* When the latter part of a sentence does not agree in syntax with the former; which sometimes happens when a parenthetical clause has intervened, so that the author has lost sight of the construction with which he set out.

### § 184. Prosody.

*Foot.* A name given to a set of two or more syllables by which lines of Latin poetry are divided.

*Scansion.* } The distribution of a verse of poetry into its proper  
*Scanning.* } feet.

*Dactyl.* A foot consisting of one long and two short syllables, as, *cārminā*.

*Spondee.* A foot consisting of two long syllables, as, *mēnsās*.

*Other kinds of feet.* Pyrrhic, ∪ ∪; Iambus, ∪ -; Trochee, - ∪; Anapaest, ∪ ∪ -; Tribrach, ∪ ∪ ∪.

*Hexameter* (ἑξ, six; μέτρον, measure). A verse of six feet, of which the first four may be either Dactyls or Spondees, the fifth must be a Dactyl, and the sixth a Spondee, as,

Tītūrē | tū pātū|lāē rēcū|bāns sūb | tēgmīnē | fāgī||.

*Pentameter* (πέντε, five). A verse of five feet. It has two divisions, each consisting of two feet and a long syllable, the two long syllables virtually constituting the fifth foot. The first half may have either Dactyls or Spondees, the second half Dactyls only, as,

Rēs ēst | sōllīcī | tī || plēnā tī | mōrīs ā | mōr ||.

*Note 1.* The last syllable of a verse may be either long or short, but a short vowel-ending should be avoided, especially in the Pentameter.

*Note 2.* A Hexameter should end with a trisyllable or dissyllable word. A Pentameter should end with a dissyllable, which should be either a Substantive, Verb, or Personal or Possessive Pronoun.

**Caesura.** The point in a verse where a word ends, so as to cut [caedo] the foot in two, and the voice pauses a little. In a Hexameter line a Caesura should usually occur in the third foot, as,

Tītŷrē | tū pātū | lāē rēcū | bans, etc.

**Penthemimeral Caesura** (πέντε, five, ἡμί, half, μέρος, a part). A Caesura after the fifth half-foot, as in the line just given.

**Hepthemimeral Caesura** (ἑπτὰ, seven). A Caesura occurring after the seventh half-foot, as,

Fōrmō | sām rēsō | nārē dō | cēs Āmā | rŷllidā | sīlvās||.

**Strong and Weak Caesura.** In the Hexameter last given the 3rd foot contains what is called a *weak*, the 4th a *strong* Caesura.

**Catalectic.** A name given to a verse which is incomplete by one syllable. Thus, each of the two divisions of the Pentameter is said to be Catalectic.

**Metre or Measure** (μέτρον) is used in two senses;—(a) A definite system or combination of particular Verses; e. g. the *Elegiac Metre*, the *Iambic Metre*, etc. (b) A definite portion of a particular Verse. In Verses made up of Dactyls and Spondees, like the Hexameter and Pentameter, one Foot makes a Metre, (hence the name *Hexameter*, the *six-measure verse*, and *Pentameter*, the *five-measure verse*). But in Verses made up of Anapaests, Tribrachs, Iambics, or Trochees, a Metre consists of two feet. Hence the Iambic *senarius*, or Verse of six Feet, is called an Iambic Trimeter.

**Arsis and Thesis** (ἄρσις, θέσις). The syllable on which the Ictus or stress of the voice falls is said to be in Arsis. In Dactylic Verses the first syllable of each foot is in Arsis, the other syllable or syllables being in Thesis. A short syllable in Arsis is sometimes lengthened by the force of the Ictus, as,

Līmīnā | quē laūr | ūsquē dē | i, etc.

**Synaloepha.** Elision (or cutting off) of a final vowel before another vowel or *h* at the beginning of the following word, as, sūrg' āg' ēt, for sūrgē āgē ēt, and pōllŷēr' hōspītīŷm for pōllŷērē hōspītīŷm. Heu and O are never elided.

**Ectblipsis.** Elision of *m* and its vowel in the same way, as, mōnstr' hōrrēnd' infōrme, etc., for mōnstrŷm, hōrrēndŷm infōrme.

**Synaeresis.** Contraction of two vowels into one, as, dēindē for dēindē.

**Diaeresis.** Resolution of one vowel into two, or of a diphthong into two vowels, as, ēvōlŷissē for ēvolŷissē, aquāi for aquae.

## LAWS OF QUANTITY.

## § 185. General Rules.

(a) Monosyllables are long, as, mē, pār, ōs (*mouth*), hīc (*here*).

*Exceptions.* Words in b, d, l, and t,  
Words enclitic, -quē, -nē, -vē,  
Ēs (from sum), the Pronoun is,  
Nominatives hīc and quīs,  
Ān, cōr, ōs, nēc, fāc, and fēr,  
In, vir, cīs, pēr, bīs, and tēr.

(b) A vowel before another vowel, or before h, in the same word, is short, as mēus, prōhibēo.

*Exceptions.* (a) Many Greek words, as Aenēas; (b) diēi, aulāi, and the like; dius, cheu, ōhe, Dīana; (c) the i in fio, except before ěr, as, omnia jam fiunt, fieri quae posse negabam; (d) the i of Genitives in -ius, which is sometimes doubtful, as unius, illius, but short in alterius, utrius, long in alius, solius, totius.

(c) All diphthongs and contracted syllables are long, as aut, praeter, nil (for nihil).

*Exception.* Prae is shortened before a vowel, as praestus.

(d) A vowel before two consonants, or before j, x, z, in the same word, is long *by position*, as ventus, Ajax, rēxi, Amāzon.

*Exceptions.* Bijugus, quadrijugus.

*Note 1.* This rule applies also to final syllables ending in a Consonant, when the next word in the verse begins with a Consonant. Thus the syllables -or, -at, nec, sit in the following line are long *by position*:—

Tālis ām | ōr tēnē | āt nēc | sīt mīhī | cūrā mēd | ěrī ||.

*Note 2.* A short final vowel cannot remain short before any word beginning with sc, sm, sp, sq, st, x, or z, except smaragdus, Scamander, Xanthus, Zacynthus. Virgil has *lengthened* such a vowel once, perhaps, in the doubtful reading dātē | tēlā | scānditē | mūrōs ||, Æn. ix. 37, but this is a licence which must never be imitated. Avoid the position altogether.

(e) A vowel *short by nature* becomes doubtful before a *mute* (§ 178) when followed by *l* or *r*, rarely when followed by *m* or *n*. Thus pāter has Gen. pātris. (But a long vowel always remains long: thus, the Gen. of māter is always mātris, never māttris.)

*Exceptions.* In compound words this rule is not often observed: thus, ab and ob in āb-luo ōb-ruo, are never shortened; the re in rē-pleo, rē-primo, etc., is never lengthened.

(f) Derived words usually follow the quantity of their primitives, as perlēgo from lēgo, legēre, but ablēgo from lēgo, legāre. There are however many exceptions to this rule.

(g) Dissyllabic Perfects are long, as vīdi.

*Exceptions.* Bibi, dēdi, fidī,  
Stēti, tūli, scīdi.

(b) Dissyllabic Supines are long, as *vīsum*.

*Exceptions.*

*Dātum, ītum, lītum, quītum,  
Rātum, rūtum, sātum, sītum.*

Also *cītum* from *cieo*, *cītum* from *cio*; *stātum* from *sisto*, *stātum* from *sto*.

(j) *Pro* in composition is generally long, as *prōcedo*.

*Exceptions.* *Prōcella, prōnepos, prōpero, prōtervus*; and generally where *f* follows, as *prōficiscor, prōfundus*. But *prōfero, prōficio, prōfui*.

(k) *Re* in composition is short, as *rēfert* (from *refero*).

*Exceptions.* *Rēfert* (the Impersonal), *rēligio, rēliquiae, rēperit, rēpultit, rētulit*. (The last three are often written *repperit, reppulit, rettulit*.)

### § 186. Final Syllables.

(a) Rule for long final syllables;—

Final A, I, O, U, C,

AS, ES, OS, must lengthened be.

(1) Exceptions to *a* long are *itā, quā, ejā*, and Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative Cases (except Vocatives of Greek Nouns in *-as*).

(2) Exceptions to *i* long are *nisi, quasi*; Greek Vocatives and Datives, as *Alexi, Palladi*; and the doubtful vowels *mihi, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi*. Compounds of *ubi*, except *ubique*, are short, as *ubivis*.

(3) Exceptions to *o* long are *citō, egō, modō, quomodō, duō, homō*. The *o* of the First Person Singular of Verbs is said to be common, but except in *sciō, nesciō, volō, putō*, it is almost always found long.

(4) Exceptions to *e* long are *fāc, nēc, donēc, hīc* (the Pronoun).

(5) Exceptions to *as* long are *anās, vās (vādis)*, and most Greek Cases of the 3rd Declension in *-as*.

(6) Exceptions to *es* long are *penēs, ēs* (from *sum*) and its compounds, and *-es* of the 3rd Declension *increasing short* as *segēs*. But *ariēs, abiēs, pariēs, Cerēs, pēs* (and compounds, as, *sonīpēs*).

(7) Exceptions to *os* long are *compōs, impōs, ōs (ossis)*, and Greek words in *-os*, as *epōs*.

(b) Rule for short final syllables:—

Finals reckoned short are E,

B, D, L, R, N, and T,

IS and US; nor place deny

To words from Greek in *ŶS* and *Y*.

(1) Exceptions to *e* short are the final *e* of 5th Decl., as *diē*, and Adverbs derived therefrom, as *hodiē, quārē*; 2nd Sing. Imperative of 2nd Conj., as *monē*; Adverbs (except *benē, malē*) derived from Adjectives in *-us* and *-er*; Greek Nouns in *-η*.

(2) Exceptions to *i* short are *sāl* and *sōl*.

(3) Exceptions to *r* short are *fār, fūr, vēr, cūr, pār*, with its compounds; Greek nouns in *-ηp*.

- (4) Exceptions to *n* short are *ēn*, *nōn*, *quīn*, and Greek words in *-ην* or *-ων*.  
 (5) Exceptions to *is* short are *Dat.* and *Abl. Plural*; *-is* (for *-es*) of *Acc. Pl. 3rd Declension*; Nouns of *3rd Decl.* in *-is* *increasing long*, as *Samnis* (*itis*); *2nd Pers. Sing.* of Tenses which have *2nd Pers. Pl.* in *-itis*, as *audis*. The *2nd Sing. Fut. Perf.* and *Perf. Subj.* is doubtful, as *amaveris*.  
 (6) Exceptions to *us* short are all the cases of *4th Decl.* except *Nom.* and *Voc. Sing.*; Nouns of *3rd Decl.* in *-us* *increasing long*, as *servitūs*; Greek Nouns in *-ous*, *Lat. -us*, as *Panthūs*.

## PARSING FORMS.

### § 187. Substantive.

—— is a Substantive, from —— (*state here what it makes in the Genitive*), —— Gender, —— Number, —— Case. Account for the Case, by reference to the explanations given in the Syntax; for example, if the word be in the Genitive Case, state what kind of Genitive it is, and on what word it is dependent.

### § 188. Adjective.

—— is an Adjective of —— Terminations, from ——, —— Gender, —— Number, —— Case, agreeing with ——.

*Note.* If it be a Comparative or Superlative Adjective, state the fact, and give the Positive; thus, 'digniori is an Adjective of two Terminations, from dignior, the Comparative of dignus, etc.' If it be a Numeral or Quasi-numeral, state the fact.

### § 189. Personal or Reflexive Pronoun.

—— is a —— Pronoun, from ——, —— Gender, —— Number, —— Case. Account for the Case, as with Substantives.

### § 190. Adjectival Pronoun.

—— is a —— Pronoun, from ——, —— Gender, —— Number, —— Case, agreeing with ——. If it be a Relative Pronoun, or a Demonstrative used as a Personal Pronoun, account for the Case, as with Substantives.

### § 191. Verb.

—— is a —— Verb, from —— (*here give the chief parts of the Verb*), —— Voice, —— Mood,<sup>1</sup> —— Tense, —— Number, —— Person,<sup>2</sup> agreeing with its Nominative ——.

If an Infinitive, omit Number, Person, and Agreement.

For an Impersonal Verb, omit Person and Agreement, and after the word 'Number' add the words 'used Impersonally.'

<sup>1</sup> Account for the Mood, if a Subjunctive.

<sup>2</sup> Or —— Person, —— Number, —— Tense, —— Mood, —— Voice.

## § 192. Participle.

—— is from ——, the (*bere state the Tense and Voice*) Participle of the Verb —— (*bere give the chief parts of the Verb*), —— Gender, —— Number, —— Case, agreeing with ——.

*Note.* If a Gerundive, omit Tense and Voice. In parsing the forms *amandum est*, *monendum est*, etc., there is no agreement with any Substantive; therefore, after the word 'Case' add the words 'Neuter Gerundive Construction, implying necessity.'

## § 193. Gerund or Supine.

—— is a Gerund (*or Supine*) in ——, from the Verb —— (*give chief parts of the Ver'*), —— Case. Account for the Case.

## § 194. Particles.

(a) —— is an Adverb. (If Comparative or Superlative Degree, name the Positive). State what word it modifies.

(b) —— is a Preposition governing the —— Case.

(c) —— is a —— Conjunction, connecting —— and ——.

(d) —— is an Interjection.

§ 195. Example. *Tum senex recitavit iudicibus eam fabulam quam proximè scripserat, then the old man read out to the judges the play which he had last written.*

*Note.* This example is parsed in a shortened form to show the abbreviations which may be used.

*Tum*, Adv. of Time, modifying *recitavit*.

*senex*, Subst. f. *senex*, *senis*, Masc. Sing. Nom. being Subj. to *recitavit*.

*recitavit*, Trans. Vb. f. *recit-o*, -are, -avi, -atum, Act. Ind. Aor. 3rd Sing., agreeing with Nom. *senex*.

*iudicibus*, Subst. f. *judex*, *iudicis*, Masc. Pl. Dat. being Ind. Obj. of *recitavit*.

*eam*, Demonstr. Pron. f. *is*, *ea*, *id*, Fem. Sing. Acc. agr. w. *fabulam*.

*fabulam*, Subst. f. *fabula*, -ae, Fem. Sing. Act. being Direct Object of *recitavit*.

*quam*, Rel. Pron. f. *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, Fem. Sing. 3rd Pers. agr. w. antecedent *fabulam*; Acc. Case, being Direct Object of *scripserat*.

*proximè*, Adv. modifying *scripserat*, Superl. degree from *prope*, Comp. *propius*.

*scripserat*, Trans. Vb. f. *scribo*, *scribère*, *scripsi*, *scriptum*, Act. Ind. Plpf. 3rd Sing., agreeing with Pronoun of 3rd Pers. implied in its ending.



## SUPPLEMENTARY RULES

AND

### EXAMPLES.

§ 196. **Note on the Subjunctive.** The Subjunctive denotes actions which are *thought of as happening*, whereas the Indicative denotes those which *actually do happen*. Hence,

**Rule.** The Indicative expresses a *fact*, the Subjunctive a *conception*.

§ 197. The uses of the Subjunctive may conveniently be classified according as they occur in Principal Clauses of Oratio Recta, in Subordinate Clauses of Oratio Recta, in Principal Clauses of Oratio Obliqua, and in Subordinate Clauses of Oratio Obliqua. The use of the Mood in continuous Speeches reported in Oratio Obliqua will also have to be noticed.

#### § 198. IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES OF ORATIO RECTA.

(a) **Potential Use**, as, *dicat aliquis, Some one may say.*

**Note.** Nearly all the instances where the Subjunctive in Principal Clauses is translated by the signs, *may, might, can, could, would, should*, are to be explained as Potential. The Hypothetical and Dubitative uses, to be noticed below in (b) and (c) are mere varieties of the Potential.

(b) **Hypothetical Use**, where a Subjunctive forms the apodosis (§ 181) of a Conditional Sentence, as, *fecissem si jussisses, I should have done it, if you had ordered me.*

(c) **Dubitative Use**, found chiefly in questions, as, *quid faciam, what am I to do?*

(d) **Optative Use** (often introduced by *utinam*), as, *moriar, may I die! utinam mortuus essem, would that I had died!*

(e) **Jussive, Hortative, or Imperative Use**, as, *abeat, let him begone; ne dixeris, don't say so.*

#### § 199. IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES OF ORATIO RECTA.

Subordinate Clauses are introduced either by the Relative, *qui, quae, quod*, or by Conjunctions. The Mood in such Clauses is *not always Subjunctive*, but when it is, it is usually explained grammatically as being *governed* by the Relative or Conjunction, though the expression is not strictly correct, the real reason for the Mood being that it refers to a *supposed case* rather



than an *actual fact*, e. g. *Paetus omnes libros, quos frater suus reliquisset, mihi donavit, Paetus has given me all the books which his brother left him*, i. e. which his brother, as he believed, had left. (For a more complete account of the Relative in its simple sense of *who* or *which* followed by a Subjunctive see Madvig §§ 368, 369.) Of Subordinate Clauses introduced by Conjunctions, the chief kinds are,

(a) **Final** (indicating a *purpose*), expressed in English by *that* or *in order that, lest*, and in Latin by *ut, that, nē, lest, quo* (before Comparatives), *that, qui*=*ut*, and *quominus, quin, in order that . . . not*.

(b) **Consecutive** (indicating a *result*), expressed in English by *that*, after a preceding *so* or *such*, and in Latin by *ut* after *talis, tam*, etc.; also by *quin, so that . . . not*, and *qui*=*talis ut*.

(c) **Temporal** (indicating *time*), expressed in English by *when*, etc., and in Latin by *quum, ut, ubi*, and other Temporal Conjunctions already mentioned in § 84.

(d) **Causal**, expressed in English by *since, as, or because*, and in Latin by *quum, quia, quod*, and other Causal Conjunctions mentioned in § 84.

(e) **Conditional**, expressed in English by *if* or *unless*, and in Latin by *si, nisi*, and other Conditional Conjunctions mentioned in § 84.

(f) **Concessive**, expressed in English by *although*, and in Latin by *etsi, quanquam*, etc. See § 84.

(g) **Comparative**, expressed in English by *as if* or *as though*, and in Latin by *tanquam, quasi*, etc. See § 84.

#### § 200. IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES OF ORATIO OBLIQUA.

(a) **Oblique Statement.** A simple Statement, as *voluit, he wished*, becomes Oblique when it forms the Object of a Verb, as *dicat se voluisse, he says that he wished*, or the Subject of a Verb, as *constat eum voluisse, it is well known that he wished*, i. e. that he wished (Subject) is well known (Verb). Here the Infinitive is used. But sometimes we find *ut* with Subjunctive, as *accidit ut vellet, it happened that he wished*. Hence

**Rule.** *The Principal Clauses in Oblique Statement are the Subjects of Impersonal Verbs or the Objects of Verbs of declaring, knowing, perceiving, thinking, or believing, and are usually expressed by the Infinitive, but occasionally by ut with Subjunctive after certain Impersonals, e. g.*

*Restat, abest, accidit,  
Evēnit, contingit, fit,  
Licet, sequitur, and est,  
Placet, refert, interest.*

(b) **Oblique Question.** Questions, as, *ridesnē are you laughing?* *quid rides, what are you laughing at?* become Oblique when they form the Object of a Verb, as, *rideasnē scire volumus, we want to know whether you are laughing*, or the Subject of a Verb, as, *quid rideas dictu difficile est, it is difficult to say what you are laughing at*.

**Rule.** *All Clauses introduced by an Interrogative Pronoun or Particle (§ 60, p. 75) must have their Verb in the Subjunctive if they form the Subject or Object of a Verb.*

**Note.** This Rule will require some modification when we come to the rule respecting whole Speeches reported in *Oratio Obliqua* (see § 202).

(c) **Oblique Command.** Properly speaking the only instances of Oblique Command are those which occur in a whole Speech reported in *Oratio Obliqua*, where they are always put in the Subjunctive, as will be seen below, § 202. It is convenient however to include under this head Clauses introduced by *ut* or *ne* which follow Verbs expressing such ideas as

To ask or wish, command, contrive,

Allow, forbid, advise, and strive ;

as, *imperavi tibi ut hoc faceres, I commanded you to do this; suasi tibi ne hoc faceres, I advised you not to do this.* [See § 301.]

#### § 201. IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES OF ORATIO OBLIQUA.

**Rule.** A Subordinate Clause in *Oratio Obliqua*, whether belonging to an Oblique Statement, Question, or Command, must under all circumstances be put in the Subjunctive.

**Note.** Such sentences as, *nuntiant Belgas, qui cis Rhenum incolunt, in armis esse*, are no exception to this rule. The clause '*qui cis Rhenum incolunt*' formed no part of the speaker's original words, and does not therefore belong to the Oblique Sentence, but is added by the author for the information of his readers.

#### § 202. SPEECHES REPORTED IN ORATIO OBLIQUA.

A whole Speech containing Statements, Questions, and Commands intermingled is sometimes reported Obliquely, being dependent on the words *dixit, dicit*, or their equivalents expressed or understood.

**Rule for Speeches in Oratio Obliqua.** The Statements are put in the Infinitive; the Questions, if of the First or Third Person, are also in the Infinitive, but if of the Second Person they are usually in the Subjunctive; the Commands are put in the Subjunctive; and, lastly, all Subordinate Clauses must be Subjunctive.

Example :—

**Direct.** Deinde dux, 'Arcem hostium,' exclamavit, 'statim expugnare mihi in animo est. Quis mecum erit, comites? Expectatisne donec hostes ultro arma tradant? Utrum dux an servus vester sum? Expergiscoimini, festinate, arma parate, ne occasionem, quam nunc fors obtulit, belli cunctiendi amittamus!'

**Oblique.** Deinde dux exclamavit, Sibi esse in animo arcem hostium statim expugnare. Quem comitum secum fore? Expectarentne donec hostes ultro arma traderent? Utrum ducem eorum an servum sese esse?

Thereupon the general exclaimed, 'I purpose storming the enemy's citadel immediately. Who will go with me, comrades? Are you waiting until the enemy voluntarily give up their arms? Am I your general or your slave? Wake up! Make haste! Get ready your arms, lest we lose the opportunity which chance has now presented of finishing the war!'

Thereupon the general exclaimed that he purposed storming the enemy's citadel immediately. Which of his comrades would go with him? Were they waiting until the enemy voluntarily gave up their arms? Was he their general or their slave?

*Expergiscerentur, festinarent, arma pararent, ne occasionem quam nunc fors obtulisset, belli conficiendi amitterent.*

*They must wake up, make haste, and get ready their arms, lest they should lose the opportunity which chance had now presented of finishing the war.*

*Note.* The Subjunctive Mood is sometimes distinguished as *Conjunctive* when it occurs in Principal Clauses of *Oratio Recta*, *Subjunctive* when it occurs in Subordinate or *Oblique Sentences*.

§ 203. The Subjunctive is also used in Causal and Relative Sentences to denote an *alleged* reason or act, as, *Laudat Panaetius Africanum, quod fuerit abstinens*, 'Panaetius praises Africanus because, *as he says*, he was self-restraining.' *Fuit* for *fuerit* would mean 'because he *actually was* self-restraining,' without implying that Panaetius said so. So, *injuria quae tibi facta est*, 'the injury which *has been done you*,' but *injuria quae tibi facta sit*, 'the injury which *you say has been done you*,' Cic. in *Caecil.* 58.

§ 204. **Additional Notes on the Sequence of Tenses.** The general rule for Sequence of Tenses, as stated in § 148, is that Primary Tenses are followed by Primary, and Historic by Historic.

*Note.* The Rule here given applies equally to both Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods. Remember that what is called the Present Infinitive, as *amare*, is both Present and *Imperfect*, and that what is called the Perfect Infinitive, as *amavisse*, is both Perfect and *Pluperfect*. Note the following examples of Infinitive:—

*ait se verum dicere, He says that he is speaking the truth.*

*ait se verum dixisse, He says that he spoke, or has spoken, the truth.*

*aiebat se verum dicere, He said that he spoke, or was speaking, the truth.*

*aiebat se verum dixisse, He said that he had spoken the truth.*

§ 205. The difficulty which most troubles beginners in the rule for Sequence of Tenses is the translation of an English Aorist when requiring to be put into the Subjunctive or Infinitive Mood in Latin. The following rule may be followed in most cases:

*After a Primary Tense the Aorist is translated by a Perfect Subjunctive or Infinitive, as,*

*nescio an verum dixerit, I know not whether he spoke the truth.*

*ait se verum dixisse, He says that he spoke the truth.*

*After a Historic Tense the Aorist is translated by an Imperfect Subjunctive or Infinitive, as,*

*nesciebam an verum diceret, I knew not whether he spoke the truth.*

*aiebat se verum dicere, He said that he spoke the truth.*

§ 206. Often however the rule given in § 205 will not apply; e.g.

(a) By a laxity in English usage the Aorist is often used where a Pluperfect ought to stand. Thus, we find such sentences as 'A said that B told him so and so,' where *told* of course means *had told*. In all such cases, where the action takes place *before* that of the governing verb, a Pluperfect must be used after a Historic Tense.

(b) The Latins often preferred to represent Aorist Time by a Perfect Subjunctive rather than an Imperfect after Historic Tenses: this usage, where it occurs, is intended perhaps to mark the occurrence of an *actual*

*fact* rather than a supposed case. It is especially frequent after ut Consecutive; thus, '*he was so prudent that he avoided these things*' might be translated tam prudens erat ut haec vitaret, or tam prudens erat ut haec vitaverit; the former would mean '*he was so prudent as to avoid*,' &c., the latter '*he was so prudent that he did actually avoid*.'

(c) A Pluperfect is often used in Subordinate Clauses of Oratio Obliqua, where an Imperfect would stand if it were Oratio Recta; thus, si flumen transiret, hostem vinceret, *if he crossed the river he would conquer the enemy*, becomes, in the Oblique form, putavit se, si flumen transiisset, hostem esse victurum.

§ 207. Cicero constantly uses an Imperfect Subjunctive after a Perfect Indicative. Thus in 1 Verr. i. 3 he says, huic ego causae actor accessi non ut augerem invidiam ordinis, sed ut infamiae communi succurrerem, *I have come forward as prosecutor in this case, not to increase the unpopularity of your order but to retrieve the ill-repute we suffer from in common*.

§ 208. After a Historic Present, i.e. a Present used for an Aorist, like our '*says he*' for '*said he*,' the Tenses in Subordinate or Dependent Sentences sometimes follow the *rule*, sometimes the *sense*, as, '*though a so great a defeat had been sustained, the general nevertheless exhorts the soldiers not to lose heart*,' quum tanta clades esset accepta, dux tamen milites hortatur ne animo deficiat or deficerent.

---

\*\*\* The following Examples, as far as § 290, follow the order of the Rules of Syntax, pp. 84-104, which they are intended both to illustrate and supplement. The numbering of the paragraphs is made with a view to facilitating reference, and has nothing to do with the Syntax Rules.

Phrases and words requiring special notice in the Examples are printed in italics without any reference being necessarily intended to the particular rule of Syntax which the example illustrates.

### The Three Concords.

(See § 95, *a* and *b*.)

- |                                                      |                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| § 209. The Gauls are attacking the city.             | Galli urbem oppugnant.                                    |
| They announce that the Gauls are attacking the city. | Gallos urbem oppugnare nuntiant. (See § 112.)             |
| I know not why the Gauls are attacking the city.     | Cur Galli urbem oppugnent nescio. (See § 200, <i>b</i> .) |
| § 210. What sort of man is Milo?                     | Qualis est Milo?                                          |
| I know not what sort of man Milo is.                 | Nescio qualis sit Milo.                                   |

I *know not* what sort of man Milo *was*.

I *knew not* what sort of man Milo *was*.

§ 211. He is happy.

He says that he is happy.

She says that she is happy.

He *says that he is not* happy.

They say that he *was* happy.

\* They *said that he was not* happy.

Brutus pretended to be mad.

§ 212. Caesar will come.

It is well known that Caesar will come.

They said that Caesar would come.

Caesar hopes to come.

Caesar promised to come.

§ 213. Is he wise or foolish?

We wish to know whether he is wise or foolish.

We *wish* to know whether he *was* wise or foolish.

We *wished* to know whether he *was* wise or foolish.

§ 214. Marcus has returned.

Marcus *has been* persuaded [or, *is* persuaded, § 376] to return.

Marcus *was* persuaded to return.

Marcus was persuaded *not* to return.

§ 215. The soldiers had taken the town.

We asked whether the soldiers had taken the town.

§ 216. Part load the tables with food.

Part seek the seeds of flame.

Nescio qualis *fu*erit Milo. (See § 205.)

Nescivi qualis *es*set Milo. (See § 205.)

Beatus est.

Ait se beatum esse.

Ait se beatum esse.

Negat se beatum esse.

Aiunt eum beatum *fuisse*.

Negârunt eum beatum *esse* (or *fuisse* by § 206 a).

Brutus *se* furere simulabat.

Caesar veniet.

Caesarem venturum esse constat.

Caesarem venturum esse dicebant.

Caesar se venturum esse sperat.

Caesar se venturum (§ 382) pollicitus est.

Utrum sapiens an stultus est?

Scire volumus utrum sapiens an stultus sit.

Scire volumus utrum sapiens an stultus *fu*erit (§ 205).

Scire volumus utrum sapiens an stultus *es*set (§ 205).

Marcus rediit.

Marco persuasum est ut *redeat* (§§ 200, c, and 205).

Marco persuasum est ut *re*diret (§§ 200, c, and 205).

Marco persuasum est *ne* rediret.

Milites oppidum ceperant.

Militesnē oppidum cepissent quaesivimus.

Pars epulis onerant mensas.

Quaerit pars semina flammae.

Rule. A Noun of Multitude in the Singular Number may have either a Singular or (by *constructio ad sensum*, § 183) a Plural Verb.

§ 217. Caesar and Crassus will soon be at the gates.

*They informed me that Caesar and Crassus would soon be at the gates.*

Caesar et Crassus mox ad portas erunt.

*Me certiore fecerunt Caesarem et Crassum mox ad portas futuros esse.*

**Rule.** When the Subject is Composite, that is, formed of two or more Nouns united by Conjunctions, the Verb is usually Plural, as above. But,

**Note 1.** If the Composite Subject denote a *Singular idea*, it takes a Singular Verb, as, *senatus populusque Romanus hoc decrevit.*

**Note 2.** If the Conjunctions be Disjunctive, as, *nec—nec, utrum—an, sive—sive, vel—vel, aut—aut*, etc., the Verb usually follows the Number and Person of the *nearest Noun*, as, *nec Caesar nec legati hoc fecerunt; nec legati nec vos hoc fecistis.*

§ 218. Both *you and I* were happy.

*Et ego et tu beati fuimus.*

They say that both you and I were happy.

*Et me et te beatos fuisse ferunt.*

You and Marcus will be accused.

*Tu et Marcus accusabimini.*

We believe that you and Marcus will be accused.

*Te et Marcum accusatum iri credimus.*

**Rule.** If the *Persons* in a Composite Subject are different, the Verb follows the *prior Person*; the First Person being considered prior to the Second, and the Second to the Third.

**Note.** There is often a tendency, however, to make the Verb agree with the Noun *nearest* to it, as, *ego et Cicero meus flagitabit.* In such cases the Verb is said to be *attracted* to the Person of the nearest Noun.

§ 219. The king and queen are dead.

*Rex et regina mortui sunt.*

Fire, water, and iron are very useful.

*Ignis, aqua, ferrum sunt utilis-sima.*

**Rule.** If the *Genders* in a Composite Subject are different, the rules for Adjective in Agreement are as follows:—

(1) If the Nouns are names of *living things*, the Adjective is put in the Plural and follows the *worthier Gender*; the Masculine being considered *worthier* than the Feminine, and the Feminine *worthier* than the Neuter.

(2) If the Nouns are names of *things not living*, the Adjective is put in the Neuter Plural.

**Note.** Here again, however, is to be noticed the tendency to *attract* the Adjective into agreement with the *nearest Noun*, as, *animus et consilium et sententia civitatis posita est in legibus, the spirit and purpose and feeling of a nation is expressed in its laws.*

§ 220. The chiefs of the conspiracy were whipped and be-headed.

*Capita conjurationis virgis caesi ac securi percussi sunt.*

**Note.** A *constructio ad sensum* (§ 183), *caesi* and *percussi* agreeing with the notion of *men* implied in *capita*.

- § 221. The quarrels of lovers are the renewal of love. Amantium irae amoris integratio est.

*Note.* Est is here *attracted* to the Number of the nearest Noun. Cf. 'Words to the heat of deeds too cold breath gives.' Macbeth, act ii. sc. i. (See § 95, c.)

- § 222. They cut down the tree which grew in our garden. Arborem, quae in horto nostro crescebat, succiderunt.  
The tree which I loved so much has been cut down. Arbor, quam tantopere diligebam, succisa est.  
The army which Hannibal brought with him was small. Exercitus, quem Hannibal secum duxit, exiguus erat.

*Rule.* The Preposition cum, when used with the Personal Pronouns, and sometimes when used with the Relative, is enclitic (§ 179), as, mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quocum, quibuscum.

- It is said that Scipio commanded the army which overcame Hannibal. Exercitui, qui Hannibalem superavit, Scipio praefuisse dicitur (§ 231).  
We, who are in the country, send these presents to you, who are in the city. Nos, qui ruri sumus, haec munera ad vos, qui in urbe estis, mittimus.  
*You and I*, who have so long been enemies, have at length laid aside our enmity. *Ego et tu*, qui tamdiu inimici fuimus, inimicitias tandem deposuimus.

- § 223. I will punish him who does this. Qui hoc fecerit, in eum animadvertam (§ 298).

*Rule.* Avoid ille qui. When *is* is antecedent to qui, it is often either omitted altogether, or placed in the *following* clause, as above.

- § 224. Here am I who did it. Adsum qui feci.  
Here am I whom ye seek. Adsum quem quaeritis.

In these examples the antecedent ego is contained in the Verb adsum.

- § 225. All men praised my good fortune in having such a son. Omnes laudare fortunas meas qui talem natum haberem.

Here the Antecedent is contained in the Possessive Pronoun meas, which = *mei*, of *me*. For the Historic Infinitive laudare see § 276, and for the Subjunctive, haberem, see § 282.

- § 226. I came in time, which is the most important of all things. In tempore veni, quod rerum omnium est primum.

Here the Antecedent is the sentence 'in tempore veni.'

- § 227. Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia. Thebae, quod Boeotiae caput est.

The Relative here is *attracted* into agreement in Number and Gender with the Appositional Noun in its clause. Sometimes, though rarely,



the Relative is attracted into the Case of its Antecedent, in imitation of the Greek, as, *judice, quo nōsti, populo, and, rebus, quibus quisque poterat, elatis. Inverse Attraction*, confined chiefly to poetry, is where the Antecedent is attracted into the Case of the Relative, as, *urbem, quam statuo, vestra est, the city which I am founding is yours.*

§ 228. A boy whose name was Puer cui Servio Tullio nomen  
Servius Tullius. fuit.

Here Servio Tullio, which should be Nominative in Apposition to nomen, is attracted into the Case of cui.

§ 229. Osiris was the first who Osiris primus aratra fecit.  
made ploughs.

It is uncertain whether Osiris Osirisne an Triptōlēmus primus  
or Triptolemus was the first aratra fecerit incertum est.  
who made ploughs.

He gave me the most beautiful Flores, quos habuit pulcherri-  
flowers he had. mos, mihi dedit.

Lucullus was the richest person Eorum qui tum Romae habita-  
who was then living at Rome. bant Lucullus ditissimus erat.

*Note.* Neither Ordinal Numerals nor Superlatives contain the Antecedent to the Relative in Latin, as they appear to do in English. 'Osiris primus erat qui aratra fecit' would mean, *Osiris, who made ploughs, was the first man*, without denoting in what respect he was 'first,' and by no means implying that it was in the making of ploughs. After Superlatives, some rendering similar to that given in the last two of the above examples must be adopted. 'Flores pulcherrimos, quos habuit' would simply mean, *very beautiful flowers, which he had*; and 'Lucullus ditissimus erat qui tum Romae habitabat' would mean, *Lucullus, who was then living at Rome, was a very rich person.* (For 'he sent back all the books he had' say 'libros, quos habuit, remisit omnes,' rather than 'omnes libros, quos habuit, remisit'.)

### Copulative Verbs and Apposition.

(See §§ 96-100.)

§ 230. Hector was son of Priam, Priāmi, regis Trojāni, Hector  
the Trojan king. filius fuit.

The poets say that Hector Priāmi, regis Trojani, Hectō-  
was son of Priam, the Trojan rem filium fuisse tradunt  
king. poetæ.

§ 231. It is said that Galba was Galba doctus fuisse dicitur.  
learned.

It has been related that Galba Galbam doctum fuisse traditum  
was learned. est.

*Note.* Do not say *Galbam doctum fuisse dicitur*. The Copulative Verbs (§ 96) prefer a Personal to an Impersonal construction, except in the Tenses compounded with the Perfect Participle. See Madvig, § 400.



§ 232. The town was called Corioli.

They called the town Corioli. He marched towards Capua, a city which had lately revolted.

Oppidum Corioli vocatum est (or vocati sunt, *by attraction*).

Oppidum Coriolos vocârunt. Ad Capuam flexit iter, quae urbs (not urbem quae) nuper defecerat.

**Rule.** An Appositive Noun having a Relative Clause immediately dependent on it, as in the last of the above examples, is sometimes *attracted* into the Case of the Relative. So, the phrase 'a thing which' is always quae res, quam rem, etc.

§ 233. I wish to be made consul.

It is a glorious thing to be made consul.

Consul fieri cupio (*rarely*, me consulem fieri cupio).

Consulem fieri magnificum est.

**Note.** In the last example consulem, being a mere complement of fieri, follows the case of the unexpressed Subject of that Verb, viz. the Accusative (§ 89, footnote 2).

§ 234. I am not permitted to be neglectful.

Mihi non licet esse negligent.

**Note.** Mihi non licet esse negligentem is also correct Latin, negligentem agreeing with 'me' understood. If no Dative after licet is expressed, the Accusative is generally used, as, medios esse non licebit. Madvig. 393, c. Obs. 3.

### Time, Place, and Measure.

(See §§ 101-107.)

§ 235. Priam reigned many years. He is twenty years old.

§ 236. Caesar was killed on the Ides of March in the year 44 before Christ.

Priamus multos annos regnavit. Viginti annos natus est.

Caesar Idibus Martiis, anno ante Christum natum quadragésimo quarto, interfectus est.

**Note 1.** This Ablative is used to express (1) *at what time*, as above, (2) *within what time*, as, paucis diebus proficiscar, *I shall set out in a few days*, (3) *how long ago, before, or after*, as, abhinc tribus annis, *three years ago*, multis ante (or post) annis, *many years before (or after)*.

**Note 2.** To find the Roman way of expressing the above date, subtract 44 from 753, the supposed date of the founding of Rome, and write, anno urbis conditae septingentesimo nono, *in the 709th year of the founding of the city*.

**Note 3.** For the use of Prepositions in defining time, see notes on de, ex, in, sub, &c., §§ 318-363.

§ 237. Having sailed thence to Greece I returned to my home in Italy in twenty days.

Inde ad Graeciam advectus viginti diebus domum meam in Italiam redii.

**Note.** Ad with the Accusative of towns and small islands means *towards, in the direction of*, as, ad Brundisium flexit iter.

- § 238. Dionysius *when* expelled from Syracuse taught boys at Corinth in Greece.      Dionysius Syracusis expulsus pueros in Graecia Corinthi docuit.
- The ambassadors returned from Carthage in Africa.      Legati Carthagine ex Africā redierunt.

*Note.* Ab or ex with towns or small islands denotes either *from the interior of* or *from the neighbourhood of*, as, ex Cypro discessit; Caesar a Gergovia discessit. Ab is used with expressions of *measure*, as, tria millia passuum a Roma abesse.

- § 239. *When* at Rome I love Tibur, *when* at Tibur Rome.      Romae Tibur, Tibure Romam amo.
- Horatius said that when at Rome he loved Tiber, when at Tibur Rome.      Horatius dixit se Romae Tibur, Tibure Romam amare.

### Accusative Case.

(See § 110, a, b.)

- § 240. To play an insolent game.      Ludum insolentem ludere.

*Note.* Pure Cognate Accusatives as ludere ludum, ridere risum, etc., are rare. It is more common to find an Accusative added to Intransitive Verbs to denote some *special part* of the whole action of the Verb, as, ludere aleam, *to play hazard*, i.e. ludere ludum aleae. So, pluere sanguinem, *to rain blood*; lampadem olere, *to smell of the lamp*; mella sapere, *to have the taste of honey*, etc.

- § 241. The Suevi do not subsist much upon corn, but chiefly upon milk and cattle.      Suevi non multum frumento sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt.

*Note.* The Accusative of Limitation, as, maximam partem in the above example, is allied to the Cognate usage. It is immaterial whether we call multum here an Accusative of Limitation or a Neuter Adjective used Adverbially.

(See § 110, c.)

- § 242. Like unto a God in countenance and shoulders.      Os humerosque deo similis.
- § 243. Having his temples crowned with bay.      Redimītus tempora lauro.

*Note.* The Accusatives here and in similar instances, many of which occur in Virgil, as perque pedes trajectus lora tumentes, *having thongs passed through his swelling feet*, inutile ferrum cingitur, *he girds on his useless sword*, etc., are not Accusatives of Respect, but are the Direct Object of the Verb or Participle, which is to be regarded either as retaining its Transitive force in the Passive Voice, or as being Reflexive.

(See § 114.)

§ 244. Ask favour of the gods. Posce deos veniam.

*Note.* The Verbs of *asking* that take a double Accusative are posco, flagito, oro, rogo, interrogo. Peto, precor, postulo, quaero, sciscitor, prefer an Ablative of the *person* with *ab* or *ex*.

§ 245. My mother taught me Mater mea me literas docuit.  
my letters.I remember that my mother Matrem meam me literas do-  
taught me my letters. cēre meminī.

*Note.* The construction of meminī with Present instead of Perfect Infinitive is to be noticed.

§ 246. Do not conceal these Haec nē patrem tuum cela-  
things from your father. veris.

Or, haec patrem tuum celare noli. But do not, in writing Prose, put nē celes, or nē cela. See § 378.

## Dative Case.

(See §§ 116 and 117, a.)

§ 247. He owed his life to me. Vitam mihi acceptam rētulit.  
They appoint a day for the trial T. Menenio diem dicunt.  
of Titus Menenius.To be angry *with* any one. Irasci (or succensēre) alicui.  
If you consult *me* I will consult Si me consulueris, ego tibi con-  
*your interests*. sūlam (§ 298).

What have I to do with you? Quid mihi tecum?

A shout ascends to heaven. It clamor caelo.

*Note.* Caelo is Dative of *motion to*, for ad caelum; a poetical usage.

§ 248. This is common to me Hoc mihi tecum commune est.  
and you.This is common to all living Commune animantium om-  
creatures. nium hoc est.

That was peculiar to Tiberius. Id Tiberio proprium fuit.

This is a vice peculiar to old Hoc proprium senectutis vitium  
age. est.

He is like his father. Patri suo similis est.

Do you think you are like me? An tu mei similem esse putas?

*Rule.* Communis, proprius, and similis may take either a Dative or a Genitive. So also affinis, *connected with*, alienus, *unsuitable*, par, *equal*, sacer, *consecrated to*, superstes, *surviving*.

(See § 117, c.)

§ 249. I have a brother. Est mihi frater.

*Note.* The Dative after sum, rendered in English by the Verb *to have*, is a Dative of the Possessor.

(See § 117, d.)

§ 250. He took the young man *Extractum custodiae juvenem*  
*from* confinement and set him *ducem populo imposuit.* [See  
 as leader over the people. § 315, b.]

*Note on custodiae.* The Verbs denoting *separation* or *difference* which take a Dative (translated by *from*), where we should have expected an Ablative of Separation, or Ablative with Preposition, are mostly those compounded with *ab*, *ad*, *de*, *dis*-, and *ex*, as, *aufero*, *adimo*, *detraho*, *différo*, *dissentio*, *disto*, *eximo*. The poets extend the usage to other Verbs, as, *huic atro liquuntur sanguine guttae*, *from it there flow drops of black blood.*

(See § 117, f, g.)

§ 251. To be able to pay one's *Solvendo esse.*  
 debts  
 To be able to bear the burden. *Onëri ferendo esse.*  
 To sound a retreat. *Receptui canëre.*

§ 252. These things are a sub- *Haec curae sunt nobis.*  
 ject of anxiety to us.  
 He is sent to the assistance of *Exercitui auxilio mittitur.*  
 the army

*Note.* The Predicative Dative may take a Dative of the Indirect Object after it, as *nobis* and *exercitui* in the above examples. This is sometimes called the Double Dative Construction.

§ 253. Whom did it benefit? *Cui bono fuit?*

*Note.* With the exception of *bonus*, only Adjectives of *quantity*, as *magnus*, *quantus*, *tantus*, etc., are used with the Predicative Dative. Hence *cui* in the above example is an Indirect Object, not an Adjective in agreement with *bono*.

§ 254. Cassandra the prophetess *Cassandrae vati nunquam cre-*  
 was never believed. *dïtum est (§ 119).*  
 It is well known that Cassandra *Cassandrae vati nunquam cre-*  
 the prophetess was never be- *ditum esse constat.*  
 lieved.

### Ablative Case.

(See §§ 120, 121.)

§ 255. He joined battle with *Proelium cum hostibus loco*  
 the enemy in a favourable *opportuno commisit.*  
 position.

*Note.* Except in the case of towns and small islands, almost the only Ablatives of *Place where* used in Prose are *loco*, *locis*, *dextrâ*, *laevâ*, *medio*, *terrâ* *marique*, and Nouns in the Ablative having *totus* or *medius* in agreement (Roby's Lat. Gr. § 1170). Hence the English *in* when used of *place* should usually be expressed in Latin by the Preposition *in* with Ablative. In Poetry this Ablative is very frequent with all sorts of Nouns.

- § 256. Sulla resigned the dictatorship. Sullā dictaturā se abdicavit.  
(See § 121, *a*.)  
Rich in lands, rich in money Dives agris, dives positis in fae-  
put out at interest. nore nummis (§ 121, *f*).  
Sprung from noble blood. Nobili sanguine ortus.

*Note.* Creatus, cretus, editus, genitus, natus, oriundus, and satus, all meaning *born of* or *descended from*, usually take a simple Ablative of Origin (§ 121, *b*), though a Preposition is occasionally found.

- § 257. Caesar was more fortunate than Crassus. Cæsar felicior Crasso erat.  
(See § 121, *c*.)  
I think death easier than disgrace. Puto mortem dedecore levio-  
rem.  
They live more on corn than on meat. Frumento magis quam carne  
vivunt (§ 121, *b*).

**Rule.** The Ablative of Comparison is used (1) for *quam* with Nominative, as *felicior Crasso* for *felicior quam Crassus*, (2) for *quam* with Accusative, as *dedecore levio*rem, for *levio*rem *quam dedecus*, *but not for quam wi'h any other Case*. Thus we could not say '*frumento magis carne vivunt*' for *they live more on corn than on meat*.

- § 258. You will be of as much value to others as you *are* to yourself. Tanti eris aliis quanti tibi  
fuëris (§ 298).

*Note.* The forms usually called Genitives of Value are *tanti*, *quant*i, *magni*, *parvi* (with their Comparative Degrees and Compounds, as *maximi*, *quantumque*, &c.), *nihili*, *floc*ci, *nauci*, *pili*, *terunci*, *assis*, *hujus*, *pluris*, *minoris*. Mr. Roby (Lat. Gr. §§ 1186, 1187) calls them Locatives, and thinks the forms *assis*, *pluris*, &c., are due to false analogy. The phrase *boni consulere*, *to make the best of*, belongs probably to this usage.

- § 259. Why should I not exchange toil for rest? Cur non laborem otio permutem? (§ 121, *d*).

**Rule.** *Mutare* and its compounds signify (1) to give in exchange, (2) to take in exchange. The thing given or taken is in the Accusative, and the thing for which it is exchanged is in the Ablative. Hence the above example *might* mean, '*Why should I not take toil in exchange for rest?*' i. e. change rest for toil. The meaning to be assigned in any particular passage can only be determined by the context.

- § 260. The richer he is, the more covetous he becomes. Quo divitior eo cupidior fit.  
(See § 121, *g*, and also § 373.)  
The more he studies the more he learns. Quo magis literis studet, eo  
plus discit.  
He says that the more *he* studies Ait se, quo magis literis studeat,  
the more he learns. eo plus discere.

They say that the more *he* studied the more *he* learnt. Ferunt eum, quo magis literis studeret, eo plus didicisse.

*Note 1.* The *quo* Clause is subordinate to the *eo* Clause, and its Verb therefore takes its time from the Aorist didicisse. Studuisset for studeret would not be inadmissible (§ 206, c). For *se* and *eum* see § 291.

*Note 2.* Magis, *more in degree*; plus, *more in quantity*.

§ 261. The sun is many times greater than the earth. Sol multis partibus major est quam terra (§ 121, g).  
The city was *the* more easily taken because, &c. Eo facilius capta est urbs, quod, &c.  
Half as big again. Dimidio major.

(See § 123.)

§ 262. *Having taken the city* Urbe captā, Caesar ex Galliā Caesar departed from Gaul. discessit.  
Christ was born *when Augustus* Imperante Augusto natus est *was Emperor*. Christus.  
I did this *because my father* Haec, patre et matre jubentibus, feci.  
*and mother ordered me*.  
If you *appease the gods*, you will Dis placatis, periculum vitabis.  
*escape the danger*.  
He *left home* and set out for Domo relictā in Italiam profectus est.  
Italy.  
In the consulship of Gnaeus Gn. Pompeio M. Crasso consulibus, and Marcus Crassus.

Notice the above varieties in the translation of the Ablative Absolute. The word Absolute means independent, and the name is given to this construction because it is independent of the rest of the Sentence. It should be rendered by a Clause or Phrase, as shown above: a literal translation usually makes rather poor English.

(See § 126.)

§ 263. Now is there need of Nunc animis opus, Aenea, nunc courage, O Aeneas; now is viribus usus.  
there demand for strength.  
Aeneas perceived that now there Nunc animis opus esse nunc was need of courage, now a viribus usum sensit Aeneas.  
demand for strength.  
There is need of haste. Properato opus est.  
'Why is there need of haste?' 'Cur,' inquit, 'properato opus said he. est?'

*Rule.* Opus, *need*, is used (1) with Ablative of a Substantive, as animis, (2) with a Perf. Pass. Part. used Substantively, as properato, (3) in Apposition to a noun in the Nominative, as dux nobis opus est, *we have need of a leader*, (4) with an Infinitive Clause, as, non opus est id scire or id sciri, *it is not needful to know that*, or *that that should be known*. Usus is constructed similarly, but is less often found.

## Genitive Case.

(See §§ 127-131.)

§ 264. My care for you.      Mea cura tui.  
Your care for me.      Tua cura mei.

**Rule.** Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostrum (Gen. Pl.), and vestrum (Gen. Pl.) are used Subjectively; mei, tui, sui, nostri (Gen. Pl.), and vestri (Gen. Pl.) Objectively. The Genitives nostrum and vestrum are only used after Partitive words, as *uterque nostrum*, *each of us*.

§ 265. He was eager for praise.      Avidus erat laudis.  
Greedy of other men's wealth,      Alieni appetens, sui profusus.  
lavish of his own.  
Rich in horses, rich in embroi-      Dives equum, dives pictai vestis  
dered raiment and gold.      et auri.

*Note 1.* Equum for equorum; pictai, old Latin for pictae.

*Note 2.* The Adjectives that take an Objective Genitive, are (1) those denoting some active state of the feelings or mind, as *avidus*, *cupidus*, *memor*, *peritus*, &c., (2) Verbals in -ax, as *Tempus edax rerum*, (3) Adjectives denoting *fulness* or *want*, as *dives*, *plenus*, *expers*, *pauper*. The last two usages belong chiefly to poetry.

§ 266. The kingly government      Regium imperium conservandae  
was designed for the preser-      libertatis fuit.  
vation of liberty.

This rare form may perhaps be a Genitive of Definition. Madvig (417, obs. 4) calls it a Genitive of Purpose.

§ 267. Where in the world?      Ubi gentium?  
He arrived at such a pitch of      Eo stultitiae venit, ut &c.  
folly that, &c.

*Note 1.* Genitives dependent on Adverbs of Place, as *quo*, *eo*, *ubi*, &c., or of time, as, *nunc*, *tunc*, &c., are best referred to the head of Partition.

*Note 2.* Partitive Adjectives commonly take the Gender of their dependent Genitive, as, *una mulierum*, *one of the women* (*una ex mulieribus* would also be good Latin), unless they are in apposition to some previous Noun, as, *Indus, omnium fluminum maximus, the Indus, greatest of all rivers*.

§ 268. Desist from wrath.      Abstineto irarum.

So, *desine querelarum*, and *laborum decipitur*, occurring in Horace. These are mere Graecisms, and must not be imitated in prose.

## The Impersonal Verbs.

(See §§ 132, 133.)

§ 269. I ought to set out.      Me proficisci oportet.  
I ought to have set out.      Me proficisci oportuit.  
'Do you think,' replied the      'Putasně,' inquit imperator,  
general, 'that I ought to have      'me hoc facere oportuisse?'  
done this?'



§ 270. I pity your folly.  
 You repent of your faults.  
 He was ashamed of his poverty.  
 We are ashamed to do this.  
 They repent of having done this.  
 How happens it that no one  
 lives contented with his lot?

Me stultitiae tuae miseret.  
 Te culparum paenitet.  
 Paupertatis eum pudebat.  
 Nos hoc facere pudet.  
 Eos hoc fecisse paenitet.  
 Quis fit ut nemo contentus sorte  
 vivat?

§ 271. It is your interest that  
 there should be peace; it is  
 his that there should be war.

Tuā interest pacem, illius bel-  
 lum esse, (or ut pax, ut bellum  
 sit).

*Note.* Meā, tuā, &c., are explained (1) as remains of an Acc. Fem. Sing., the original expression being inter meam rem est, tuam rem fert, &c., (2) as Abl. Fem. Sing. with ellipse of re. See also Roby's Lat. Gr. § 1285.

§ 272. This is of little con-  
 sequence to Caesar.

Hoc Caesaris parvi refert.

This is of great consequence  
 to me.

Hoc meā magni refert.

*Note.* The Genitive (or Locative) of Value, as magni, parvi, &c., (§ 120, b, note 2), is often found with interest and refert.

### Infinitive Mood.

§ 273. I wish to go away.

Abire cupio.

*Note.* The Infinitive added to complete the sense after such Verbs as wish, begin, be able, &c. (Madvig, § 389), may be called the *Complementary Infinitive*. It is also known as *Prolative* (Pub. Sch. Lat. Gr. § 180).

§ 274. Bold to endure all things.

Audax omnia perpeti.

*Note.* Perpeti is a poetical application of the Complementary Infinitive.

§ 275. I am glad that you are  
 well.

Gaudeo te valere, or gaudeo  
 quod vales.

*Note.* Quod with Indicative is used instead of Accusative and Infinitive (1) with Verbs expressing some emotion of the mind, as gaudeo, doleo, &c., (2) with certain Impersonals. See Madvig, § 398, b.

§ 276. Then the plebeians be-  
 gan to look round about on  
 the faces of the patricians.

Circumspectare tum patricio-  
 rum vultus plebei.

*Note.* The *Historic Infinitive* is used (1) of sudden events, (2) of simultaneous events, (3) of events following in rapid succession.

§ 277. What! am I to shrink  
 from my settled purpose?

Me-nē incepto desistere!

*Note.* The *Exclamatory Infinitive* is used both in Prose and Poetry, with or without -nē, to denote surprise or indignation. Compare the use of the English Infinitive in such phrases as 'to think of your doing this,' &c.



## Gerund and Gerundive.

(See §§ 138-142.)

§ 278. I am desirous of satisfying the people. Cupīdus sum satisfaciendi populo.

Rule. The Gerund of a Verb governing the Genitive, Dative, or Ablative takes its case after it.

§ 279. For the sake of seeing something. Aliquid videndi causā (*not* aliquid videndi causā).

For the sake of seeing the city. Urbem videndi causā, *or* urbis videndae causā.

With a view to protecting the city. Ad urbem tuendam (*never* ad urbem tuendum).

Rule. With Transitive Verbs (*a*) the Genitive Gerund often takes an Object in the Accusative, especially when ambiguity, (as noticed in § 138, *footnote*), or awkwardness of sound, as *magnarum statuarum videndarum*, is to be avoided, (*b*) the Dative and Ablative less frequently have an Object, and (*c*) neither Accusative nor Ablative with Preposition *per* has one. In these latter cases the Gerundive construction, as explained in § 138, is used.

§ 280. We must speak. Dicendum est nobis.  
We had to speak. Dicendum erat nobis.  
We must speak these things. Haec nobis dicenda sunt, (*not* haec nobis dicendum est).

Note. Lucretius has 'Aeternas quoniam poenas in morte timendum est,' but among the classical writers such a phrase is not found (§ 141).

§ 281. He gave up Eumenes to his relatives to be buried. Eumēnem propinquis sepeliendum tradidit.

He caused a bridge to be made over the Arar. Pontem *in* Arāre faciendum curavit.

## Qui, Quum, and Ut.

(See § 143).

\* \* For instances of the simple use of Qui see §§ 222-229.

§ 282. I pity you for having made this man your enemy. Miseret tui me, qui hunc hominem inimicum feceris.

The Relative thus used is known as 'Qui Causal.' It is often strengthened by the use of utpōte or quippe.

§ 283. He will send ambassadors to beg for peace. Legatos, qui pacem petant, mittet.

He sent ambassadors to beg for peace. Legatos qui pacem petērent, misit.

The Relative thus used is equivalent to a clause introduced by ut, *in order that*, and is known as 'Qui Final.'

§ 284. You are not such a man Non tu is es qui, quid sis,  
as not to know what you are. nescias.

The Relative thus used is equivalent to a Clause introduced by *ut* after *talis*, &c., and is known as 'Qui Consecutive.' It is found (1) after *talis*, *tantus*, and all other words implying *such*, (2) after *dignus*, *indignus*, *idoneus*, *aptus*, &c., as, *dignus est qui imperet*, *he is worthy to rule*, (3) after Comparatives with *quam*, as, *aetate provectior est quam qui diu vivat*, *he is too old to live long*, (4) after Interrogative, Indefinite and other Pronouns and Adjectives, as, *quis*, *quidam*, *nemo*, *multi*, &c., either expressed, as, *quis est qui te timeat*, *who is there who fears you?* or understood, as, *sunt qui credant*, *there are some who believe*. Almost all the uses of *quin* in Subordinate clauses are to be referred to this head.

§ 285. There is no one *but* Nemo est quin hoc facere  
can do this. possit.  
Who is there *that* does not see? Quis est quin videat?  
Nothing is so difficult *that* it Nihil tam difficile est quin per-  
cannot be accomplished. fici possit.  
It cannot be *that* the soul is Fieri non potest quin animus  
not immortal. immortalis sit.  
There is no doubt *that* the Non dubium est quin res ita se  
case is so. habeat.  
Nothing prevents our doing Nihil obstat quin (or quominus)  
this. hoc faciamus.

Note 1. *Quin* stands (1) for the Nominative, *qui non*, *quae non*, *quod non*, as in the first three of the above examples, (2) for the Ablative *qui non*, *how not or in such a manner as not*, as in the last three examples.

Note 2. *Quin* in Principal clauses means *why not?* as, *quin expergiscimini, why don't you wake up?* and sometimes *but, in truth, moreover*.

Note 3. *Quominus*, *that . . . not*, only occurs after verbs of *hindering*.

(See § 144.)

§ 286. Such being the case, I Quae quum ita sint, te consu-  
wish to consult you. lere volo.  
Such being the case, I wished Quae quum ita essent, tibi con-  
to consult your interests. sulere volui.  
§ 287. When summer returns Quum redierit aestas domum  
we will go home. ibimus (§ 298).  
§ 288. Caesar *seeing* the enemy Caesar, quum hostes incautos  
off their guard suddenly at- videret, eos subito adortus  
tacked them. est.

Note. *Quum* meaning *at the time when* is occasionally found with an Imperfect Indicative. See Madvig § 358.

§ 289. Caesar *having returned* Caesar, quum ex Galliā redi-  
from Gaul entered the city isset, urbem sine morā intra-  
without delay. vit.

(See § 145.)

- § 290. As you sow, so shall you reap. Ut sementem feceris, ita metes (§ 298).  
 We asked them how they were. Ut valerent interrogavimus.

## Se and Suus.

- § 291. Fabius said that if Brutus would restore to him *his* property, he in turn would restore *his* to Brutus. Fabius dixit, si suas res Brutus sibi reddidisset, se invicem ei res ejus redditurum (§ 298).  
 Cato is here with *his* son. Cato cum filio *suo* hic est.  
 They have seen neither Cato nor *his* son. Nec Catonem nec filium *ejus* aspexerunt.

**Rule.** Se and Suus refer to the Subject of the Principal Verb of the Sentence, if it be of the Third Person.

**Note.** Sui may however be used as Objective Genitive, e. g. conservatio sui, *self-preservation*, without necessarily referring to the Subject of the sentence. Suus may also be used without such reference, when the translation *his own*, *her own*, &c., is implied, as, Hannibalem sui cives e civitate ejecerunt, *his own countrymen expelled Hannibal from the state*. See Madvig, § 490.

## Utrum, Num, -Ne, An.

- § 292. Is this yours or mine?  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Utrum meum} \\ \text{Meumnē} \\ \text{Num meum} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{an tuum est} \\ \text{hoc?} \end{array}$   
 I wish to know whether this is yours or mine. Scire  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{utrum meum} \\ \text{meumnē} \\ \text{num meum} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{an tuum} \\ \text{volo} \\ \text{hoc sit.} \end{array}$

**Notes.** Num followed by an is rare. Utrum, -ne, num, are sometimes omitted in these double questions, as, eloquar an sileam, *shall I speak or be silent?* -Nē is sometimes used for an, as, albus aternē fueris ignōrans, *not knowing whether you were white or black*.

- § 293. Can he do this or not? Utrum hoc facere potest annon?  
 I wished to know whether he could do this or not. Scire volui utrum hoc facere necnē posset.

**Rule.** For or not use an non in *Oratio Recta*, necnē in *Oratio Obliqua*.

- § 294. It is uncertain whether he will do this without compulsion. Incertum est an sine vi hoc facturum sit.

**Rule.** After Verbs of *doubt* or *uncertainty*, the first clause of a double question is often omitted, and an is translated *whether*. In the above example supply utrum vi coactus after incertum est to complete the sense. See article on an in Andrews' Dictionary.

'Would,' the sign of the Future Tense in Oblique Sentences.

§ 295. ACTIVE VOICE.

- (a) He would love. Amāret.  
He said that he would love. Dixit se amātūrum esse.

With Verbs that have no Supine and consequently no Future Infinitive [which is formed from the Supine] the phrase, 'fore ut' or 'futurum esse ut,' with Imperf. Subjunctive is used, as, 'I hoped the boys would learn,' 'Speravi fore [or futurum esse] ut pueri discerent.'

- It was uncertain whether he Amaturusnē esset incertum  
would love. erat.

- (b) He would have loved. Amāvisset.  
He said that he would have Dixit se amaturum fuisse.  
loved.

With Verbs having no Supine, 'futurum fuisse ut,' with Imperfect Subjunctive would be used.

- It is doubtful whether he would An amaturus fuerit in dubio  
have loved. est.

§ 296. PASSIVE VOICE.

- (a) He would be loved. Amārētur.  
He said that he would be loved. Dixit se amātum iri.

With Verbs having no Supine, 'fore ut' or 'futurum esse ut,' with Subjunctive, would be used.

- It was uncertain whether he Incertum erat an amārētur.  
would be loved.

The Passive has no Special form for the Future Subjunctive. 'Incertum erat an amaretur' therefore may mean, 'It was uncertain whether he *would* be loved,' or, 'It was uncertain whether he *was* loved.' Such a form as 'futurum esset ut amaretur' is not found. But a Latin writer would probably resort to some contrivance for avoiding this ambiguity, such as changing the construction from a Passive to an Active form, &c.

- (b) He would have been loved. Amatus esset.  
He said that he would have Dixit futūrum fuisse ut amā-  
been loved. retur.

Quod.

§ 297. They accused Socrates, on the ground of his corrupting the youth, but in reality because he had become suspected by those in power.

They condemned Marcus to death on the charge of killing his father.

Socratem accusārunt, quod  
juventutem corrumpere, re  
tamen ipsā quia in suspici-  
onem magistratibus venerat.

Marcum capitis damnāruit  
quod patrem occidisset.

The general refused to fight,  
not *because* he feared, but *because*  
he wished to delay.

Dux pugnam detrectāvit, non  
quod timēret, sed quia cunc-  
tāri vōlūit.

**Rule.** Quod, *because*, takes an Indicative, except when it expresses (1) an *alleged* reason, as in the first two of the above examples, (2) after the Negative Adverb, a *supposed* or *possible* reason, a reason which *might* be the true one, but is not necessarily so, as in the last example. The *true* reason in such cases is usually expressed by quia or quod with Indicative. The last part of the above example might have been expressed thus, 'more because he wished to delay than because he feared,' and the Latin would be, 'magis quia cunctari voluit, quam quod timeret.'

### Future Time.

§ 298. I will do it if I *am* able.  
He said he would do it if he  
were able.

Faciam, si potero.  
Dixit se, si posset, facturum.

When I *return* I will speak of  
these things.

Quum rediero, de his rebus  
dicam.

He said that when he returned  
he would speak of those things.

Dixit se, quum rediisset, de iis  
rebus dicturum.

**Rule.** When the Principal Verb of an *Oratio Recta* is in the Future, Subordinate Verbs, especially when introduced by Temporal or Conditional Conjunctions, must, as a rule, be in the Future also; in the Future Simple Tense, if the action be contemporaneous with that of the Principal Verb, in the Future Perfect if it be anterior. But in *Oratio Obliqua* such Subordinate Verbs are put in the Present, Perfect, Imperfect, or Pluperfect Subjunctive. See Madvig, §§ 339, *Obs.* i., 340, and 378 (4). In the English idiom the futurity of the Subordinate Clause is lost sight of.

### Construction of summus, medius, &c.

§ 299. He was standing on the  
top of a tower.

In summâ turre stâbat.

The captives will be led through  
the midst of the city.

Captîvi per mēdiām urbem dū-  
centur.

**Rule.** Summus, the Superlative of superus, *high*, is not to be translated *highest* when used of *place*. Summus mons does not mean *the highest mountain* (of several), but *the mountain where it is highest*, i. e. *the top of the mountain*. Again, medius mons does not mean *the middle mountain* (of several), but *the mountain where it is midmost*, i. e. *the middle of the mountain*. So, in extremo itinere, *at the end of the march*, ad imum collem, *at the foot of the hill*, prima lux, *the beginning of light*, i. e. *the dawn*. Intimus, postremus, ultimus are used in the same way.

## To.

§ 300. Rule. *To* with Nouns is nearly always the sign of the Dative, except when it implies *motion to*; with Verbs it is usually the sign of the Infinitive, except when it means *in order to*.

This will be useful *to* me.  
He will send presents *to* me.  
He wished *to* kill Marcus.

Hoc *mibi* utile erit.  
Munera *ad me* mittet.  
Marcus occidēre voluit.

He sent men *to* kill Marcus.

1. Misit homines ut Marcus occidērent.
2. Misit homines qui Marcus occiderent (§ 283).
3. Misit homines Marcus occisuros (*very rare*).
4. Misit homines ad Marcus occidendum (§ 279).
5. Misit homines Marcus occidendi causā (§ 279).
6. Misit homines Marci occidendi causā (§ 138).
7. Misit homines Marcus occisum (§ 136).

*Note.* An English Infinitive, e. g. *to kill*, may be (1) a Verb-Noun meaning *the act of killing*, or (2) an Adverbial phrase meaning *in order to kill*. But in Latin the Infinitive is *only* a Verb-Noun, and is *never* used Adverbially except by the poets. Such a sentence, therefore, as 'misit homines Marcus occidere' could only mean 'he sent men *the act of killing* Marcus,' which is absurd. Remember then that '*the Infinitive should never be used to express a purpose in Latin.*'

§ 301. I command you <i>to</i> do this.	Impēro tibi ut hoc facias.
I advise you <i>not to</i> do this.	Suadeo tibi ne hoc facias.
They allowed him <i>to</i> go.	Permiserunt ei ut iret.
He was allowed <i>to</i> go.	Permissum ( <i>or</i> concessum) ei est ut iret.
We asked him <i>to</i> go down with us to the Forum.	Oravimus ut nobiscum in Forum descenderet.

Rule. By *ut* translate Infinitive  
With *ask* and *wish*, *command*, *contrive*,  
*Allow*, *forbid*, *advise* and *strive*:  
But never be this rule forgot,  
Put *ne* for *ut* when there's a '*not*.'

*Exceptions.* Volo, jubeo, veto, conor, sino, almost always take an Infinitive rather than an *ut* Clause. After Verbs of *forbidding* (except *veto*) always use *nē*, as the sense is 'to order *not* to do something.'

## Having.

§ 302. The Perfect Participle Active, *having loved, having advised, etc.*, is wanting in all Latin Verbs, except the Deponents and Semi-deponents. In translating into Latin an English Perfect Participle Active we must, therefore, remember the following

Rules. (a) If a Deponent can be found to suit the sense, it should be used, as,

Having thus spoken the general      Dux ita locūtus consēdit.  
sat down.

(b) If an Active Verb is employed, we must use *quum* with Pluperfect Subjunctive if the Principal Verb is a Historic Tense, as,

Having thus spoken the general      Dux, *quum* ita dixisset, con-  
sat down.                                      sedit.

But with Perfect Subjunctive if the Principal Verb is a Primary Tense, as,  
Having lived honourably so      *Quum* tot annos honestè vix-  
many years he is worthy of      erit, summā laude dignus est.  
the utmost praise.                      [*Quum* here = *since*, § 144].

(c) If the Verb is Transitive and has an Object, an elegant rendering can be made by means of the Ablative Absolute, as,

Fabius having conquered the      Fabius, hostibus victis, Romam  
enemy returned (will return)      rediit (redibit).  
to Rome.

*Note 1.* Hostibus victis does not necessarily imply that Fabius was the person who conquered the enemy, which *quum* vicisset (*or* vicerit) *would*.

*Note 2.* *Ceno, juro, nubo, poto, prandeo*, have Perfect Participles Active, *cenatus, having supped, juratus, having sworn, nupta* (of a woman), *having wedded, potus, having drunk, pransus, having dined*.

§ 303. Caesar having ex-      Caesar suos hortatus consedit.  
horted his men sat down.

Caesar having exhorted his      Caesare suos hortato, clamor  
men, a shout arose.                      exortus est.

*Note.* Beware of regarding as *absolute* a Substantive, with Participle in agreement, which forms the Subject of a Verb. In the first of the above examples the words 'Caesar having exhorted his men' are not *absolute* (i. e. *independent* of the rest of the sentence), but form an integral part of it.

## Of.

§ 304. He will sail to the island      Ad insulam Cyprum navigabit.  
of Cyprus.

*I almost think* he will sail to the      Haud scio an ad insulam Cy-  
island of Cyprus.                              prum navigaturus sit.

In these and similar expressions, as, 'the city of Rome,' &c., *of* is merely a sign of Apposition. Here are to be noticed the English expressions 'all *of*,'



'whole of,' where *of* cannot be expressed by a Partitive Genitive (§ 129, b), since the words *all*, *whole*, are from their meaning not partitive. For 'all of whom' say *qui omnes* (Nom.), *quos omnes* (Acc.); 'all of you,' *vos omnes*. Also 'three hundred of us were present,' *trecenti adfuimus*, if *of* is not used partitively; but *trecenti nostrum*, or *ex numero nostro*, *adfuerunt*, if it is used partitively.

§ 305. The barbarians use *Barbāri ligneis ensibus utuntur.*  
swords *of* wood.

*Of* here denotes *quality* or *material*.

§ 306. He talks *of* battles, and *De pugnīs loquitur, et periculum parvi facit.*

*Of* in the first case = *concerning*; in the second it forms part of the Verb.

§ 307. To rob a temple *of* its *Templum auro spoliare.*  
gold.

*Of* after *rob*, *defraud*, *deprive*,  
Is but a sign of Ablative.

### The.

§ 308. *The* soldiers on the wall *Qui (or quot) in moenibus erant*  
perceived me. *milites me aspexerunt.*

*Note.* There is no Definite Article in Latin, and care is required in translation in order to bring out the English meaning where necessary. *Milites in moenibus me aspexerunt* might mean *Soldiers on the wall perceived me* or even *soldiers perceived me on the wall*. For 'the' with Comparatives see § 260, 261.

He is not *the* man to do this.  
*The* noble and eloquent Cicero.

*Non est is qui hoc faciat.*  
*Cicero, vir nobilissimus atque facundissimus; or, Cicero ille nobilis ac facundus.*

*The* fight at Cannae.

*Proelium ad Cannas commissum; or, Proelium Cannense.*  
*Quantam (or quam) virtutem praestiterit memini.*

I remember *the* bravery he shewed.

*Servum misit, quem habuit fidelissimum.*

He sent *the* trustiest slave he had.

*Existimatio, quam insignem habuit.*

*The* remarkable reputation which he enjoyed.

### Without.

§ 309. He is *without* wisdom. *Sapientia caret.*

*Note.* 'Without' before a Substantive is usually expressed by *sine* with Ablative, except when it means 'outside of' which is extra. 'To be without' is *carere* or *egere*: 'without the knowledge of' is *clam*, see § 353. The chief difficulty in the translation of 'without' is when it precedes the Gerund in *-ing*, as in the following examples.



- § 310. I never saw him *without laughing*. Nunquam eum vidi quin riderem.  
 The town was taken *without a single man being killed*. Ne uno quidem interfecto, urbs capta est.  
 They set out *without delaying any longer*. Non amplius morati proficiscuntur.  
 He made a long speech *without persuading any one*. Orationem longam habuit, nec tamen ulli persuasit.  
 He was condemned *without being punished*. Damnatus quidem sed non supplicio affectus est.  
 You cannot learn *without studying*. Discere non pōtes nisi literis stūderis.  
 You cannot study *without learning*. Literis studere non pōtes quin discas.

*Note.* Nisi here implies 'without previously studying'; quin 'without subsequently learning.'

#### Instead of.

- § 311. I go *instead of you*. Pro te eo.  
 Hannibal, *instead of* retiring to Capua, ought to have attacked Rome. Hannibal non Capuam recedere sed Romam oppugnare debuit.  
 Hannibal retired to Capua *instead of* attacking Rome. Hannibal Capuam recessit, quum Romam oppugnare debuisset (*or* neque Romam oppugnavit).  
*Instead of* desiring the honour, he refuses it when offered him. Tantum abest ut honorem cupiat (*or*, adeo non honorem cupit), ut oblatum rejiciat.

#### Too.

- § 312. The way is *too* narrow. Via nimis angusta est; *or*, Via angustior est.  
 The shoe is *too* large for the foot. Calcēus major est quam pro pede.  
 Marcus was much *too* old to have the command of armies. Marcus multo provectione aetate fuit quam ut [*or*, quam qui] exercitibus praeesset.  
 Nothing was *too* arduous for him to undertake. Nihil tam arduum fuit quin is susciperet.

#### So, Such, As.

- § 313. *As* many men, *so* many opinions. Quot homines, tot sententiae.  
 He is *such as* he has ever been. Talis est qualis semper fuit.

He is not *so* mad *as* you.  
*Such* as remained in the city he  
 rewarded.

He is not *such* a man *as* to do  
 that.

Cato, *such* was his sagacity  
 (or, with his usual sagacity),  
 found out this.

*Such* is your temperance.

*As* far *as* you are concerned,  
 or, *as* regards you.

*As* far *as* I know.

He raises *as* great forces *as*  
 possible.

*As* soon *as*. The *same as*.

*Such* was the valour of the  
 soldiers that they fought the  
 whole day long.

Non tam āmens est quam tu.  
 Eos, qui in urbe manebant,  
 praeiis affecit.

Non is est qui id faciāt.

Cato, quae erat ejus sāgacitas  
 (or quā erat sagacitate), hoc  
 deprehendit.

Quae tua est temperantia.

Quod ad te attinet.

Quod sciam.

Quam maximas potest copias  
 compārat; or, copias quam  
 maximas compārat.

Simul atque. Idem qui.

Ea erat militū virtus, ut to-  
 tum diem pugnārent.

### Some, Any.

§ 314. Some one may ask.

Some one may say.

*Some* said that Croesus, *others*  
 that Cyrus would conquer.

*Some* fly in one direction *some*  
 in another.

Let no one say this.

If I have any ability.

There are some who think.

There were some who thought.

Does anyone think so?

Quaerat quispiam (or aliquis).

Dixerit (or dicat) aliquis.

Alīi Croesum, alīi Cyrum vic-  
 tūrum dicēbant.

Alīi alīam in partem (or alīas in  
 partes) fūgiunt.

Ne quis hoc dicat.

Si quid ingenii in me est.

Sunt qui putent.

Erant qui putarent.

Ecquis ita putat?

**Rules.** (a) *Some*, meaning 'some one or other,' whom we do not know,  
 is aliquis or nescio quis; meaning 'a certain person,' whom we know but  
 do not think it necessary to name, it is quidam.

(b) *Some*, meaning 'a few' or 'several' is nonnulli or aliquot; meaning  
 'a little' it is nonnihil, and, when used of quantity, aliquantum.

(c) *Any* is quispiam and sometimes aliquis; *any* in a question is ecquis or  
 num quis; *any you please* is quivis, quilibet; *any at all* quisquam (Subst.),  
 ullus (Adj.); after 'if' or 'lest,' *any* is usually quis.

(d) *Nobody, no one*, [i. e. not *any* body, not *any one*] is nemo; but  
 instead of 'that nobody,' in Final Clauses, the Latins said 'lest anybody,' nē  
 quis. But in *Consecutive* Clauses 'that nobody' is ut nemo. In Commands,  
 for 'let nobody' they said 'let not anybody,' nē quis. For 'and no one'  
 they said 'nor any one,' nec quisquam, nec ullus, and in Commands neu  
 quis, neve quis.

## English use of the Demonstrative.

§ 315. In Co-ordinate Sentences (§ 84, *note*) we often employ Demonstrative (or Personal) Pronouns in English to avoid the repetition of a Substantive, as 'we found some mushrooms and ate *them*.' The Demonstrative is seldom so used in Latin, the repetition of the Substantive being avoided

(a) by making it the Object of both Verbs, as,

Some covet riches, others de- spise <i>them</i> .	Divitias alii cupiunt, alii sper- nunt.
------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------

*Note.* This cannot be done if the Verbs take different Cases, as,

Some blamed the general, others congratulated <i>him</i> on his vic- tory.	Alii ducem culpares, alii vic- toriam ei gratulari (§ 275).
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------

(b) by making a Participle do duty for one of the co-ordinate sentences, as,

He summoned the soldiers, and thus addressed <i>them</i> .	Milites convocatos ita allocutus est.
---------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------

§ 316. In particular be careful *never* to translate *literally* the expressions *that of, those of*. Either

(a) repeat the Substantive, as,

The fleet of the Romans joined <i>that of</i> the allies.	Sociorum classi classis Roma- norum conjuncta est.
--------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------

or (b) introduce an Adjective with which the second Substantive can be understood in agreement, as,

The fleet of the Romans joined <i>that of</i> the allies.	Sociorum classi Romana con- juncta est.
--------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------

Here *classi* coming immediately before *Romana* shews that *classis* is to be understood with the latter word.

or (c) omit the second Substantive altogether, as,

The keels are much flatter than <i>those of</i> our ships.	Carinae aliquanto planiores quam nostrarum navium sunt.
---------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------

## Ways of translating by a Latin Participle.

§ 317. He <i>attacked and</i> routed the enemy.	Hostes adortus profligavit.
----------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------

He <i>burnt and</i> destroyed the bridge.	Pontem incensum delevit.
----------------------------------------------	--------------------------

This accident impedes his right hand <i>as he is endeavouring</i> to draw his sword.	Hic casus gladium educere cōnanti dextram moratur ma- num.
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------

Leonidas, <i>though</i> overpowered, would not yield.	Leōnidas sup̄rātus cēdērē ta- men nōlūt.
----------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------

Xerxes, <i>when</i> conquered by the Greeks, fled back to Asia.	Xerxes a Graecis victus in Asiam rēfūgit.
<i>If</i> expelled from Rome, he will go to Athens.	Romā expulsus Athēnas ibit.
I did this <i>because</i> Caesar advised me.	Haec Caesāre mōnente fēci.
Much like <i>one who fears</i> .	Multum similis metuenti.

### Uses of the Prepositions.

\*\*\* These Prepositions are arranged in the order given in §§ 111, 122. Only the commoner uses are here given. For a further account consult any good Dictionary, Roby's Lat. Gr. §§ 1800-2192, or the Publ. Sch. Lat. Gr. §§ 70-72.

(See § 111.)

§ 318. *Ante*, *before*, as, ante muros, *before the walls*, ante lucem, *before dawn*. Often used as an Adverb, *previously*.

§ 319. *Apud*, *at*, *near*, and—when used of an author—in.  
To sup *at* a friend's house. Apud amicum cenare.  
They waited *near* the town. Apud oppidum morati sunt.

*Note.* *Apud* denotes *rest at* or *near*, *ad* denotes direction, motion, etc. Originally also *apud* was used only of nearness of *persons*, *ad* only of nearness of *places*.

We find this *in* Plato. Apud Platonem hoc invenimus.  
He is not in his senses. Non apud se est. (*Poet.*)

§ 320. *Ad*, *to*, *towards*, *at*, *about* or *almost* (of number).  
I wrote a letter *to* him. Litteras ad eum dedi (scripsi).  
From this point the country stretches *towards* the North. Inde ad Septentriones regio vergit.  
The defeat *at* Cannae. Clades ad Cannas accepta.  
About (almost) 40 years old. Annos ad quadraginta natus.

*Note.* Other phrases are, *ad extremum*, *finally*; *ad hoc*, *in addition to this*; *ad verbum*, *word for word*; *servi ad remum* = *remiges*, *rowers*; *nihil ad me* (sc. attinet), *this is no concern of mine*.

§ 321. *Adversum*, *Adversus*, *toward* or *to* (in a friendly sense), *against* (in a hostile sense).

How shall I conduct myself *towards* Caesar. Quonam modo adversus Caesarem me geram?  
*To* these things he replied. Adversus ea respondit.  
I will strive *against* you. Adversus te contendam.

§ 322. *Circa*, *Circiter*, *Circum*, *around*, *about*.  
*Around* the city walls. Circum (circa) muros urbis.  
*About* the eighth hour. Octavam circiter horam.

§ 323. *Cis, Citra, on this side*, as *Belgae cis Rhenum incolunt, the Belgae dwell on this side the Rhenus.*

§ 324. *Contra, opposite, against.* Often used as Adverb, *on the opposite side, on the other hand, on the contrary.*

One side of this island is *opposite* Gaul. *Hujus insulae unum latus est contra Galliam.*

To conspire *against* a king. *Contra regem conjurare.*

§ 325. *Erga, towards* (almost always in a friendly sense, amongst the Classical writers), as, *benevolentia amicorum erga nos, the kind feeling of our friends towards us.*

§ 326. *Extra, outside, beyond*, as, *extra muros, outside the walls, extra modum, beyond measure.*

§ 327. *Infra, below, beneath*, as, *terra infra caelum est, earth is below the heaven, id infra grammatici officium est, That is beneath the business of a grammarian.*

§ 328. *Inter, between, among, during.*

Mount Jura is *between* the Sequani and Helvetii. *Mons Jura inter Sequānos et Helvetios est.*

He is *amongst* the wounded. *Inter saucios est.*

All the iniquitous and disgraceful deeds that have been committed *during* ten years. *Omnia quae inter decem annos nefarie flagitioseque facta sunt.*

*Note.* *Inter* *sicarios damnari, to be condemned on a charge of assassination, inter falcarios venire, to visit the scythe-makers' street.* The Reciprocal Pronoun *one another* is rendered by *inter*, as, *colloquimur inter nos, we converse with one another; pueri inter se amant, the boys love one another.*

§ 329. *Intra, within*, as, *intra urbem, within the city.*

§ 330. *Juxta, near, next to.* Often used as Adverb, *near, equally, or in like manner.*

*Near* the temple of Castor.

*Juxta aedem Castōris.*

*Next to* the worship of the Gods let faith between man and man be cultivated.

*Juxta divinas religiones fides humana colatur.*

§ 331. *Ob, (rarely) before*, (much more commonly) *on account of.*

Death often passed *before* his eyes.

*Mors ob oculos saepe versata est.*

*On account of* the mindful wrath of Juno.

*Memōrem Junonis ob iram.*

§ 332. *Penes, in the power of*, as, *me penes est custodia mundi, the guardianship of the world is in my power.*

§ 333. *Pone, behind* (rare), as, *pone aedem Castoris, behind Castor's temple.* Used rarely as Adverb, *behind, after.*

§ 334. *Post, behind, after.* Often used as Adverb, *behind, afterwards.*  
 You were hiding *behind* the bed Tu post carecta latebas.  
 of sedge.  
 Six years *after* the capture of Sexennio post Veios captos.  
 Veii.

§ 335. *Praeter, beside or past, beyond, contrary to, in addition to, except.* Also used as Adverb, *besides.*

Next day he led out his forces Postridie ejus diei (*see also* § 372,  
*note*) praeter castra Caesaris  
*past* the camp of Caesar. suas copias produxit.

Many things happened to me Multa praeter spem mihi even-  
*beyond* my hopes. erunt.

He arrived *contrary to* every- Praeter opinionem omnium  
 one's expectation. pervenit.

They brought ten men each Denos praeter se ad colloquium  
*besides* themselves to the con- adduxerunt.  
 ference.

They have no clothing *except* Vestitus, praeter pelles, non  
 skins. habent.

§ 336. *Prope, near, as prope Caesaris hortos, near the gardens of Caesar.*  
 Often used as Adverb, *near, nearly*, the Comparative and Superlative of  
 which, propius, proxime, are often used as Prepositions with an Accusative.

§ 337. *Propter, beside or near (rare), on account of.*  
 We sat down *near* Plato's Propter statuum Platonis con-  
 statue. sedimus.

*On account of* the cold the corn Propter frigus frumenta ma-  
 was not ripe. tura non erant.

§ 338. *Per, through, during, by = by means of.*  
*Through* the waves. Per undas.  
*During* many years. Per multos annos.  
 He who acts *by* another acts *by* Qui facit per alium facit per  
 himself. se.

§ 339. *Secundum, along, next to, according to.*  
*Along* the river. Secundum flumen.  
*Next to* you I have no greater Secundum te nihil est mihi  
 friend than solitude. amicus solitudine.  
*To live according to* nature. Secundum naturam vivere.

§ 340. *Supra, above, beyond.* Used also as Adverb, *above, previously, more.*

Atticus was sitting *above* me at Supra me Atticus, infra Verrius  
 table, Verrius below. accumbebat.

*Beyond* one's powers. Supra (*also* ultra) vires.

§ 341. *Versus, towards, as, Brundisium versus, towards Brundisium.*

§ 342. *Ultra, beyond, as, ultra eum locum, beyond that place.*

§ 343. *Trans, across, as, trans mare, across the sea.*

§ 344. *In with Accusative, into, to, for (of time), according to, against.*

They make an incursion *into* the territories of the Remi. In fines Remorum incursionem faciunt.

He puts the enemy *to* flight. Hostes in fugam dat.

Peace was made *for* two years. Pax in biennium facta.

*After* the manner of slaves. Servilem in modum.

Turn your swords *against* me. In me convertite ferrum.

*Note.* Other phrases are, in multam noctem, *deep into the night*; in horas, *from hour to hour*; in posterum, *for the future*; trecenti nummi in capita, *300 sesterces for each person*.

§ 345. *Sub with Accusative, (motion) under, up to, about (of time), just before or just after (of time).*

To send an army *under* the yoke. Exercitum sub jugum mittere.

They come *up to* the wall. Sub murum succedunt.

*About* nightfall. Sub noctem.

*Just after* cockcrow. Sub galli cantum.

§ 346. *Super with Accusative, above, as, Nomentanus erat super ipsum, Porcius infra, Nomentanus was above the host at table, Porcius below him.*

§ 347. *Subter with Accusative, beneath, as, subter fastigia tecti, beneath the roof of the house.*

(See § 122.)

§ 348. *A, Ab, Abs, from, by = by agency of, on the side of.*

How changed *from* the mighty Hector! Quantum mutatus ab illo Hectore!

He was slain *by* his own men. A suis interfectus est.

Gaul touches the Rhine *on the side of* the Sequani. Gallia ab Sequānis Rhenum attingit.

*Note.* So, ab aliquo stare, facere, sentire, or esse, *to be on one's side*; hoc est a me or a me facit, *this is in my favour*. Other phrases are, a summo bibere, *to drink in succession beginning from the head of the table*; (servus) a manu, *a secretary*; a fronte, *in the van*; a latere, *in the flank*; a tergo, *in the rear*; a millibus passuum duobus, *two miles off*.

§ 349. *Absque, without, rare except among the comic writers in phrases like absque te foret, if it were not for you.*

§ 350. *Coram, in the presence of, as, coram populo loqui, to speak in presence of the people.*

§ 351. *De, from, down from, of, concerning.*

They set forth *from* their territories. De finibus suis exierunt.



He threw himself *down from* De muro se projecit.  
the wall.

The other instances *of* this Cetera de hoc genere.  
kind.

A temple built *of* snow-white Templum niveo de marmore  
marble. factum.

They treat *concerning* peace. De pace agunt.

*Note.* Other phrases are, de nocte, *by night*; de tertia vigilia, *at the third watch*; de more, *according to custom*; de integro, *afresh*; de improvviso, *unexpectedly*; de industria, *on purpose*.

§ 352. Palam, *in the presence of*, as, palam Caesare, *in the presence of Caesar*. More commonly used as Adverb, *openly*.

§ 353. Clam, *without the knowledge of*, as, clam patre (also clam patrem), *without my father's knowledge*. Often used as Adverb, *secretly*.

§ 354. Cum, *with*, (1) in the sense of *together with*, as, vagamur egentes cum conjugibus et liberis, *we are wandering in poverty with our wives and children*; Romani cum Gallis contendunt, *the Romans contend with the Gauls*; (2) denoting *manner*, as, cum celeritate venit, *he came with speed*.

§ 355. Ex, *out of, from, after, of, on account of, in accordance with*.

He runs *out of* the house. Ex aedibus currit.

He returned *from* Asia. Ex Asia rediit.

*After* his consulship Cotta set Cotta ex consulatu est pro-  
*out of* Gaul. fectus in Galliam.

*Note 1.* So aliud ex alio, *one thing after another*; diem ex die expectare, *to wait one day after another, from day to day*.

A statue made *of* bronze. Statua ex aere facta.

When the state had grown Quum esset ex aere alieno  
*alarmed on account of* the commota civitas.  
debt.

*In accordance with* a decree of Ex senatusconsulto.  
the Senate.

*Note 2.* Other phrases are, e re, *for the advantage of*; ex injuria, *for the injury of*; e regione, *opposite*; e vestigio, *instantly*; ex improvviso, *unexpectedly*; ex aequo, *ex commodo, etc., for aequo, commode, etc.*; heres ex asse, *heir to the whole estate*, ex sententia, *to one's satisfaction*.

§ 356. Sine, *without*, as, sine ulla dubitatione, *without any doubt*.

§ 357. Tenus, *as far as*, is placed after its Case, and takes Gen. or Abl., as, urbium Corcyrae tenus, *as far as the cities of Corcyra*; Ariminum tenus, *as far as Ariminum*.

§ 358. Pro, *before, in the front part of, for=in behalf of, instead of, as, in proportion to or according to*.

The camp is pitched *before* the Castra pro moenibus locantur.  
walls.



Having announced this matter  
*on* (i.e. standing on the front  
part of) the platform.

To fight *for* altars and hearths.  
I will go *instead of* you.

I have brought him up *as* my  
own son.

*According to* one's ability.

§ 359. *Prae*, before, compared with, owing to.

He carried a dagger *before* him.

They are thought little of *in*  
*comparison with* him.

*Owing to* the multitude of darts  
we shall not see the sun.

Notice also the phrase *prae se ferre*, to shew, exhibit.

§ 360. *In* with Ablative, in, on, during, in the case of.

He is *in* the city.

He has a crown *on* his head.

*During* my youth.

This happens most fortunately  
*in the case of* Crassus.

*Note.* Other phrases are, *in aere alieno esse*, to be in debt; *pons in flumine*, a bridge over a river.

§ 361. *Sub* with Abl., under, (of time) at, as, *sub divo*, under the open sky, *sub adventu Caesaris*, at the arrival of Caesar.

§ 362. *Super* with Abl., upon (rare), concerning, as, *multa super Priamo rogicans*, asking many things about Priam.

§ 363. *Subter* with Abl., under, as, *subter densa testudine*, under a thick testudo.

### Miscellaneous.

§ 364. Whilst humouring the  
young men I forgot that I was  
old.

*Rule.* *Dum*, in the sense of *whilst*, is usually found with the Present rather than the Imperfect Indicative in describing past events. *Madv.* 336, *Obs.* 2.

§ 365. He causes engines to be  
constructed *in order that* he  
may more easily storm the city.

*Rule.* *Quo* is used for *ut* final with comparative Adjectives and Adverbs.

§ 366. How much strength still  
remains to you!

*Hac re pro suggestu pronun-*  
*tiata.*

*Pro aris et focus pugnare.*

*Ego ibo pro te.*

*Hunc pro meo filio eduxi.*

*Pro virili parte.*

*Prae se pugionem tulit.*

*Prae illo parvi habentur.*

*Solem prae jaculorum multitu-*  
*dine non videbimus.*

*In urbe est.*

*Coronam in capite habet.*

*In adolescentia mea.*

*Hoc in Crasso percommode*  
*accidit.*

*Dum obsęquor adolescentibus*  
*me senem esse oblitus sum.*

*Machinas exstruendas curat*  
*quo facilius urbem expug-*  
*net.*

*Quantum roboris adhuc tibi*  
*supęrest!*

He had eloquence enough but too little wisdom.      Satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum habuit.

Rule. The Neuters of Adjectives denoting *quantity* are frequently used as Substantives, and take a dependent Genitive of Partition, e. g. quantum, tantum, aliquantum, quid, nonnihil *or* aliquid, plus, plurimum, minus. (To these must be added the Adverbs, parum, *too little*, satis, *enough*, nimis, *too much*, and abunde, *abundance of*.) The poets extend this usage to other Adjectives besides those of quantity, as, amara curarum, *the bitterness of cares*.

§ 367. He departed from Rome unwillingly.      Romā invitus discessit.

Note. It is constantly necessary, particularly in poetry, to translate a Latin Adjective by an English Adverb. The use of matutinus, vespertinus, nocturnus, *for in the morning, in the evening, at night*, etc., is especially frequent.

§ 368. Not even a king may kill men uncondemned.      Indemnatos occidere ne regi quidem licet.

Rule. The words ne quidem, *not even*, are never written together but always have the word or words *emphasized* by quidem written *between them*.

§ 369. He has accurately described *not only* the earth *but also* the stars.      Non solum terras sed etiam stellas accuratè descripsit.

He *not only* did *not* spare foreign troops, but *not even* his own.      Non modò aliènis sed ne suis quidem militibus pèpercit.

Rule. Non modo, *not only*, when followed by nē quidem is used for non modo *non*. Madvig, 461, b (b).

§ 370. It was owing to Cato that I was not condemned to death.      Per Catōnem stetit quōmīnus cāpītis damnār.

That victory *cost* the Carthaginians much blood.      Multo sanguīe ea Poenis victōria stetit.

Literally, *stood to (the credit of) the Carthaginians at the price of much blood*. Poenis is Dat., and sanguine Abl. of Price.

§ 371. The Romans were superior *not only* in forces *but also* in money.      Romāni quum copiis tum argento superiōres erant.

Caesar, Pompey, and Crassus.      Caesar, Pompeius, Crassus; *or*, Caesar, et Pompeius, et Crassus.

§ 372. Publius Crassus with the 7th legion was wintering very near the Ocean.      P. Crassus cum legione septima proximus Oceanum hiemabat.

Note. An Accusative is sometimes found after the Adjectives propior, proximus; also after the adverbs pridie, postridie, as postridie pugnam, *on the day after the battle*.

§ 373. He is more prudent than wise. Prudentior quam sapientior est.

The wiser a man is the happier he is. Quo quis sapientior eo beatior;  
or Ut quisque sapientissimus ita beatissimus.

More than six hundred fell. Plus sexcenti ceciderunt.

*Note.* Quam is often omitted after plus, amplius, minus.

§ 374. I entrust you *with* the command. Imp̄r̄um tibi committo [*or* permitto].

I threaten you *with* death. Mortem tibi minor.

This happened to me *when* a boy. Hoc mihi puero accidit.

§ 375. They were delighted with your letter. Eos epistolā tuā summo gaudio affecit.

*Note.* The Passive is more frequently used in English than in Latin, and often has to be rendered by the equivalent Active form.

§ 376. He is dead. Mortuus est.

*Note.* The English Present, especially in the Passive Voice, as, 'the trees are cut down,' often implies a *completed* action, and in such case must always be rendered by the Latin Perfect. So 'the trees *were* cut down' if *were* = *had been*, must be Pluperfect in Latin.

§ 377. I begin to love. Amare coepi.  
I begin to repent of the deed. Paenitēre me facti coepit.

I ceased to love. Amare desii.

I ceased to be ashamed of my poverty. Paupertatis me pudēre desiit.

*Note.* Certain Verbs, as possum, coepi, debeo, desino, soleo, are used Personally or Impersonally according to the nature of their Complementary Verbs (§ 273). Coepi and desino sometimes take a Passive form when their Complementary Verb is Passive (Madvig, § 161), as,

The city began to be besieged. Urbs obsidēri coepta est.

§ 378. Be sure you return. Fac redeas.

Don't speak. Ne locutus sis.

*Note on the Imperative.* The Latins employ many circumlocutions to avoid a direct Imperative. Thus (a) for Affirmative Imperatives we find fac intelligam, fac valeas, velim abeas, etc., (b) for Negative Imperatives we find cave credas, nolo dicas, noli contendere, ne credideris. Nē with 2nd Pers. Present Subjunctive, as ne credas, is seldom used, and nē with 2nd Pers. Imperative, as ne crede, *hardly ever* except in Poetry. The poets also use the forms fuge suspicari, mitte sectari, parce timere, omitte mirari, abiste moveri, desine sperare, and the like, for *suspect not, follow not, etc.*

§ 379. These things are difficult to do (*or* to be done). Haec factu difficilia sunt.

It is difficult to tame a lion. Leonem domare difficile est.

*Note.* The Supine in -u is found with Adjectives, and with *fas*, *nefas*, *opus*. It is Passive in its signification, and does not govern a Case. As a rule, avoid using it unless it can be rendered in English by a Present Infinitive Passive.

§ 380. Lo, Priam!                      En Priāmus!  
Lo, four altars!                      En quattuor aras!

*Note.* Most Interjections may be followed by a Nominative or Vocative Case; some, as *en*, *ecce*, *heu*, *proh*, by an Accusative also. *Hei* and *vae* prefer a Dative, as, *hei mihi*, *vae victis*.

§ 381. He hopes to come.              Sperat se venturum esse.  
He promises to come.              Promittit se venturum esse.

*Rule.* After *hope* and *promise* use the Future Infinitive in Latin.

§ 382. He promised to come.      Promisit se venturum.

*Note.* *Venturum* for *venturum esse*. The omission of *esse* generally, and of *est*, *sunt*, in Principal (rarely in Subordinate) Clauses is common in all Latin authors.

§ 383. It is necessary that you      Necesse est hoc faciās [*for* ut  
should do this.                      hoc faciās].  
Take care you do not waste      Cave tempus absūmas [*for* ne  
your time.                      absumas].

*Rule.* When *licet*, *necesse est*, and *oportet* take the Subjunctive, they usually omit *ut*. *Ne* is sometimes omitted after certain Verbs, as *caveo*.

§ 384. He pities no one.              Nullius miseretur.

*Rule.*                      From nemo let me never see  
                                    Neminis or nemine.

Use *nullius*, *nullo*, instead of *neminis*, *nemine*.

§ 385. Many great wars.              Multa et magna bella.

*Rule.* Two Adjectives cannot be joined to the same Noun in Latin without a connecting particle in the same way as they are in such English phrases as 'a bold bad man,' 'a cold wet day,' &c. Say *homo audacissimus ac sceleratissimus*, &c.

§ 386. They returned each man      In suam quisque urbem redie-  
to his own city.                      runt.  
He has leisure for studying      Philosophiae vacat.  
philosophy.  
It is all over with the state.      Actum est de republicā.  
For four years I have been the      Quartum jam annum Socratem  
pupil of Socrates.                      audio.

§ 387. I fear he *will* come.              Vereor nē veniat.  
I fear he *will not* come.              Vereor ut (*or* ne non) veniat.  
I feared he *would* come.              Verebar nē veniret.  
I feared he *would not* come.              Verebar ut (*or* ne non) veniret.

§ 388. I have no reason to find fault with old age.

I have no reason to fear you.

§ 389. Whether this news is true or false, I shall set out at dawn.

Whether this news is true or false is uncertain.

I wish to ascertain whether we are conquerors or conquered.

I wish to act honourably, whether we are conquerors or conquered.

*Note.* 'Whether' introducing a *supposition* is *sive*; when Interrogative it is *utrum*.

§ 390. He is the best poet in all the world.

*All the best citizens* are accused of theft.

The pleasantest days are *always* the shortest.

§ 391. Hating the Trojans to a man.

*Note.* *Exosus*, *hating*, *perosus*, *hating*, and sometimes *pertaesus*, *weary of*, though Passive Participles in form, are used Actively and take an Accusative.

§ 392. Romulus slew Remus.  
Remus was slain by Romulus.

We need medicine.

Medicine is needed by us.

They envy Cotta.

Cotta is envied by them.

Nihil habeo quod incūsem senectutem.

Non est cur te timeam.

Sive verā sive falsā haec sunt, primā luce proficiscar.

Utrum vera an falsa haec sint incertum est.

Utrum victōres an victi simus cognoscere volo.

Honeste agere volo, sive victores sive victi sumus.

Poeta est qualis toto orbe terrarum nemo.

Optimū quisque cīvis furti accusātur.

Jucundissimū quisque dies brevissimū est.

Exosus ad unum Trojanos.

Romulus Remum interfecit.

Remus a Romulo interfectus est.

Medicinae indigemus.

Medicinae a nobis indiget.

Cottae invident.

Cottae ab iis invidetur.

*Rule.* In transposing from Active to Passive form in Latin, (a) If the Verb has a Direct Object, this will become Subject of the Passive Verb, (b) if otherwise, the Verb will become Impersonal (e.g. *pugnant*, *they fight*, becomes *ab iis pugnatur*), and if any Case follows, it will be the one which the Verb governed in the Active Voice, as *medicinae* [Gen.], and *Cottae* [Dat.], in the above examples.

§ 393. (*Latin Letter.*)

Cambridge, October 18.

My dear Marcus,

I am writing in great haste, as the post is just going out. I arrived here yesterday, and have visited most places of interest in the town; but it would be impossible in this hurried letter to do justice to its numerous and splendid buildings, and indeed it is not worth while attempting to do so, as you will, I expect, be here yourself in a few days, which I am very glad of. I am quite well and hope to have an equally good account of you. Give my love to all at home, and

Believe me, Your affectionate brother,  
Quintus.

Quintus Marco S. D. P.

S. V. B. E. E. V. Summa festinatione scribebam, carissime frater, quod in eo erat ut tabellarius proficisceretur. Huc heri perveni, et quae in oppido digna visu sunt pleraque inspexi, sed neque raptim scribenti tot tantaque aedificia satis describere licet, neque enim operae pretium est id facere conari, quod te ipsum intra paucos dies adfore arbitror, quae res me vehementer delectat. Te tuosque multum amamus. Vale.

Data (or dabam) a. d. xv. Kal. Nov. Cantabrigiae.

Observe, in regard to the Latin of the above letter,

(a) The letters S. D. P. are for *Salutem Dicit Plurimam*. We might also write *Quintus Marco S.*, or *Quintus Marco* alone.

(b) The letters S. V. B. E. E. V. are for *Si Vales Bene Est, Ego Valeo*, and are the Latin equivalent for the words, 'I am quite well, and hope to have an equally good account of you,' which form part of the *conclusion* of the English letter. The words corresponding to 'your affectionate brother Quintus,' with which the English letter ends, also appear quite early in the Latin letter.

(c) In the epistolary style the Latin writer often has in his eye the time when the letter will be read, and therefore, instead of the Present and Perfect, uses the Imperfect and Pluperfect in reference to events in progress or just completed at the time of writing, those being the tenses which the *receiver* would use in reference to such events. Hence *scribebam* and *erat* in the letter given above. On the contrary, everything which is said in general terms and without particular reference to the time of composing the letter is put in the usual tense. Hence *perveni*, *sunt*, *inspexi*, &c. (See *Madvig*, § 345.)

(d) The date and place of writing appear at the foot of a Latin letter, and not, as is more usual with us, at the beginning. With *data*, or *dabam*, supply *tabellario*.

## CONDITIONAL OR HYPOTHETICAL SENTENCES.

§ 394. Sentences containing a Conditional clause (§ 199 *e*) may be divided into three classes.

(a) Where the condition is *assumed to be a fact*, and we wish to state what the consequence is. The usual formula is

Si haec facis, peccas.

(Greek. εἰ ταῦτα δράς, ἀμαρτάνεις.)

If you do this, you sin.

(b) Where the condition is assumed, as (1) *likely*, (2) *possible*, and we wish to state what the consequences (1) *will be*, (2) *would be*, respectively. The formulas are

1. Si haec facies, peccabis.

(εἰ ταῦτα δράσεις, ἀμαρτήσῃ.)

Si haec feceris, peccabis.

(ἐὰν ταῦτα δράσῃς, ἀμαρτήσῃ.)

If you do this, you will sin. (See § 298.)

2. Si haec facias, pecces.

(εἰ ταῦτα δράῃς, ἀμαρτάνῃς ἄν.)

If you were to do this (at any time), you would sin.

(c) Where the condition is assumed as (1) *not taking place now*, (2) *not having taken place previously*, and we wish to state what the consequences (1) *would be*, (2) *would have been*, respectively. The formulas are

1. Si haec faceres, peccares.

(εἰ ταῦτα ἔδρας, ἡμάρτανες ἄν.)

If you were doing this (now), you would sin (or be sinning)<sup>1</sup>.

2. Sic haec fecisses, peccasses.

(εἰ ταῦτα ἔδραρας, ἡμάρτες ἄν.)

If you had done this, you would have sinned.

§ 395. In Oratio Obliqua these forms are

(a) Ait te, si haec facias, peccare.

(b) Ait te, si haec { facias } peccaturum esse.

(c) 1. Aiebat te, si haec faceres, peccaturum esse.

2. Aiebat te, si haec fecisses, peccaturum fuisse.

<sup>1</sup> Si with Imperfect Subjunctive denotes *continuous* action, and as a rule refers to present time. But sometimes it refers to past time, and then (in default of an exact English equivalent) we must translate 'If he had done (or been doing) this, he would have sinned.'



PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN<sup>1</sup>.

§ 396. Latin was probably pronounced as follows:—

## (1) Vowels.

*ā* like the *a* in *father*; *ǣ* like the *a* in *along*.

*ē* like the *e* in *pane*; *ĕ* like the *e* in *men*.

*ī* like the *i* in *machine*; *ĭ* like the *i* in *pity*.

*i* preceded by a vowel was probably pronounced like *y*: thus *maior, eius, Troia, cuius* [often written *major, ejus, Troja, cujus*] are pronounced *mā-yor, ē-yus, Trō-ya, cū-yus*.

*ō* like the *oa* in *moat*; *ŏ* like the *o* in *cot*.

*ū* like the *u* in *rule*, not with a *y*-sound prefixed as in *mule*; *ũ* like the *u* in *put*, not as in *cut*.

*y* as German *ü*, the sound inclining to *i*.

(2) Diphthongs. The rule is to pronounce each constituent vowel as rapidly as possible. This will give—

*ae* as the *ai* in *bail*.

*au* as the *ow* in *power*.

*oe* as the *oy* in *boy*, the *o* being more distinct than the *e*.

*ui* (in *huic, cui*) as French *oui*.

## (3) Consonants.

*c* was always pronounced as *k*; *g* as *g* in *get*.

*ng* as *ng + g*, as in *anger*, not as in *banger*.

*r* was always trilled; thus *per* is sounded as in *perry*, not as in *pert*.

*s* was almost always sharp [as the *s* of *sin*]; in a few words where the *s* comes between two vowels, as *rosa, musa, miser*, it had a soft sound like *z*.

*t* was pronounced as it is in English, except that it never had the sound of *sb* when followed by *io*.

*ch* was sounded as *k* followed by *h*.

*bs, bt* were sounded as *ps, pt*, and were often so written, as *aps, supter*.

*v* perhaps as *w*. *qu* as in English.

<sup>1</sup> Originally these rules were founded on the Syllabus of Latin pronunciation (Deighton and Bell, Cambridge: Parker, Oxford), drawn up in 1873 at the request of Head Masters of Schools. They have now been altered in order to admit some of the views propounded in Roby's Latin Grammar, §§ 29-82. The question is still open to so much doubt and uncertainty that the reader who desires detailed information must consult the works above mentioned, and other treatises on the subject.





# I. INDEX OF SUBJECTS

\*\* The figures refer to Sections. In a few instances the page has also been given, in order to facilitate reference.

- Abbreviations, 176-7.
- Ablative Absolute, 123, 262, 302-3.
- Ablative Case, 9; Definition of the, 120; Various uses of the, 121; Prepositions governing the, 122, 348-363; Absolute, 123, 262, 302-303; Verbs governing the, 124; Adjectives governing the, 125; Substantives governing the, 126, 263; Examples of the, 255-263.
- Ablative Plural, of First Declension in -abus, 156*d*; of Fourth Declension in -ubus, 159*b*.
- Accusative and Infinitive, 112.
- Accusative Case, 9; Definition of the, 108; of the Direct Object, 109; Other uses of the, 110; Prepositions governing the, 111, 318-347; Verbs taking two, 114; Examples of the, 240-246.
- Accusing, Verbs of, 131 (2).
- Acquitting, Verbs of, 131 (2).
- Active Voice, 38; Rule for transposing to Passive, 392.
- Adjectives, 5, 20-23; Comparison of, 24-27, 162; Notes on, 161; Rule for Concord of, 95*b*; used Adverbially, 82, 241, 307.
- Admonishing, Verbs of, 131 (2).
- Adverbial Numerals, 164.
- Adverbs, 5, 81; Comparison of, 28, 162*d*; Derivation of, 82.
- Adversative Conjunctions, 84 (1)*c*.
- Advising, construction after Verbs of, 301.
- Agent, Ablative of the, 121*m*; Dative of the, 117*e*, 142.
- 'All,' 229 *note*, 390.
- Allowing, construction after Verbs of, 118*c*, 301.
- Alphabet, 1.
- Anacoluthon, 183.
- Anapaest, 184.
- Anomalous, Verbs, 59; Substantives, 163.
- Antepenultima, 179.
- Antithesis, 182.
- 'Any,' 314.
- Aorist, 42; definition of, 181; Indicative, translation of, 65.
- Aphaeresis, 182.
- Apocope, 182.
- Apodosis, 181.
- Apposition, definition of, 98; Kinds of, 99; Rule for Case of, 100; Examples of, 230-234.
- Arsis, 184.
- Article, 6.
- 'As,' 313.
- Asking, construction with Verbs of, 114, 244, 301.
- Assimilation, 182.
- Asyndeton, 183.
- 'At a Place,' 104, 239.

- Attraction, examples of, 218 *note*, 219 *note*, 221, 227-8, 232.  
 Author, Genitive of the, 129 *a*.  
 Auxiliary Verb, the, 46; Omission of the, 382.  
 -ax, Verbals in, with Genitive, 265 *note* 2.  
 -bilis, Verbal Adjectives in, with Dative of Agent, 117 *e*.  
 Caesura, 184.  
 Calendar, the Roman, 170-172.  
 Cardinal Numerals, 164; Notes on the, 165 *a*.  
 Cases, 9; Syntax of the, 108-131.  
 Catalectic, 184.  
 Catechism of Latin Syntax, 86-148.  
 Causal Conjunctions, 84 (ii), 199 *d*.  
 Cause, Ablative of, 121 *l*; Genitive of, 129 *h*.  
 Clauses, Principal and Subordinate, 93-4; Varieties of Subordinate Clause, 199.  
 Cognate Accusative, 110 *a*, 240.  
 Commanding, construction with Verbs of, 118 *c*, 301.  
 Common Gender, 8, 180; List of Nouns of, 154 *b*.  
 Comparative Conjunctions, 84 (ii), 199 *g*.  
 Comparative Table of Verbs in Greek, Latin, English, &c., 58.  
 Comparison, of Adjectives, 24-27, 162 *a*, *b*, *c*; of Adverbs, 28, 162 *d*; Ablative of, 121 *c*, 257.  
 Complement of the Verb, 99 *note*.  
 Complementary Infinitive, 273.  
 Composite Subject, rules for the, 217-219.  
 Compound Sentence defined, 92.  
 Concessive Conjunctions, 84 (ii), 199 *f*.  
 Concords, rules of the three, 95, 209-229.  
 Condemning, Verbs of, 131.  
 Conditional Conjunctions, 84 (ii), 199 *e*.  
 Conditional Sentences, 394-5.  
 Conjugations, 44; Examples of the, 48-55; Comparative table of endings of the, 56.  
 Conjunctions, 5, 84; Co-ordinative, 84 (i); Subordinative, 84 (ii), 199.  
 Conjunctive Mood, 202 *note*.  
 Consecutive Conjunctions, 84 (ii), 199 *b*.  
 Consonants, 2.  
 Constructio ad sensum, 183; Examples of, 216, 220.  
 Construing, Elementary rules for, 86-89.  
 Contraction in Perfect, &c., Tenses, 68.  
 Contriving, construction after Verbs of, 301.  
 Convicting, Verbs of, 131.  
 Co-ordinate Sentences, 84 (i) *note*.  
 Co-ordinative Conjunctions, 84 (i).  
 Copulative Conjunctions, 84 (i) *a*.  
 Copulative Verbs, 96-7, 230-234.  
 Cursive Letters, 178.  
 Dactyl, 184.  
 Dates, how expressed, 165 *b* (4), 236 *note* 2.  
 Dative Case, 9; Definition of the, 115; Words that can take a, 116; Various kinds of, 117; Verbs governing the, 118; Passive use of Verbs governing the, 119; Double, 252 *note*; various examples of the, 247-254.  
 Dative Plural, of First Declension in -abus, 156 *d*; of Fourth Declension in -abus, 159 *b*.  
 Dativus Commodi, 117 *a*, 247.  
 Declension defined, 13.  
 Declensions, the five, 14; Examples of the, 15-19; Notes on the, 156-160.  
 Defective Nouns, 163 *e*, *f*, *g*, *h*, *j*, *k*.  
 Defective Verbs, 74.  
 Definition, Genitive of, 129 *c*, 266.  
 Definitive Pronouns, 34.  
 Demonstrative Pronouns, 33; English use of the, 315-6.  
 Dentals, 178.

- Dependent Sentences, 91.  
 Deponent Verbs, 40; Conjugation of, 57; Perfect Participle of, used Passively, 57 (p. 66); Irregular, 153.  
 Depriving, Verbs of, 124; Adjectives of, 125.  
 Derived Nouns, terminations of, 168-9.  
 Derived Verbs, 75.  
 Desiderative Verbs, 75 *b*, 152 *e*.  
 Diaeresis, 184.  
 -dicus, Comparison of Adjectives in, 26 *d*.  
 Difference, Dative of, 117 *d*, 250.  
 Diminutive Nouns, 168 *b*.  
 Diminutive Verbs, 75 *d*.  
 Diphthongs, 3.  
 Direct Object, Accusative of the, 109; Genitive of the, 127, 129 *e*, 264-5.  
 Direct Sentence, kinds of, 90.  
 Disjunctive Conjunctions, 84 (i) *b*.  
 Distributive Numerals, 164; Notes on the, 165 *c*.  
 Divisions of Letters, 2; further list of, 178.  
 Double Accusative, 114, 244-6.  
 Double Dative, 252 *note*.  
 Double Letters, 178.  
 Doubtful Gender, Nouns of, 180.  
 Dubitative Subjunctive, 198 *c*.  
 Duration of Time, 101, 235.  
 Echthipsis, 184.  
 Elementary Rules for Construing, 86-89.  
 Ellipse, 183.  
 Elliptic Genitive, 130.  
 Enallage, 183.  
 Enclitic, 179.  
 Enriching, Verbs of, 124; Adjectives of, 125.  
 Epicene Gender, 180.  
 -er, Comparison of Adjectives in, 26 *a*.  
 Ethic Dative, 117 *b*.  
 Etymological Figures, 182.  
 Exclamation, Accusative of, 110 *g*, 380.  
 Exclamatory Infinitive, 277.  
 Explanation of certain Grammatical Terms, 178-184.  
 -ficus, Comparison of Adjectives in, 26 *d*.  
 Fifth Declension, example of, 19; Gender of the, 155 *e*; Notes on the, 160; Anomalous Nouns of the, 163.  
 Final Conjunctions, 84 (ii), 199 *a*.  
 Final Syllables, Quantity of, 186.  
 Finite Verb, 41; Rule for Concord of, 95 *a*; of the Sentence, how found, 87.  
 First Conjugation, example of, 48, 52; Irregular Verbs of the, 149; Deponents of the, 153 *a*.  
 First Declension, example of, 15; Gender of the, 155 *a*; Notes on the, 156; Anomalous Nouns of the, 163.  
 Flexion, of Nouns, 12; of Verbs, 44.  
 Foot, 184.  
 Forbidding, construction after Verbs of, 301.  
 Fourth Conjugation, Examples of, 51, 55; Irregular Verbs of the, 152; Deponents of the, 153 *d*.  
 Fourth Declension, 18; Gender of the, 155 *d*; Notes on the, 159; Anomalous Nouns of the, 163.  
 Fractions, how expressed, 165 *b* (5).  
 Frequentative Verbs, 75 *c*.  
 'From a Place,' 103, 238.  
 Full, Verbs of being, 124; Adjectives of being, 125, 265 *note* 2.  
 Future Infinitive Passive, how formed, 137.  
 Future Subjunctive, how formed, 47 (p. 22); *also* 49, 50, 51, 52 (pp. 28, 32, 36, 40).  
 Future Time in Subordinate Clauses, 298.  
 Gender, 8; Rules of, 154-5.  
 Genitive Case, 9; Definition of the,

- 127; distinction between Subjective and Objective, 128; classification of uses of the, 129; Verbs governing the, 124 *note*, 131; Adjectives governing the, 125 *footnote*, 248, 265; Examples of the, 264-268.
- Genitive of the Second Declension, 16.
- Genitive Plural, of the First Declension in -um, 156 *c*; of the Second Declension in -um, 157 *c*; of the Third Declension, how formed, 158 *g*.
- Gerundive, used for Gerund + Object, 138-9; Neuter Impersonal Construction of, 140-1; takes Dative of the Agent, 142; Examples of, 279-281; in -undus for -endus, 72.
- Gerunds, Definition of the, 135; Syntax of the, 138-9; Examples of the, 278-9.
- Greek Nouns, declension of, 156 *a*, 157 *a*, 158 *h*.
- Gutturals, 178.
- 'Having,' Rule for, 302-3.
- Hendiadys, 183.
- Hepthemineral Caesura, 184.
- Heteroclit Nouns, 163 *b*.
- Heterogeneous Nouns, 163 *c*.
- Hexameter, 184.
- Historic Infinitive, 276.
- Historic Present, 208.
- Historic Tenses, 42.
- Hoping, rule for Verbs of, 381.
- Hortative Subjunctive, 198 *e*.
- Hypallage, 183.
- Hypothetical Sentences, 394-5.
- Hypothetical Subjunctive, 198 *b*.
- Iambus, 184.
- Ides, 170.
- ilis, Comparison of Adjectives in, 26 *b*.
- Imparissyllabic, 180.
- Imperative Subjunctive, 198 *e*.
- Imperatives, note on certain, 70; Various ways of forming, 378.
- Imperfect Indicative, translation of, 64.
- Impersonal Passive Construction, 39, 80.
- Impersonal Verbs, definition of, 62; List of, 78-80; Syntax of, 132-3; Examples of, 269-272.
- Inceptive Verbs, definition of, 75 *a*; how conjugated, 151 *j*.
- Indeclinable Nouns, 163 *d*; Gender of, 154 *a*.
- Indefinite Pronouns, 37, 166-7.
- Indirect (*or* Oblique) Command, 200 *c*, 202.
- Indirect Object, Dative of the, 115-16, 247-8.
- Indirect (*or* Oblique) Question, 200 *b*, 202.
- Indirect (*or* Oblique) Sentence, 91.
- Indirect (*or* Oblique) Statement, 200 *a*, 202.
- Infinite Verb, 41.
- Infinitive Mood, Definition of, 134-137; Various uses of the, 273-277.
- Inflexions, 12.
- 'Instead of,' 311.
- Instrument, Ablative of, 120 *c*.
- Interest, Roman, 174.
- Interjections, 5, 85, 380.
- Interrogative Forms of the Verb, 60, 292-294.
- Interrogative Pronouns, declension of, 36, 166-7.
- Interrogative Pronouns and Particles, list of, 60 *f*; require Subjunctive in *Oratio Obliqua*, 200 *b*.
- Intransitive Verbs, 39; Impersonal and Passive use of, 80, 119.
- io, -ior, Verbs of 3rd Conjugation in, 50 (p. 35), 57 (p. 66).
- Irregular Comparison of Adjectives, 27.
- Jussive Subjunctive, 198 *e*.
- Kalends, 170.
- Kindred Meaning, Accusative of, 110 *a*, 240.

- Labials, 178.  
 Letter, specimen of a Latin, 393.  
 Letters, divisions of the, 2, 178.  
 Limitation, Accusative of, 110 *b*, 241.  
 Liquids, 178.  
 Locative Case, 105-6, 120 *note* 2, 239, 258.  
 Manner, Ablative of, 121 *k*.  
 Matter, Ablative of, 121 *h*.  
 Measure, of Space, 107; Ablative of, 121 *g*, 260-1.  
 Measure *or* Metre, 184.  
 Metathesis, 182.  
 Metre *or* Measure, 184.  
 Miscellaneous Latin phrases, 364-393.  
 Money and Weights, Roman, 173-175.  
 Moods, 41.  
 Motion to, 102, 237.  
 Multiplicative Numerals, 164.  
 'Must,' how translated, 140-142.  
 Mutes, 178.  
 Nasals, 178.  
 Neuter Passive Verbs, 76.  
 Neuter Verbs, definition of, 39.  
 Neutral Passive Verbs, 77.  
 Nones, 170.  
 Notes, on the Conjugations, 61-73; on the Declensions, 156-161; on the Numerals, 165.  
 Noun, the, 5 *note*, 7-13.  
 Nouns, Anomalous, 163 *a*; Heteroclite, 163 *b*; Heterogeneous, 163 *c*; Indeclinable, 163 *d*; Defective in the Singular, 163 *e, f, g, h*; used only in the Singular, 163 *j*; used only in the Plural, 163 *k*; having a different meaning in the Plural, 163 *l*; various classes of, 180.  
 Number, 7, 43.  
 Numeral and Quasi-Numeral Adjectives, declension of, 23.  
 Numeral Adjectives and Adverbs, list of, 164; Notes on the, 165.  
 Object, 39; Accusative of the Direct, 108-9; Indirect, 115-6, 127-8.  
 Objective Genitive, 128, 129 *e, f, g*, 264-5.  
 Oblique Cases, 10.  
 Oblique Command, 200 *c*, 202.  
 Oblique Question, 200 *b*, 202.  
 Oblique Sentence defined, 91.  
 Oblique Statement, 200 *a*, 202.  
 'Of,' 304-307.  
 Old Latin Forms, of the Verb, 69; of the Noun, 156 *b*.  
 Optative Subjunctive, 198 *d*.  
 Oratio Obliqua, definition of, 91; Rule for Principal Clauses of, 200; Rule for Subordinate Clauses of, 201; Rule for Speeches Reported in, 202.  
 Oratio Recta, 90; Subjunctive in Principal Clauses of, 198; Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses of, 199.  
 Ordinal Numerals, 164; Notes on the, 165 *b*.  
 Origin, Ablative of, 121 *b*, 256.  
 Parisyllabic, 180.  
 Parsing Forms, 187-195.  
 Participle, ways of translating by a, 317.  
 Participles of Passive form used Actively, 57, 302 *c*, *note* 2, 391.  
 Particles, 5 *note*, 81-85.  
 Partition, Genitive of, 129 *b*, 267, 366.  
 Partitive Adjective, Gender of, 267 *note* 2.  
 Parts of Speech, 5.  
 Passive Impersonals, 80.  
 Passive use of Verbs governing the Dative, 119, 254.  
 Passive Voice, 38; Rule for transposing from Active to, 392.  
 Patronymics, 156 *a*, *note*; formation of, 168 *b* (7).  
 Pentameter, 184.  
 Penthemimeral Caesura, 184.  
 Penultima, 179.

Perfect Participle Active, how translated into Latin, 302-3.

Periphrastic Conjugation, 73.

Person, 43.

Personal Pronouns, 30.

Place, Rules of, 102-106, 237-239.

Place whence, 103, Ablative of, 120 *a*.

Place where, 104, Ablative of, 120 *b*, 255.

Pleonasm, 183.

Point of Time, 101, 236.

Possessive Pronouns, 32.

Possessor, Dative of the, 117 *c*, 249; Genitive of the, 129 *a*.

Potential Subjunctive, 198 *a*.

Predicate, definition of, 88 *note*; Dative of the, 117 *g*, 252-3.

Prepositions, 5, 83; governing Accusative, 111; governing Ablative, 122; Meanings of the, 318-363.

Present Indicative, meanings of, 63.

Present Subjunctive, meanings of, 66.

Price, Ablative of, 121 *d*, 259, 370.

Primary Tenses, 42.

Principal Clauses, 93; of Oratio Obliqua, 200.

Principal Parts of the Verb, 45.

Prolative Infinitive, 273.

Prolepsis, 183.

Promising, rule for Verbs of, 381.

Pronouns, 5, 29-37; Table of Relative Interrogative, and Indefinite, 166-7.

Pronunciation of Latin, 396.

Proper Names, Abbreviations of, 176.

Proportional Numerals, 164 *f*.

Prosody, 184.

Prothesis, 181.

Purpose, Dative of, 117 *f*; Genitive of, 266; Clauses expressing a, 199 *a*; Infinitive never used to express a, 300 *note*.

Pyrrhic, 184.

Quality, Ablative of, 121 *j*; Genitive of, 107 *note*, 129 *d*.

Quantity, defined, 4; Laws of, 185-6.

Quasi-Numeral Adjectives, 23.

Quasi-Passive Verbs, 77.

Questions: *see* under 'Interrogative.'

-re for -ris, Note on 71.

Reciprocal Pronoun, 328 *note*.

Reduplication, 149 *c*, *note*.

Reflexive Pronoun, 31; Rule for use of the, 291.

Relative Pronoun, 35, 166-7; Rule for Concord of, 95 *c*; Examples of Concord of, 222-229; Rule for Mood after, 143; Examples of Mood after, 282-285.

Reminding, Verbs of, 131.

Respect, Accusative of, 110 *c*, 242-3; Ablative of, 121 *f*, 256; Genitive of, 129 *h*.

Roman Calendar, 170-172.

Roman Weights and Money, 173-175.

Root, 180.

Scansion, 184.

Second Conjugation, example of, 49, 53; Irregular Verbs of the, 150; Deponents of the, 153 *b*.

Second Declension, examples of, 16; Gender of the, 155 *b*; Notes on the, 157; Anomalous Nouns of the, 163.

Semi-Deponent Verbs, 76, 150 *f*, 151 *k*.

Sentence, Varieties of the, 90-94; Conditional, or Hypothetical, 394-5.

Separation, Ablative of, 121 *a*, 256; Dative of, 117 *d*, 250.

Sequence of Tenses, 148; Additional Notes on the, 204-208.

Simple Sentence, kinds of, 90.

'So,' 'such,' 'as,' 313.

'Some,' 'any,' 314.

Speeches reported in Oratio Obliqua, 202.

Spirants, 178.

Spondee, 184.

- Stem, 11.  
 Stems of the Third Declension, 158 *a*.  
 Striving, construction after Verbs of, 301.  
 Strong Caesura, 184.  
 Subject, definition of the, 88; how found, 89; Nominative of the, 89; Accusative of the, 108; Rules for the Composite, 217-219.  
 Subjective Genitive, 128, 264.  
 Subjunctive Mood, 41; Present Tense of, 66; Other Tenses of, 67; Notes on the, 196-208; in Principal Clauses of Oratio Recta, 198; in Subordinate Clauses of Oratio Recta, 199; in Principal Clauses of Oratio Obliqua, 200; in Subordinate Clauses of Oratio Obliqua, 201; Potential use of the, 198 *a*; Hypothetical use of the, 198 *b*; Dubitative use of the, 198 *c*; Optative use of the, 198 *d*; Jussive, Hortative, or Imperative use of the, 198 *e*; differs from Conjunctive, 202 *note*; used to denote an alleged reason or act, 203.  
 Subjunctive Tenses, translation of, 66-7.  
 Subordinate Clauses, 93-4; Mood of in Oratio Recta, 199; Mood of in Oratio Obliqua, 201.  
 Subordinative Conjunctions, 84 (ii), 199.  
 Substantives, Declension of, 14-19; Anomalous and other, 163.  
 'Such,' 313.  
 Supines, 136; Rule for Supine in -u, 379.  
 Syllables, names of, 179; Quantity of, 185-6.  
 Synaeresis, 184.  
 Synaloepha, 184.  
 Syncope, 182.  
 Synesis, 183.  
 Syntactical Figures, 183.  
 Syntax, Elementary Catechism of, 86-148.  
 Temporal Conjunctions, 84 (ii), 199 *c*.  
 Tenses, 42.  
 Terminations, 12; of Derived Verbs, 75; of Derived Nouns, 168-9.  
 Terms used by Grammarians, 178-184.  
 'That,' Rule for, 113.  
 'That of,' 'those of,' 316.  
 'The,' 308.  
 Thesis, 184.  
 Third Conjugation, example of, 50, 54; Table of Verbs of the, 151; Deponents of the, 153 *c*.  
 Third Declension, examples of, 17; Gender of the, 155 *c*; Stems of the, 158 *a*; Accusative and Ablative of the, 158 *b, c, d, e, f*; Genitive Plural of the, 158 *g*; Greek Nouns of the, 158 *h*; Anomalous Nouns of the, 163.  
 Third Person Singular, 61.  
 Three Concords, the, 95, 209-229.  
 Time, Ablative of, 121 *e*; Rules for Duration and Point of, 101, 235-6.  
 Tmesis, 182.  
 'To,' 300-301.  
 'To a Place,' 102, 237.  
 'Too,' 312.  
 Transitive Verbs, 39.  
 Tribrach, 184.  
 Trochee, 184.  
 Ultima, 179.  
 Uncial Letters, 178.  
 Unipersonals, 78; Syntax of the, 132.  
 us, preceded by a Vowel, Comparison of Adjectives in 26 *c*.  
 Value, Genitive or Locative of, 120 *b, note 2*, 258, 272.  
 Varieties of the Sentence, 90-94.  
 Verbs, 5; Conjugations of, 38-80; Anomalous, 59; Interrogative Forms of, 60; Notes on the Conjugations of, 61-73; Defective,



- 74; Derived, 75; Inceptive, 75 *a*;  
 Desiderative, 75 *b*; Frequentative,  
 75 *c*; Diminutive, 75 *d*; Semi-  
 Deponent or Neuter Passive, 76;  
 Quasi-Passive or Neutral Passive,  
 77; Impersonal, 78-80; Table of,  
 149-153; Terms used with re-  
 ference to some, 181.  
 Vocative of the Second Declension,  
 16 (p. 5).  
 Voice, 38.  
 -volus, Comparison of Adjectives in,  
 26 *d*.
- Vowels, 2.  
 Wanting, Verbs of, 124, 131;  
 Adjectives of, 125, 265 *note* 2.  
 Weak Caesura, 184.  
 Weights and Money, Roman, 173-  
 175.  
 'Whether,' 389.  
 'Without,' 309.  
 'Would' in Oblique Sentences,  
 295-6.  
 Zeugma, 183.

## II. INDEX OF LATIN WORDS

\*\* This Index is for the most part restricted to such words as have peculiarities of inflexion or construction. See Preface to this edition.

The figures refer to sections. In a few instances the page has also been given, in order to facilitate reference.

The following abbreviations are used :—

ci = alicui.  
cpds = compounds.  
cs = alicujus.  
ftnt = footnote.  
p. = page.

qa = aliqua.  
qd = aliquid.  
qm = aliquem.  
qo = aliquo.  
w. = with.

- a, ab, 16 *note*, 103, 121  
m, 122, 348.  
abdicare se, 256.  
abeo, 59 (5) *note*.  
abest ut, 200 a, 311.  
absiste moveri, 378.  
absque, 122, 349.  
abstineo cs, 268.  
abstuli, 59 (p. 73 *ftnt*).  
absum, 47 (p. 25).  
abunde cs rei, 366.  
ac, atque, 84 (i) a.  
accedit, 79.  
accidit, 79, 200 a.  
accipiter, 158 a, g.  
accuso qm cs rei, 129 g,  
131 (2).  
acer, 22.  
actum est de qa re, 386.  
ad, 7, 102, 111, 320.  
adeo (*go to*), 59 (5)  
*note*.  
adeo (*to such a degree*),  
311.  
adol-eo, -esco, 150 b.  
adolescens, 162 c.  
adsum, 47 (p. 25).  
adver-sum, -sus, 111,  
321.  
aedes, 163 l.  
Aeneas, 156 a.  
aer, 158 h.  
aes, 155 c (1), 163 j.  
affero, 59 (p. 73 *ftnt*).  
affinis ci or cs, 248.  
ago and cpds, 151 d.  
aio, 74 a.  
alacer, 22.  
albère, 75 d.  
ales, 158 a, 161 a.  
aliquanto, 316 c.  
aliquantum, 314 b, 366.  
aliquid cs rei, 366.  
aliquis, 167, 314 a.  
aliquot, 314 b.  
alius, 23; alii... alii,  
314.  
allatum, 59 (p. 73 *ftnt*).  
alpha, 163 d.  
alter, 23.  
amabam, 64.  
amandum est, 143.  
amandum sum, eram,  
73.  
amāre, 68 *note* 1.  
amarier, 69 a.  
amassent, amasti, 68.  
amat, 61.  
amaturus sum, eram,  
73.  
amat-us, -a, -um est, 61.  
ambages, 163 e.  
anem, 66.  
amnis, 155 c (2), 158 d.  
amo, 48, 52, 56, 58, 63.  
amone, 60 a, 63.  
amussis, 158 b.  
an, 60 e, f, 248, 292-  
294.  
anceps, 161 b.  
Androgeos, 175 a.  
anguis, 154 b, 158 d.  
animal, 158 a, f, g.  
annalis, 155 c (2), 158 e.  
ante, 111, 318.

- antequam, 84 (ii).  
 antiquus, 26 c.  
 apage, 74 e.  
 apiscor, cpds of, 153 c.  
 Aprilis, 158 e, 172 *note* 4.  
 aptus qui, 284.  
 apud, 111, 319.  
 aqualis, 158 c.  
 arcus, 159 b.  
 armiger, 16.  
 artus, 159 b, 163 k.  
 as, 155 c (2), 158 a, 173.  
 asper, 21.  
 assiduus, 162 b.  
 assis, 258.  
 at, 84 (i) c.  
 Atheniensis, 158 e.  
 atque, ac, 84 (i) a.  
 Atrides, 156 a.  
 attinet ad, 313, 320 *note*.  
 attuli, 59 (p. 73 *flnt*).  
 audacter, 28.  
 audax, 25, 274.  
 audeo, 76, 150 f.  
 audibam, 69 b.  
 audi-bo, -bor, 69 c.  
 audii, audisti, 68.  
 audin, 60 a (*note*).  
 audio, 51, 55, 56.  
 audivissem, 67.  
 aufero, 59 (p. 73 *flnt*).  
 aut, 84 (i) b.  
 autem, 84 (i) c.  
 auxilium, 163 l.  
 avaritiae, 163 j.  
 ave or have, 74 e.  
 avidus, 129 f, 265 *note* 2.  
 avis, 158 a, d.  
 baccar, 158 a, f.  
 balne-ae, -um, 163 c.  
 belli, 106.  
 bellum, 16.  
 bellus, 162 d.  
 bene, 162 f.  
 bes, 158 a, 173.  
 beta, 163 d.  
 bicorpor, 161 a.  
 bilis, 158 d.  
 bis, 81, 164.  
 bissextus, 172 *note* 2.  
 bonus, 21, 27.  
 bos, 154 b, 158 a, 163 a.  
 brevis, 25.  
 buris, 158 b.  
 cado and cpds, 151 c, e.  
 caedo and cpds, 151 c, e.  
 caelum, 163 c.  
 calcar, 158 f, g.  
 calesco, 75 a.  
 cando and cpds, 151 e.  
 canis, 154 b, 158 g.  
 cannabis, 158 b.  
 cano and cpds, 151 c, f.  
 cantillo, 75 d.  
 canto, 75 c.  
 capio and cpds, 50 (p. 35), 151 d.  
 capiundus, 72.  
 caput, 17.  
 carbasus, 155 b, 163 c.  
 carcer, 158 a, 163 l.  
 carmen, 17.  
 casses, 163 k.  
 castrum, 163 l.  
 causā, 279, 300.  
 cave credas, &c., 378, 383.  
 cēdo, cētte, 74 e.  
 celeber, 22.  
 celer, 22.  
 cello and cpds, 151 a, f.  
 celo, 114.  
 cenatus, 302 c (*note* 2).  
 centum, 23, 163 d, 164.  
 ceterum, 84 (i) c.  
 (ceterus), 161 d.  
 cētte, 74 e.  
 Charybdis, 158 b.  
 circa, circum, 111, 322.  
 Circe, 156 a.  
 circiter, 322.  
 cis, citra, 111, 323.  
 citerior, citimus, 27.  
 civis, 154 b, 158 d.  
 civitas, 158 a, g.  
 clam, 122, 353.  
 clamito, 75 c.  
 claudo and cpds, 151 b.  
 clavis, 158 c.  
 coepi, 74 c, 377.  
 coeptus, 74 c (*note*), 377.  
 collatum, 59 (p. 73, *flnt*).  
 communis ei or es, 248.  
 (compes), 155 c (i), 158 a, g, 163 e.  
 complures, 161 c.  
 compos, 158 a, 161 a.  
 compostus, 68 *note* 2.  
 confero, 59 (p. 73, *flnt*).  
 conor, 301.  
 constat, 79.  
 consulo, 151 f, 247, 286.  
 contingit ut, 200 a.  
 contra, 111, 324.  
 convenit, 79.  
 copia, 163 l.  
 cor, 155 c (1), 158 a, g.  
 coram, 122, 350.  
 corniger, 21.  
 cos, 155 c (i), 158 a, g.  
 creatus qo, 256.  
 cretus qo, 256.  
 cubile, 17, 158 f.  
 cucumis, 158 b.  
 cudo and cpds, 151 e.  
 cujus, 32.  
 cum (when, &c.): see quum.  
 cum (with), 122, 354.  
 cumbo and cpds, 151 f.  
 cupidus es rei, 265 *note* 2, 278.  
 cupio, 50 (p. 35), 151 g.  
 cupressus, 163 b.  
 cur, 60 f.  
 curro and cpds, 151 c, e.  
 (daps), 163 k.  
 de, 122, 351.

- debeo, 377.  
 December, 158 *e*, 172  
*note 4*.  
 decet, dedecet, 79, 132.  
 defendo *ad ci*, 118 *c*  
*(note 1)*.  
 degener, 158 *a*, 161 *a*.  
 delecto, 118 *c* (*note 2*).  
 Delos, 157 *a*.  
 demens, 162 *e* (*note*).  
 dens, 155 *c* (2), 158 *g*.  
 deses, 158 *a*, 161 *a*.  
 desino, 268, 377, 378.  
 desisto *qā re*, 121 *a*.  
 desum, 47 (p. 25).  
 deterior, deterrimus,  
 27.  
 deunx, 173.  
 Deus, 16, 157 *b*.  
 dextans, 173.  
 dexter, 21, 27.  
 dextrā, 255.  
 dic, 70.  
 (dicio), 163 *b*.  
 dies, 19, 155 *e*, 160 *b*.  
 differo, 59 (p. 73, *ftnt*).  
 difficilis, 26 *b*.  
 digne, 28, 82.  
 dignor, 124.  
 dignus, 125, 284.  
 dilatum, 59 (p. 73,  
*ftnt*).  
 dispar, 161 *b*.  
 displicere *ci*, 118 *c*.  
 (dis), 162 *a*.  
 dissimilis, 26 *b*.  
 diu, 162 *f*.  
 diuturnus, 162 *c*.  
 diversus, 162 *d*.  
 dives, 158 *a*, 161 *a*, 162  
*a*, 256, 265.  
 divinitus, 82.  
 dixti, 68, *note 2*.  
 do *and cpds*, 149 *c*,  
 151 *c*.  
 dodrans, 173.  
 domi, 106.  
 domo, 103 *ftnt*.  
 domum, 102 *ftnt*.  
 domus, 155 *b*, *note 1*.  
 donec, 84 (ii), 199 *c*.  
 duc, 70.  
 duim, 69 *d*.  
 dulce, 82.  
 dum, 84 (ii), 147.  
 dummodo, 84 (ii), 147 *c*.  
 duo, 23, 164.  
 durus, 25.  
 e *or ex*, 103, 122, 355.  
 ecce, 85, 380.  
 ecquis, 167, 314 *c*.  
 edax, 265, *note 2*.  
 edim, 69 *d*.  
 editus *qo*, 256.  
 edo, 59 (7).  
 effero, 59 (p. 73, *ftnt*).  
 egenus, 162 *a*.  
 egeo, 131.  
 ego, 30.  
 egregius, 162 *b*.  
 eheu, 85.  
 elatum, 59 (p. 73 *ftnt*).  
 eleph-antus, -as, 163 *b* 2.  
 emo *and cpds*, 151 *d*.  
 en, 85, 380.  
 eo (*I go*), 59 (5); *and*  
*cpds*, 152 *a*.  
 eo (*thither*), 81, 267.  
 eo (*the*), 260, 261.  
 epul-ae, -uni, 163 *c*.  
 equester, 22.  
 erga, 111, 325.  
 esse, est, omission of,  
 382.  
 est ut, 200 *a*.  
 esurio, 75 *b*, 152 *e*.  
 et, 84 (i) *a*.  
 etsi, 84 (ii), 199 *f*.  
 evenit ut, 200 *a*.  
 ex *or e*, 103, 122, 355.  
 excuso *qd ci*, 118 *c*  
*(note 1)*.  
 exosus, 391.  
 expers *cs rei*, 265 *note*  
 2.  
 exterus, 27.  
 extinxem, 68 *note 2*.  
 extorris, 125.  
 extremus, 27, 299.  
 extra, 111, 326.  
 exulo, 77.  
 fac, 70, 378.  
 faciē, 160 *a*.  
 facilis, 26 *b*.  
 facio *and cpds*, 50 (p.  
 35), 151 *d*.  
 falsus, 162 *d*.  
 far, 158 *a*, *f*.  
 farcio, *cpds of*, 152 *c*.  
 fari, 74 *d*.  
 fas, 163 *d*.  
 fateor *and cpds*, 153 *b*.  
 (faux), 158 *g*, 163 *e*.  
 faxim, faxo, 68 *note 2*.  
 febris, 158 *c*.  
 feliciter, 82.  
 felix, 22.  
 femur, 163 *b* (i).  
 fendo *and cpds*, 151 *e*.  
 fer, 70.  
 fero, 59 (3); *cpds of*,  
 59, (p. 73, *ftnt*);  
*nouns compounded*  
*with*, 16, 21.  
 feror, 59 (4).  
 ferrum, 163 *j*.  
 ferus, 162 *e* (3).  
 ficus, 163 *b* (1).  
 fidē, 160 *a*.  
 (fides), 163 *g*.  
 fido, 76, 151 *k*.  
 fili, 16 *note* (p. 5).  
 filius, 16.  
 finis, 155 *c* (2), 158 *d*,  
 163 *l*.  
 fio, 59 (6), 77, 151 *d*  
*(ftnt)*.  
 fit, 79; fit ut, 200 *a*,  
 270.  
 flagito, 244.  
 fligo *and cpds*, 151 *a*.  
 flocci, 258.  
 flos, 17.  
 fodio, 50 (p. 35), 151 *e*.  
 fore ut, 295-6.

- foris, 106.  
 fors, 163*f*.  
 frango *and* cpds, 151*d*.  
 frater, 158*a*, 9.  
 fraudare, 75*d*.  
 frenum, 163*c*.  
 fetus, 125.  
 frugi, 162*a*, 163*d*.  
 frugifer, 21.  
 fruer, 124, 153*c*.  
 (frux), 163*h*.  
 fuge suspicari, 378.  
 fugio, 50 (p. 35), 151*d*.  
 fulminat, 79.  
 fungor, 124, 153*c*.  
 futurum esse, *or* fuisse,  
     ut, 295-6.  
 futurus sim *or* essem,  
     47 (p. 22).  
 gaudeo, 76, 150*f*, 275.  
 gener, 16.  
 genitus qo, 256.  
 genu, 18.  
 gero, 151*a*; nouns com-  
     pounded with, 16, 21.  
 glis, 155*c* (2), 158*a*, 9.  
 gnarus, 162*e* (3).  
 gnavus, 162*e* (3).  
 gracilis, 26*b*.  
 gradior *and* cpds, 57  
     (p. 66), 153*c*.  
 gratia, 163*l*.  
 gratulator qd ci, 118*c*  
     (note 1).  
 graviter, 28.  
 haud scio an, 304.  
 hebes, 158*a*, 161*b*.  
 hei, 380.  
 heres, 154*b*, 158*a*, 173.  
 heros, 158*h*.  
 heu, 85, 380.  
 heus, 85.  
 hic, 33.  
 horrendum, 82.  
 hospes, 158*a*, 161*a*.  
 hujus, 258.  
 humi, 106.  
 humilis, 26*b*.  
 ictus, 18.  
 idem, 34, 313.  
 idoneus, 26*c*, 284.  
 Idus, 155*d*, 170.  
 ignis, 155*c* (2), 158*d*.  
 ilia, 163*k*.  
 illatum, 59 (p. 73*fint*).  
 ille, 30 *note*, 33.  
 imber, 158*d*.  
 immemor, 161*a*.  
 impedimentum, 163*l*.  
 (impes), 163*f*.  
 impos, 158*a*, 161*a*.  
 imus, 27, 299.  
 in, 104, 111, 122, 344,  
     360.  
 inclitus, 162*d*.  
 indigeo, 131.  
 indignus, 125, 284.  
 indulgere ci, 118*c*.  
 iners, 162*e* (note).  
 infero, 59 (p. 73*fint*).  
 inferus, 27.  
 infra, 111, 327.  
 ingeni, 16 *note* (p. 5).  
 ingenium, 16.  
 ingens, 22, 162*c*.  
 injussu, 163*e*.  
 inops, 158*a*, 161*a*.  
 inquam, 74*b*.  
 insum, 47 (p. 25).  
 integer aevi, 129*h*.  
 inter, 7, 111, 328.  
 interest, 131, 133, 200  
     *a*, 271-2.  
 interior, intimus, 27.  
 (internecio), 163*h*.  
 interrogo, 244.  
 intersum, 47 (p. 25).  
 intimus, 27, 299.  
 intra, 111, 329.  
 intus, 162*f*.  
 invitus, 162*d*, 367.  
 io, 85.  
 ipse, 34.  
 irasci ci, 247.  
 is, 30 *note*, 33.  
 iste, 33.  
 iter, 17, 155*c* (1), 158*a*.  
 jacio *and* cpds, 50 (p.  
     35), 151*d*.  
 jecur, 163*b* (i).  
 jocus, 163*c*.  
 jubar, 158*a*, *f*.  
 jubeo, 118*c* (note 2),  
     150*c*, 301.  
 judex, 17.  
 jugerum, 163*b* (1).  
 jugul-us, -um, 163*b* (2).  
 Jupiter, 163*a*.  
 juratus, 302*c* (note 2).  
 jusjurandum, 163*a*.  
 jussu, 163*e*.  
 Juvenalis, 158*e*.  
 juvenis, (*adj.*), 27,  
     (*subst.*), 158*g*.  
 juxta, 111, 330.  
 Kalendae, 170-172.  
 lacio *and* cpds, 50 (p.  
     35), 151*a*.  
 lacer, 21.  
 laedo, 118*c* (note 2),  
     151*b*.  
 laevā, 255.  
 laurus, 163*b* (i).  
 legatus, 159*a*.  
 lego *and* cpds, 151*d*.  
 leo, 17.  
 lex, 17, 155*c* (2), 158*a*.  
 libenter, 82.  
 Liber, 16.  
 liber, 21, 125.  
 libet, 78, 132.  
 liceo, 77.  
 licet (*it is allowed*), 62,  
     78, 132, 200*a*, 234,  
     383; (*although*), 84  
     (ii).  
 lignum, 163*j*.  
 linquo *and* cpds, 151*d*.  
 linter, 155*c* (1), 158*a*,  
     *d*.  
 liquet, 78, 132.

- lis, 158 *a*, *g*.  
 littera, 163 *l*.  
 litus, 17, 158 *a*.  
 loco, locis, 255.  
 locuples, 158 *a*, 161 *a*.  
 locus, 163 *c*.  
 (ludicer or ludicrus),  
 161 *d*.  
 ludus, 163 *l*.  
 lues, 163 *g*.  
 lustrum, 163 *l*.  
 luxuri-a, -es, 163 *b* (2).  
 magis, 26 *c*, 260 *note* 2  
 magister, 16.  
 magni, 120 *note* 2, 258,  
 272.  
 magnopere, 162 *f*.  
 magnus, 27.  
 majores, 163 *k*.  
 male, 162 *f*.  
 malevolus, 26 *d*.  
 malo, 59 (2).  
 malus, 27.  
 manes, 163 *k*.  
 mare, 17, 158 *a*.  
 Martialis, 158 *e*.  
 mas, 158 *a*, *g*.  
 mater, 158 *a*, *g*.  
 maturus, 162 *a*.  
 matutinus, 366.  
 mea, 133, 271.  
 mecum, 222.  
 medio, 255.  
 medius, 255, 299.  
 mei, 264.  
 melior, 22, 27.  
 memento, 74 *c* (*note*).  
 meminī, 74 *c*, 131, 245.  
 memor, 158 *a*, 161 *a*,  
 265 *note* 2  
 mensa, 15.  
 mensis, 155 *c* (2), 158 *g*  
 (*fnl*).  
 meritis, 162 *d*.  
 messis, 158 *c*.  
 meus, 32, 264.  
 mi, 32 *note*.  
 mico *and* cpds, 149 *a*.  
 miles, 17, 158 *a*.  
 militiae, 106.  
 minor (*threaten*), 118 *c*,  
 374.  
 minoris, 258.  
 minus *cs* rei, 366.  
 mirus, 162 *e* (3).  
 miser, 21.  
 misereor, 131.  
 miserescō, 131.  
 miseret, 78, 132 (*note* 2),  
 270.  
 mitte sectari, 378.  
 moderor, 118 *c* (*note* 2).  
 monendum est, 140.  
 moneo, 49, 53, 56.  
 morior, 57 (*p*. 66),  
 153 *c*.  
 mos, 163 *l*.  
 multo, 121 *g*.  
 multum, 162 *f*.  
 multus, 27.  
 murus, 16.  
 mus, 155 *c* (3), 158 *a*, *g*.  
 mutare qd qā re, 259.  
 natu, 163 *e*.  
 natus qo, 121 *b*, 256.  
 nauci, 258.  
 navis, 158 *c*.  
 -nē, 60 *a*, *b*, *f*, 292-3.  
 nē, 84 (*ii*), 199 *a*, 301,  
 378.  
 ne credideris, 378.  
 ne quidem, 368.  
 ne quis, 314 *d*.  
 nec or neque, 84 (*i*) *a*.  
 nec quisquam, 314 *d*.  
 necesse est, 383.  
 necne, 293.  
 neco *and* cpds, 149 *a*.  
 nectar, 158 *a*, *f*.  
 nefas, 163 *d*.  
 nemo, 314 *d*, 384.  
 neptis, 158 *d*.  
 nequam, 27, 163 *d*.  
 neque or nec, 84 (*i*) *a*.  
 nequeo, 59 (5) *note*.  
 nescio quis, 167, 314 *a*.  
 neu quis, neve quis,  
 314 *d*.  
 neuter, 23.  
 niger, 21.  
 nihil habeo quod, 388.  
 nihili, 258.  
 nimis *cs* rei, 366.  
 (ninguo), 151 *a*.  
 nisi, 84 (*ii*), 199 *e*.  
 nix, 158 *a*, *g*.  
 nobiscum, 222.  
 noctu, 163 *e*.  
 nocturnus, 367.  
 noli contendere, 378.  
 nolo, 52 (2).  
 nolo dicas, 378.  
 non est cur, 388.  
 non modo—sed ne qui-  
 dem, 369.  
 non solum—sed etiam,  
 369.  
 Nonae, 170.  
 nonne, 60 *d*.  
 nonnihili, 314 *b*, 366.  
 nonnulli, 314 *b*.  
 norunt, 68.  
 nosco *and* cpds, 151 *g*.  
 noster, 32, 264.  
 nosti, 68.  
 nostri, 264.  
 nostrum, 264.  
 notus *cs* rei, 129 *h*.  
 November, 158 *e*, 172  
*note* 4.  
 novus, 162 *d*.  
 nubere, 118 *c*, 151 *a*.  
 nubes, 17.  
 nullius *for* neminis, 384.  
 nullo *for* nemine, 384.  
 nullus, 23.  
 num, 60 *c*, *f*, 292.  
 num quis, 167, 314 *c*.  
 nunc, 267 *note* 1.  
 nuper, 162 *f*.  
 nupta, 302 *c* (*note* 2).  
 ob, 111, 331.  
 (obex), 155 *c* (2), 163 *e*.  
 obliviscor, 131, 153 *c*.

- obstare quominus, 285, 370.  
 obsuin, 47 (p. 25).  
 occisum iri, 137.  
 oclor, 162 *a*.  
 October, 158 *e*, 172 *note* 4.  
 odi, 74 *c*.  
 offero, 59 (p. 73 *ftnt*).  
 omitte mirari, 378.  
 oneri ferendo esse, 251.  
 opera, 163 *l*.  
 opimus, 162 *c*.  
 oportet, 78, 132, 269.  
 (ops), 163 *g*, *l*.  
 opus (*work*), 16.  
 — (*need*), 125, 263.  
 orbis, 155 *c* (2), 158 *d*.  
 orior, 57 (p. 66), 153 *d*.  
 oriundus qo, 256.  
 oro, 244.  
 Orpheus, 158 *h*.  
 ortus qo, 256.  
 ostrea, 163 *c*.  
 osus, 74 *c* (*note*).  
 paenitet, 78, 132, 270.  
 palam, 122, 352.  
 palus, 155 *c* (3), 158 *a*, *g*.  
 pango *and* cpds, 151 *c*, *d*.  
 panis, 155 *c* (2), 158 *g*.  
 par, 158 *a*, 171 *b*, 162 *d*, 248.  
 parce timere, 378.  
 parens, 154 *b*, 158 *g*.  
 pario, 50 (p. 35), 151 *c*.  
 pars, 264.  
 partior, 57 (p. 66).  
 partus, 159 *b*.  
 parum, 162 *f*, 366.  
 parvi, 120, *note* 2, 258, 272.  
 parvus, 27.  
 pater, 158 *a*, *g*.  
 paterfamilias, 155 *b*, 163 *a*.  
 patior *and* cpds, 57 (p. 66), 153 *c*.  
 patruelis, 158 *d*.  
 pauper, 161 *a*, 265 *note* 2.  
 pedester, 22, 158 *a*.  
 pelagus, 155 *b*, 163 *j*.  
 Pelion, 157 *a*.  
 pello *and* cpds, 151 *c*, *e*.  
 pelvis, 158 *b*.  
 penates, 158 *g*.  
 pendo *and* cpds, 151 *c*, *e*.  
 penes, 111, 332.  
 penus, penum, 163 *b* (2).  
 per, 111, 338.  
 per qm stare quominus, 370.  
 Pergamus, 163 *c*.  
 peritus cs rei, 265 *note* 2.  
 perosus qm, 391.  
 pertaesum est, 78.  
 pertaesus qm, 391.  
 petii, 68.  
 peto, 151 *g*, 244.  
 piget, 78, 132.  
 pili, 258.  
 pinus, 163 *b* (1).  
 pius, 162 *b*.  
 placet ut, 200 *a*.  
 plaudo, 115 *b*, 151 *b*.  
 plebes, plebs, 163 *b* (2).  
 plenus, 265, *note* 2.  
 pleo *and* cpds, 150 *b*.  
 plico *and* cpds, 149 *a*.  
 pluit, 79.  
 plurimum cs rei, 366.  
 pluris, 258.  
 plus, 161 *c*, 366.  
 poesis, 158 *h*.  
 pone, 111, 333.  
 portus, 159 *b*.  
 posco, 151 *c*, 244.  
 possum, 51 (i), 118 *a*, 377.  
 post, 111, 334.  
 posterus, 27.  
 postis, 155 *c* (2), 158 *d*.  
 postquam, 84 (ii).  
 postremus, 27, 299.  
 postridie, 372.  
 postulo, 244.  
 potior, 57 (p. 66), 124, 131.  
 (potis), 162 *a*.  
 potiundus, 72.  
 potus, 302 *c* (*note* 2).  
 prae, 122, 359.  
 praeceps, 161 *b*.  
 praesep-e, -es, -ium, 163 *b* (2).  
 praesepis, 158 *b*.  
 praesum, 47 (p. 25).  
 praeter, 111, 335.  
 pransus, 302 *c* (*note* 2).  
 precor, 244.  
 premo *and* cpds, 151 *b*.  
 (prex), 163 *g*.  
 pridie, 171 *b*, 372.  
 primores, 163 *h*.  
 primus, 27, 229, 299.  
 prior, primus, 27.  
 prius, 162 *f*.  
 priusquam, 84 (ii).  
 pro, 122, 358.  
 prodeo, 59 (5) *note*.  
 proh, 110 *g*, 380 *note*.  
 proles, 158 *g*.  
 pronus, 162 *c*.  
 promitto, 381.  
 prope (*prep.*), 111, 336.  
 — (*advb.*), 162 *f*.  
 propior, proximus, 27, 372.  
 proprius, 248.  
 propter, 111, 337.  
 prosum, 47 (p. 25).  
 providus, 162 *a*.  
 puber, 161 *a*.  
 pudet, 78, 132, 270.  
 puer, 16.  
 pulcher, 26 *a*.  
 pulso, 75 *c*.  
 pungo *and* cpds, 151 *c*.  
 puppis, 158 *c*.  
 quadrans, 173.  
 quadrupes, 158 *a*, 161 *a*.



- quaero *and* cpds, 151 *g*.  
 quaero *ab or ex* qo, 244.  
 qualis, 60 *f*.  
 quam (*how*), 60 *f*.  
 — (*than*), 257, 284 (3);  
 omission of, 373.  
 quam maximus, 313.  
 quamquam, 84 (ii), 199  
*f*.  
 quamvis, 84 (ii).  
 quando, 60 *f*.  
 quandoquidem, 84 (ii).  
 quanti, 120 *note* 2, 258.  
 quantum *cs rei*, 366.  
 quantus, 60 *f*.  
 quare, 60 *f*.  
 quasi, 84 (ii), 199 *g*.  
 quatio *and* cpds, 50  
 (p. 35), 151 *b*.  
 quatuor, 23, 163 *d*, 164.  
 —que, 84 (i) *a*.  
 queo, 59 (5) *note*.  
 quercus, 163 *b* (i).  
 qui, 35, 95 *c*, 143, 222-  
 229, 282-285.  
 qui, 35, 270.  
 quia, 84 (ii), 199 *d*, 297.  
 quibuscum, 222.  
 quicunque, 167.  
 quid *cs rei*, 366.  
 quidam, 167, 314 *a*.  
 quilibet, 167, 314 *c*.  
 quin, 84 (ii), 199 *a*, *b*,  
 284-285.  
 quincunx, 173.  
 Quintilis, 172 *note* 5.  
 quippe, 282.  
 quis (*who?*), 36, 60 *f*,  
 166.  
 — (*any*), 37, 166, 314  
*c*, *d*.  
 quispiam, 167, 314 *c*.  
 quisquam, 167, 314 *c*.  
 quisque, 167, 386, 390.  
 quisquis, 167.  
 quivis, 167, 314 *c*.  
 quo (*in order that*), 84  
 (ii), 199 *a*, 365.  
 — (*the*), 260, 373.  
 quo (*whither*), 267 *note*  
 I.  
 quoad, 84 (ii).  
 quocum, 222.  
 quod (*because*), 84 (ii),  
 199 *d*, 247.  
 — (*that*), 274.  
 quod attinet *ad*, 313.  
 quod sciam, 313.  
 quominus, 84 (ii), 199 *a*,  
 285, 370.  
 quomodo, 60 *f*.  
 quoniam, 84 (ii).  
 quot, 60 *f*.  
 quoties (*how often*), 60 *f*.  
 — (*as often as*), 84 (ii).  
 quotus, 60 *f*.  
 quum *or cum* (*when*),  
 84 (ii), 144, 199 *c*,  
 287-289, 302 *b*.  
 — (*since*), 84 (ii), 144,  
 199 *d*, 286-289, 302 *b*.  
 — (*although*), 84 (ii),  
 144, 311.  
 quum *or cum* . . . tum,  
 371.  
 rapio *and* cpds, 50 (p.  
 35), 151 *f*.  
 rastrum, 163 *c*.  
 ravis, 158 *b*.  
 receptui canere, 251.  
 recorder, 131.  
 refert, 131, 133, 200 *a*,  
 271-272.  
 rego, 50, 54, 56, 151 *a*.  
 rei, 160 *a*.  
 reminiscor, 129 *g*, 131.  
 requies, 158 *a*, 163 *b* (i).  
 res, 160 *b*.  
 reses, 158 *a*, 161 *a*.  
 respublica, 163 *a*.  
 restat *ut*, 200 *a*.  
 restis, 158 *c*.  
 rete, 158 *a*, *f*.  
 rogo, 114, 244.  
 rudis, 162 *e* (3).  
 rure, 103 *ftnt*.  
 ruri, 106.  
 rus, 102 *ftnt*, 158 *a*, *g*,  
 163 *L*.  
 rusticus, 162 *c*.  
 sacer, 27, 248.  
 saepe, 162 *f*.  
 sal, 155 *c* (3), 158 *a*, *g*,  
 163 *L*.  
 salio *and* cpds, 152 *d*.  
 saluber, 22.  
 salve, 74 *e*.  
 sano, 118 *c* (*note* 2).  
 sapiens, 158 *g*.  
 sapienter, 81.  
 sapientia, 163 *j*.  
 sapio, 50 (p. 35).  
 satis, 118 *b*, 151 *d* (*note*),  
 162 *j*, 366.  
 satisfacio, 151 *d* (*note*),  
 278.  
 satur, 21, 162 *c*.  
 Saturnalia, 163 *k*.  
 satus qo, 256.  
 scando *and* cpds, 151 *e*.  
 sciscitor, 244.  
 scito, 70.  
 se, 31, 291.  
 secum, 222.  
 secundum, 111, 339.  
 securis, 158 *b*.  
 secus, 162 *f*.  
 sed, 84 (i) *c*.  
 sedeo *and* cpds, 151 *g*.  
 sementis, 158 *c*.  
 semis, 158 *a*, 173.  
 senectus, 155 *c* (3), 158  
*a*, 163 *j*.  
 senex, 27, 158 *a*, *g*,  
 161 *a*.  
 separatim, 82.  
 September, 158 *e*, 172  
*note* 4.  
 septunx, 173.  
 sequitur *ut*, 200 *a*.  
 sero *and* cpds, 151 *g*.  
 servire, 118 *c*.  
 servitus, 155 *c* (3), 158  
*g*.  
 sesterti-us, -um, 175.



- sextans, 173.  
 Sextilis, 172 *note* 5.  
 si, 84 (ii), 199 *e*, 394-5.  
 sibilus, 163 *c*.  
 similis, 26 *b*, 248.  
 simul, simul ac, 84 (ii), 313.  
 sinapis, 158 *b*.  
 sine, 122, 356.  
 sinister, 27.  
 sino, 118 *c* (*note* 2), 151 *g*, 301.  
 sisto *and* cpds, 151 *c*.  
 sitis, 158 *b*.  
 sive, 84 (i) *b*, 389.  
 soccer, 16.  
 sol, 155 *c* (3), 158 *a*, *g*.  
 soleo, 76, 150 *f*, 377.  
 solus, 23.  
 solvendo esse, 251.  
 sorbeo *and* cpds, 150 *c*.  
 (sordes), 163 *f*.  
 sospes, 158 *a*, 161 *a*.  
 spargo *and* cpds, 151 *b*.  
 specio *and* cpds, 50 (p. 35), 151 *a*.  
 spero, 381.  
 spondeo *and* cpds, 151 *b*.  
 sponsus, 159 *a*.  
 sponte, 163 *e*.  
 stare ci, 370.  
 stare per qm, 370.  
 statur, 80.  
 stinguo *and* cpds, 151 *a*.  
 sto *and* cpds, 149 *c*.  
 strenuus, 162 *b*.  
 strigilis, 158 *c*.  
 strix, 158 *a*, *g*.  
 studere, 118 *c*.  
 sub, 111, 122, 347, 363.  
 subito, 82.  
 subsum, 47 (p. 25).  
 subter, 111, 122, 347, 363.  
 succensere ci, 247.  
 suffero, 59 (p. 73 *flnt*).  
 sum, 46-7; cpds of, 47 (p. 25), 118 *a*.  
 summosses, 68.  
 summus, 27, 299.  
 sunt, omission of, 382.  
 supellex, 155 *c* (2), 163 *a*.  
 super, 111, 122, 346, 362.  
 supersedeo, 124.  
 superstes, 158 *a*, 161 *a*.  
 supersum, 47 (p. 25).  
 superus, 27.  
 supra, 111, 340.  
 surdus, 27.  
 surrexe, 68 *note* 2.  
 sustuli, 59 (p. 73 *flnt*).  
 suus, 32, 264, 291, 386.  
 Syrtis, 158 *b*.  
 taedet, 78, 132.  
 Tamesis, 158 *b*.  
 tango *and* cpds, 151 *d*.  
 tanquam, tanquam si, 84 (ii), 199 *g*.  
 tanti, 120 *note* 2, 258.  
 tantum abest ut, 311.  
 tantum es rei, 366.  
 tap-es, -ete, -etum, 163 *b* (2).  
 Tartarus, 163 *c*.  
 tecum, 222.  
 temno *and* cpds, 151 *a*.  
 tempero, 118 *c* (*note* 2).  
 tendo *and* cpds, 151 *d*.  
 teneo *and* cpds, 150 *a*.  
 tener, 21.  
 tenerasco, 75 *a*.  
 tenuis, 122, 357.  
 teres, 158 *a*, 161 *b*.  
 terrā marique, 120 *b*, 255.  
 ternuci, 258.  
 Tibris, 158 *b*.  
 tigris, 154 *b*, 158 *a*, *b*.  
 tollo *and* cpds, 151 *c*.  
 tonat, 79.  
 totus, 23, 255.  
 tradere *w.* Gerundive, 281.  
 trans, 111, 343.  
 tres, 23, 164.  
 tribus, 155 *d*, 159 *b*.  
 triens, 155 *c* (2), 173.  
 tristis, 22.  
 trux, 162 *e* (3).  
 tu, 30.  
 tuā, 133, 271.  
 tui, 264.  
 tunc, 81, 267 *note*.  
 tundo *and* cpds, 151 *c*, *e*.  
 turris, 158 *c*.  
 tussis, 158 *b*.  
 tuus, 32, 264.  
 uber, 158 *a*, 161 *a*.  
 ubi (*when*), 84 (ii), 199 *c*.  
 — (*where*), 60 *f*, 267.  
 ullus, 23, 167 *note*, 314 *c*.  
 ulterior, ultimus, 27, 299.  
 ultra, 111, 342.  
 uncia, 173.  
 unde, 60 *f*.  
 unguis, 155 *c* (2), 158 *d*.  
 unus, 23, 164, 165 *a*, *b*, *c*.  
 unusquisque, 167.  
 usurae, 174.  
 usus, 125, 263.  
 ut (*in order that*), 81 (ii), 199 *a*, 145, 301.  
 — (*so that*), 81 (ii), 199 *b*, 145.  
 — (*that*), 132-3, 200 *a*, 270-1.  
 — (*when*), 81 (ii), 199 *c*, 145.  
 — (*as*), 145, 290.  
 — (*how*), 60 *f*, 145, 290.  
 — (*although*), 81 (ii).  
 ut quisque, 373.  
 uter (*which of two*), 23, 60 *f*.  
 — (*wine-skin*), 158 *a*, *d*.  
 uterque, 23, 264.  
 utor, 57, 124.  
 ut pote, 282.  
 utrum, 60 *e*, *f*, 292-294, 389.  
 vacare, 118 *c*, 386.

- vado *and* cpds, 151 *b*.  
 vae, 380.  
 vallis, 17.  
 vapulo, 77.  
 vas (*surety*), 155 *c* (2)  
   *ftnt*, 158 *a, g*.  
 — (*vessel*), 155 *c* (2),  
   158 *a, 163 b* (1).  
 vates, 154 *b, 158 g*.  
 -ve, vel, 84 (1) *b*.  
 vecors, 162 *e* (*note*).  
 Veii, 163 *k*.  
 velim abeas, 378.  
 veneo, 59 (5) *note*, 77,  
   152 *a* (*note*).  
 venor, 57 (p. 66).  
   (*vepres*), 163 *f*.  
   (*verber*), 155 *c* (1),  
     163 *e*.  
 vereor, 57 (p. 66), 387.  
 Vergilius, 16.  
 vero, verum, 84 (1) *c*.  
 versus, 111, 341.  
 veru, 159 *b*.  
 vescor, 124.  
 vesper, 16, 163 *b* (2).  
 vespera, 163 *b* (2).  
 vesperi, 106.  
 vespertinus, 366.  
 vester, 32, 264.  
 vestri, vestrum, 264.  
 • veto, 149 *a, 301*.  
 vetus, 158 *a, 161 b*,  
   162 *a*.  
 (viciis), 163 *g*.  
 viden, 60 *a* (*note*).  
 vigil, 158 *a, 161 a*.  
 vir, 157 *b*.  
 virus, 155 *b, 163 j*.  
 vis, 158 *b, g, 163 g*.  
 vobiscum, 222.  
 volo, 59 (2), 301.  
 volucer, 22.  
 vulgus, 155 *b, 163 j*.
-

OXFORD: HORACE HART M.A.  
PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

# LATIN

## DICTIONARIES

ELEMENTARY LATIN DICTIONARY. By C. T.

LEWIS. 7s. 6d.

LATIN DICTIONARY FOR SCHOOLS. By C. T.

LEWIS. 12s. 6d.

LARGER LATIN DICTIONARY. Founded on Andrews's

edition of Freund's Latin Dictionary. Revised, enlarged, and in great part rewritten, by C. T. LEWIS and C. SHORT. 25s.

## GRAMMARS, READERS, ETC.

THE OXFORD LATIN COURSE. By R. L. A. DU PONTET.

Part I: From the elements to the text of Caesar's campaigns in Britain, modified to avoid the use of the subjunctive mood. 2s. 6d.

NEW LATIN GRAMMAR. Based on the Recommendations

of the Joint Committee on Grammatical Terminology. By E. A. SONNENSCHN. Second Edition. 2s. 6d. In 2 Parts, 1s. 6d. each.

ELEMENTARY LATIN GRAMMAR. By E. E. BRYANT

and E. D. C. LAKE. 1s. 6d.

## LINGUA LATĪNA

A Series of Readers on the Direct Method, edited by

W. H. D. ROUSE and S. O. ANDREW.

DECEM FĀBULAE. By W. L. PAINE, C. L. MAINWARING,

and E. RYLE. 1s. 6d.

PRĪMUS ANNUS. By W. L. PAINE and C. L. MAIN-

WARING. 2s.

PUER RŌMĀNUS. By R. B. APPLETON and W. H. S.

JONES. 2s. 6d.

P. OVIDĪ NĀSŌNIS ELEGĪACA. By L. R. STRANGE-

WAYS. 2s.

PRAECEPTOR. A Master's Book. By S. O. ANDREW.

2s. 6d. net.

RĒGĒS CŌNSULĒSQUE RŌMĀNĪ. By F. R. DALE.

1s. 6d.

VĪLLA CORNĒLIĀNA: A Wall Picture designed by E. M.

CARTER in collaboration with the editors, to illustrate *Life on a Roman Estate*. Size 60 x 40; linen, mounted on rollers, unvarnished. 10s. 6d. net.

## J. B. ALLEN'S ELEMENTARY SERIES

RUDIMENTA LATINA. 2s.

ELEMENTARY LATIN GRAMMAR. New Ed. 2s. 6d.

FIRST LATIN EXERCISE BOOK. Eighth Edition. 2s. 6d.

SECOND LATIN EXERCISE BOOK. With hints for

continuous prose. 2nd Ed. 3s. 6d. Key, to both Exercise Books,

5s. net. (Applications for all Keys to be made direct to the *Secretary, Clarendon Press, Oxford.*)

# Latin

## THE OXFORD ELEMENTARY LATIN READERS

By J. B. ALLEN. With notes, maps, vocabularies, and exercises. 1s. 6d. each.

LIVES FROM CORNELIUS NEPOS.

TALES OF EARLY ROME. Adapted from Livy.

TALES OF THE ROMAN REPUBLIC. Adapted from Livy. In two Parts.

By W. D. LOWE. Simplified and graduated selections with historical introductions, notes, exercises, and vocabularies.

CAESAR IN BRITAIN. Illustrated. 1s.

SCENES FROM THE LIFE OF HANNIBAL. 1s. 6d.

TALES OF THE CIVIL WAR. 1s. 6d.

SELECTIONS FROM CICERO. 1s. 6d.

SELECTIONS FROM OVID. Illustrated. 1s. 6d.

TALES OF GREAT GENERALS. (Cornelius Nepos.) 1s. 6d.

ANECDOTES FROM PLINY'S LETTERS. 1s. 6d.

FALL OF TROY. (Virgil.) 1s. 6d.

EXTRACTS FROM CICERO. With notes. By HENRY WALFORD. Third Edition, revised. Three parts, 4s. 6d., or each Part 1s. 6d.

EXTRACTS FROM LIVY. With notes and maps. By H. LEE-WARNER. In three Parts, 1s. 6d. each.

SELECTIONS FROM THE LATIN LITERATURE OF THE EARLY EMPIRE. By A. C. B. BROWN. With maps. 4s. 6d. Separately: Part A (Inner Life), 2s. 6d.; Part B (Outer Life), 2s. 6d.

REDDENDA MINORA. Latin and Greek passages for unseen translation. For lower forms. By C. S. JERRAM. Sixth Edition, revised and enlarged. 1s. 6d. Separately, *Latin Passages*, 1s.

ANGLICE REDDENDA. Latin and Greek passages for unseen translation. For middle and upper forms. By C. S. JERRAM. 5 Ed. 2s. 6d. Second Series, New Ed. 3s. Third Series, 3s. Separately, *Latin Passages* (First and Second Series), 2s. 6d.

MODELS AND EXERCISES IN UNSEEN TRANSLATION (LATIN AND GREEK). By H. F. FOX and J. M. BROMLEY. With versions of the early passages. 5s. 6d. Key, with references for later passages, 6d. net.

A BOOK OF LATIN VERSE. Selected and edited by H. W. GARROD. 3s. 6d.

SELECTIONS FROM THE LESS KNOWN LATIN POETS. By N. PINDER. 4s. net.

PERVIGILIUM VENERIS. Introd. J. W. MACKAIL. 4d.

NOVUM TESTAMENTUM LATINE. Edited by J. WORDSWORTH and H. J. WHITE. From 2s. net.

## COMPOSITION

### PROSE

**LATIN PROSE PRIMER.** Passages for continuous prose, with hints. By J. Y. SARGENT. The Second Part of this book forms a companion to Easy Passages for Translation into Latin. Second Edition. 2s. 6d.

**EASY PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN.** By J. Y. SARGENT. Eighth Edition. 2s. 6d. KEY, 5s. net.

**LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.** By G. G. RAMSAY. Fourth Edition. Fcap 8vo. Cloth.

Vol. I: Syntax and Exercises. 4s. 6d.

Or, Part I: First Year's Course. Exercises, passages for continuous prose, and hints. With vocabulary. 1s. 6d.

Part II: Second Year's Course. Exercises, passages for continuous prose, and hints. With vocabulary. 1s. 6d.

Part III: Syntax and Appendix. 2s. 6d.

KEY to the volume, 5s. net.

Vol. II: Passages for Translation. With an introduction on continuous prose. 4s. 6d.

**LATIN PROSE VERSIONS.** Contributed by various Scholars. Edited by G. G. RAMSAY. 5s.

### VERSE

**NORMA ELEGIACA.** A Standard for the Writing of Latin Elegiacs. By R. L. A. DU PONTET. 1s. 6d. net.

**HELPS, HINTS, AND EXERCISES FOR LATIN ELEGIACS.** By H. LEE-WARNER. With vocabulary. 3s. 6d. KEY, 4s. 6d. net.

**DEMONSTRATIONS IN LATIN ELEGIAC VERSE.** Exercises, versions, and notes. For teachers. By W. H. D. ROUSE. 4s. 6d.

**RESPONSIONS PAPERS IN STATED SUBJECTS** (exclusive of Books), 1906-11. Mathematics, Grammar, Latin Prose, and Unprepared Translation. With answers to mathematical questions and introduction. By C. A. MARCON and F. G. BRABANT. 3s. 6d. net.

# ANNOTATED TEXTS

A NEW SERIES OF CLASSICAL AUTHORS

Under the general editorship of A. E. HILLARD. 2s. per vol.

**CAESAR: Gallic War.** Books I-VII (seven volumes). By

T. RICE HOLMES. With maps. Library edition, Books I-VIII, in one vol., 8s. 6d. net.

**OVID: Selections.** By J. W. E. PEARCE. Three volumes:

I, *Heroides*; II, *Fasti*; III, *Tristia*.

**APULEI APOLOGIA.** With Introduction and Notes by

H. E. BUTLER and H. S. OWEN. 7s. 6d. net.

**CAESAR: Gallic War, I-VII.** By ST. GEORGE STOCK.

Vol. I: Introduction, 5s. Vol. II: Text and Notes, 6s.

**Gallic War.** By C. E. MOBERLY. III-V, 2s. 6d.; VI-VIII, 3s. 6d.

**Gallic War.** By T. RICE HOLMES. With maps. 8s. 6d. net.

**Civil War.** By C. E. MOBERLY. New Edition. 3s. 6d.

**A Vocabulary to the Gallic War.** By G. G. LOANE.

*In the press.*

**CATULLUS: Selections.** (Text only.) By R. ELLIS. 3s. 6d.

**Commentary on Catullus.** By ROBINSON ELLIS. 18s. net.

**CICERO: De Amicitia.** By ST. GEORGE STOCK. 3s.

**De Senectute.** By L. HUXLEY. 2s.

**In Catilinam.** By E. A. UPCOTT. 3 Ed., rev. 2s. 6d.

**In Q. Caecilius Divinatio and In Verrem I.** By J. R. KING. Second Edition, revised. 2s.

**Pro Cluentio.** By G. G. RAMSAY. Second Edition. 3s. 6d.

**Pro Marcello, Pro Ligario, Pro Rege Deiotaro.** By W. Y. FAUSSET. Second Edition. 2s. 6d.

**Pro Milone.** By A. B. POYNTON. Second Ed. 2s. 6d.

**Philippic Orations, I, II, III, V, VII.** By J. R. KING. New Edition, revised by A. C. CLARK. 3s. 6d.

**Pro Roscio.** By ST. GEORGE STOCK. 3s. 6d.

**Select Orations, viz. In Verrem Actio Prima, De Imperio Gn. Pompeii, Pro Archia, Philippica IX.** By J. R. KING. 2 Ed. 2s. 6d.

**Selected Letters.** By C. E. PRICHARD and E. R. BERNARD. Second Edition. 3s.

**Selected Letters.** (Text only.) By A. WATSON. 2 Ed. 4s.

**Somnium Scipionis.** (Text only.) Paper, 3d.; cloth, 4d.



# Oxford University Press School Books

- CORNELIUS NEPOS.** By OSCAR BROWNING. 3 Ed. 3s.  
**ERASMUS: Selections.** By P. S. ALLEN. Illustrated.  
With vocabulary. 3s. 6d. and (Oxford India Paper) 4s. 6d.  
**HORACE.** By E. C. WICKHAM.  
The Works. In 2 vols., crown 8vo. I: Odes, Carmen  
Saeculare, and Epodes. Second Edition. II: Satires, Epistles,  
and De Arte Poetica. 6s. each. Separately, Odes, I, 2s.  
Odes, Carmen Saeculare, and Epodes. Demy 8vo.  
Third Edition. 7s. 6d. Selected Odes. Second Edition. 2s.  
**JUVENAL: Thirteen Satires (I, III-V, VII, VIII, X-XVI).**  
By C. H. PEARSON and HERBERT A. STRONG. Second Edition. 9s. net.  
**LIVY, I.** By Sir J. R. SEELEY. 6s.  
III. By P. T. JONES. With vocabulary, 3s. 6d.; with-  
out, 2s. 6d.  
V-VII. By A. R. CLUER. New Edition, revised by P. E.  
MATHESON. 5s. Separately: V, 2s. 6d.; VI and VII, 2s. each.  
IX. By T. NICKLIN. With vocabulary, 3s.; without, 2s. 6d.  
XXI-XXIII. By M. T. TATHAM. Second Edition, en-  
larged. 5s. Separately: XXI and XXII, 2s. 6d. each.  
**LUCRETIUS, V.** By W. D. LOWE. 3s. 6d. Separately,  
ll. 1-782, 2s.; ll. 783-1457, 2s.  
**MARTIAL: Select Epigrams.** By R. T. BRIDGE and  
E. D. C. LAKE. *Spectaculorum Liber & I-VI.* 3s. 6d. Separately,  
*Introduction and Notes*, 2s. VII-XII, 3s. 6d. Separately, *Introduction  
and Notes*, 2s.  
Select Epigrams. Text and critical notes. By W. M.  
LINDSAY. 3s. 6d. and (Oxford India Paper) 5s.  
**OVID: Selections.** By G. G. RAMSAY. With appendix on  
Roman calendar, by W. RAMSAY. Third Edition. 5s. 6d.  
Tristia. By S. G. OWEN. I, Third Edition, 3s. 6d.  
III, Second Edition, revised, 2s.  
Metamorphoses, Book III. By M. CARTWRIGHT. 2s.\*  
Metamorphoses, Book XI. By G. A. T. DAVIES. 2s.\*  
Stories from the Metamorphoses. By D. A. SLATER.  
Illustrated. 2s. 6d.\*  
Selections. By A. C. B. BROWN. Vol. I: Heroic  
and Elegiac. Vol. II: Heroic and Elegiac. 1s. 6d. each.\*  
**PERSIUS: Satires.** With translation and commentary by  
J. CONINGTON. Edited by H. NETTLESHIP. Third Edition. 8s. 6d. net.  
\* With or without vocabulary.



# Latin

**PLAUTUS:** *Aulularia*. By E. A. THOMAS. 4s. 6d.  
*Captivi*. By W. M. LINDSAY. 2 Ed. 2s. 6d.  
*Mostellaria*. By E. A. SONNENSCHN. Text interleaved.  
Second Edition. 4s. 6d.  
*Rudens*. By E. A. SONNENSCHN. Text and appendix  
on scansion interleaved. 4s. 6d.  
*Trinummus*. By C. E. FREEMAN and A. SLOMAN. Fourth  
Edition. 3s.

**PLINY:** *Selected Letters*. By C. E. PRICHARD and E. R.  
BERNARD. Third Edition. 3s.

**SELECTED LETTERS.** By G. B. ALLEN. 2s. 6d.

**PROPERTIUS.** *See Tibullus*.

**QUINTILIAN:** *Institutio Oratoria*, X. By W. PETERSON.  
Second Edition. 3s. 6d.

**SALLUST:** *Catiline and Jugurtha*. By W. W. CAPES.  
Second Edition. 4s. 6d.

**TACITUS.** By H. FURNEAUX. *Annals*, I-IV. Second  
Edition. 5s. Separately, I, 2s. *Annals*. (Text only.) 6s. *Agricola*.  
8s. 6d. *Germania*. 8s. 6d.

By H. PITMAN. With introductions and notes abridged  
from the larger work of H. FURNEAUX. *Annals* V-XII. 3s. 6d.  
*Annals* XIII-XVI. With map. 4s. 6d.

**TERENCE:** *Adelphi*. By A. SLOMAN. Second Edition. 3s.

*Andria*. By C. E. FREEMAN and A. SLOMAN. 2 Ed. 3s.

*Famulus*. As performed at Westminster School. By  
J. SARGEANT and A. G. S. RAYNOR. 2s.

*Phormio*. By A. SLOMAN. Second Edition, revised. 3s.

*Comedies*. By S. G. ASHMORE. 6s.

**TIBULLUS AND PROPERTIUS:** *Selections*. By  
G. G. RAMSAY. Third Edition, revised. 6s.

**VIRGIL.** By T. L. PAPILLON and A. E. HAIGH.

*Works*. Two volumes. 3s. 6d. (cloth 6s.) each. Sepa-  
rately: *Aeneid*, in parts, I-III, IV-VI, VII-IX, X-XII. 2s. each;  
*Aeneid*, IX, by A. E. HAIGH, 1s. 6d.; *Bucolics* and *Georgics*, 2s. 6d.  
Text only, 3s. net (Oxford India Paper, 4s. 6d. net)

By C. S. JERRAM.

*Aeneid*, I. 1s. 6d. *Bucolics*. 2s. 6d.

*Georgics*, I-II and III-IV. 2s. 6d. each.

*For Oxford Classical Texts see p. 44.*

# OXFORD CLASSICAL TEXTS

- Asconius. CLARK. 3s. 6d.  
 Caesaris Commentarii. DU PONTET.  
 (7s.) 2 vols. 2s. 6d. and 2s.  
 Catulli Carmina. ELLIS. 2s. 6d.  
 Catullus, Tibullus, Propertius. (8s. 6d.)  
 Ciceronis Epistulae. PURSER. (21s.)  
 4 vols. 6s., 4s. 6d., 4s. 6d., 3s.  
 Ciceronis Orationes. Mil., Caesaria-  
 nae, Phil. CLARK. 3s.—Sex.  
 Rosc., Imp., Clu., Cat., Mur., Cael.  
 CLARK. 3s.—Verrinae. PETERSON.  
 4s. (3 vols. in 1, 18s. 6d.)—Quinct.,  
 Rosc. Com., Caec., Agr., Rab. Perd.,  
 Flacc., Pis., Rab. Post. CLARK.  
 3s.—Post Red., Dom., Har. Resp.,  
 Sest., Vat., Prov. Cons., Balb.  
 PETERSON. 3s.—Tull., Font., Sull.,  
 Arch., Planc., Scaur. CLARK.  
 2s. 6d. (3 vols. in 1, 16s.)  
 Ciceronis Rhetorica. WILKINS.  
 (7s. 6d.) 2 vols. 3s. and 3s. 6d.  
 Corneli Nepotis Vitae. WINSTEDT. 2s.  
 Horati Opera. WICKHAM and  
 GARROD. 3s. (4s. 6d.)  
 Isidori Etymologiae. LINDSAY. 2  
 vols., 20s. (25s.)  
 Livi Historiae. CONWAY and WAL-  
 TERS. Books I-V. 4s.  
 Lucreti de Rerum Natura. BAILEY. 3s.  
 Martialis Epigrammata. LINDSAY.  
 6s. (7s. 6d.)  
 Ovidi Tristia Epp. ex Ponto Halieu-  
 tica Fragmenta. OWEN. 3s.  
 Persi et Iuvenalis Saturae. OWEN.  
 3s. (4s.)  
 Plauti Comoediae. LINDSAY. Vol. I,  
 6s. Vol. II, 6s. (Complete, 16s.)  
 Properti Carmina. PHILLIMORE. 3s.  
 Stati Silvae. PHILLIMORE. 3s. 6d.  
 Stati Thebais et Achilleis. GARROD.  
 6s. (With Silvae, 10s. 6d.)  
 Taciti Op. Min. FURNEAUX. 2s.  
 Taciti Annales. FISHER. 6s. (7s.)  
 Taciti Historiae. FISHER. 4s. (5s. 6d.)  
 (Hist., Ann., Op. Min., 15s.)  
 Terenti Comoediae. TYRRELL. 3s. 6d.  
 (5s.)  
 Tibulli Carmina. POSTGALE. 2s.  
 Vergili Opera. HIRTZEL. 3s. 6d.  
 (4s. 6d.)
- Appendix Vergiliana. ELLIS. 4s.  
 Aeschylī Tragoediae. SIDGWICK.  
 3s. 6d. (4s. 6d.)  
 Antoninus. LEOPOLD. 3s. (4s.)  
 Apollonii Argonautica. SEATON. 3s.  
 Aristophanis Comoediae. HALL and  
 GELDART. 2 vols., 3s. 6d. each.  
 (Complete, 8s. 6d.)  
 Aristotle. BYWATER. De Arte  
 Poetica, 2s. Ethica, 4s.  
 Bucolici Graeci. VON WILAMO-  
 WITZ-MOELLENDORFF. 3s. (4s.)  
 Demosthenis Orationes. BUTCHER.  
 I, 4s. 6d. II, Pt. I, 3s. 6d. (12s. 6d.)  
 Euripidis Tragoediae. MURRAY.  
 Vol. I, 3s. 6d. Vol. II, 3s. 6d.  
 Vol. III, 3s. 6d. (4s. 6d.) (I-II, 9s.;  
 I-III, 12s. 6d.)  
 Hellenica Oxyrhynchia, &c. GREN-  
 FELL and HUNT. 4s. 6d.  
 Herodoti Historiae. HUDE. 2 vols.,  
 4s. 6d. each. (Complete, 12s. 6d.)  
 Homeri Ilias. MONRO and ALLEN.  
 2 vols., 3s. each. (Complete, 7s.)  
 Homeri Odyssea. ALLEN. 2 vols.,  
 3s. each. (Complete, 6s.)  
 Homeri Hymni. ALLEN. 4s. 6d. (5s.)  
 Hyperides. KENYON. 3s. 6d.  
 Longinus. PRICKARD. 2s. 6d.  
 Lysias. HUDE. 3s. 6d.  
 Platonis Opera. BURNET. Vols. I-III,  
 6s. each (7s. each; I-III, 20s.).  
 Vol. IV, 7s. (8s. 6d.) Vol. V, 8s.  
 (10s. 6d.; IV-V, 18s.) Separately  
 —Respublica, 6s. (7s.); on 4to  
 paper, 10s. 6d.; First and Fifth  
 Tetralogies, paper covers, 2s.  
 each; Sixth, cloth, 4s., paper  
 covers, 3s. 6d.; Apology and  
 Meno, 2s. 6d. [3s. 6d.]  
 Theophrasti Characteres. DIELS.  
 Thucydidis Historiae. JONES. 2 vols.,  
 3s. 6d. each. (Complete, 8s. 6d.)  
 Xenophontis Opera. MARCHANT.  
 4 vols. I, III, 3s. each; II, IV,  
 3s. 6d. each. (Complete, 12s. 6d.)  
 Tragicorum Fragmenta. HUNT. 3s.

A Companion to Classical Texts.  
 F. W. HALL. Illustr. 9s. 6d. net.

Prices above are for cloth bindings (in brackets, for editions on Oxford India Paper). In paper covers, 6d. less per vol. (1s. less for those from 6s. in cloth). Prices for interleaved copies in stiff cloth on application.

# GREEK

## DICTIONARIES

BY H. G. LIDDELL AND R. SCOTT

ABRIDGED GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON. Twenty-first Edition. 7s. 6d.

INTERMEDIATE GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON. 12s. 6d.

LARGER GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON. Eighth Edition, revised throughout. 36s.

## GRAMMARS, READERS, ETC.

ELEMENTARY GREEK GRAMMAR. By E. E. BRYANT and E. D. C. LAKE. 2s. 6d.

WORDSWORTH'S GREEK PRIMER. 1s. 6d.

WARS OF GREECE AND PERSIA. Selections from Herodotus. Adapted and graduated by W. D. LOWE. With notes and vocabulary. 2s. 6d.

GREEK READER. Adapted, with English notes, from Professor von Wilamowitz-Moellendorff's *Griechisches Lesebuch*. By E. C. MARCHANT. Two volumes. With or without vocabularies, 2s. each.

SELECTIONS FROM PLUTARCH'S LIFE OF CAESAR. By R. L. A. DU PONTET. With notes. 2s.

SELECT DIALOGUES OF LUCIAN. By W. H. D. ROUSE. Prepared for schools. With short notes in Greek. Text, 2s. Notes, 2s.

FIRST GREEK READER. By W. G. RUSHBROOKE. With notes and vocabulary. Third Edition. 2s. 6d.

SECOND GREEK READER. Selections from Herodotus. By A. M. BELL. With introd., notes, and vocabulary. 2nd Ed. 3s.

EASY SELECTIONS FROM XENOPHON. By J. S. PHILLPOTTS and C. S. JERRAM. Adapted, with notes, vocabulary, maps, and illustrations. Third Edition. 3s. 6d.

SELECTIONS FROM XENOPHON. By J. S. PHILLPOTTS. Adapted, with notes, maps, and illustrations as above. New Edition. 3s. 6d. Key (to §§ 1-3), 2s. 6d. net.

REDDENDA MINORA. Greek and Latin passages for unseen translation. For lower forms. By C. S. JERRAM. Sixth Edition, revised and enlarged. 1s. 6d.

ANGLICE REDDENDA. Greek and Latin passages for unseen translation. For middle and higher forms. By C. S. JERRAM. Fifth Edition. 2s. 6d. Second Series, New Edition, 3s. Third Series, 3s. Separately, *Greek Passages* (First and Second Series), 3s.

SELECTIONS FROM GREEK EPIC AND DRAMATIC POETRY. By EVELYN ABBOTT. With introd. and notes. 4s. 6d.

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE COMPARATIVE Grammar of Greek and Latin. By J. E. KING and C. COOKSON. 5s. 6d.

MODELS AND EXERCISES IN UNSEEN TRANSLATION (LATIN AND GREEK). By H. F. FOX and J. M. BROMLEY. With versions of the early passages. 5s. 6d. KEY, with references for later passages, 6d. net.

GOLDEN TREASURY OF GREEK PROSE. By Sir R. S. WRIGHT and J. E. L. SHADWELL. 4s. 6d.

## COMPOSITION

GREEK EXERCISES. By E. E. BRYANT and E. D. C.

LAKE. 2s.

GRAECE REDDENDA. Exercises for translation into Greek, with vocabulary. By C. S. JERRAM. 2s. 6d.

PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION INTO GREEK. By J. Y. SARGENT. 3s. EXEMPLARIA GRAECA (select Greek versions of some passages in same), 3s.

HELPS, HINTS, AND EXERCISES FOR GREEK VERSE COMPOSITION. By C. E. LAURENCE. 3s. 6d. KEY, 5s. net.

MODELS AND MATERIALS FOR GREEK IAMBIC VERSE. By J. Y. SARGENT. 4s. 6d. KEY, 5s. net.

## NEW TESTAMENT IN GREEK

GREEK TESTAMENT. With the Readings adopted by the Revisers of the Authorized Version, and marginal references. 4s. 6d.

THE OXFORD GREEK TESTAMENT: the same, with a new apparatus criticus. By A. SOUTER. 3s. net; on Oxford India paper, 4s. net.

NOVUM TESTAMENTUM. Edited by C. LLOYD. 3s. With appendices by W. SANDAY, 6s.

NOVUM TESTAMENTUM. Juxta exemplar Millianum. 2s. 6d.

EVANGELIA SACRA GRAECE. 1s. 6d.

GREEK TESTAMENT PRIMER. Edited by E. MILLER. Second Edition. Paper boards, 2s.; cloth, 3s. 6d.

RESPONSIONS PAPERS. See p. 40.

# ANNOTATED TEXTS

AESCHYLUS. By A. SIDGWICK.

Agamemnon. Sixth Edition, revised. 3s.

Choephoroi. New Edition, revised. 3s.

Eumenides. Third Edition. 3s.

Persae. 3s. Septem contra Thebas. 3s.

By A. O. PRICKARD.

Prometheus Bound. Fourth Edition, revised. 2s.

Prometheus Bound. Translated by R. WHITELOW. With introduction and notes by J. CHURTON COLLINS. 1s. net.

Agamemnon. Translated by J. CONINGTON. With introduction and notes by J. CHURTON COLLINS. 1s. net.

APPIAN, I. By J. L. STRACHAN-DAVIDSON. With map. 3s. 6d.

ARISTOPHANES. By W. W. MERRY.

Acharnians. Fifth Edition, revised. 3s.

Birds. Fourth Edition. 3s. 6d.

Clouds. Third Edition. 3s.

Frogs. Fifth Edition. 3s.

Knights. Second Edition, revised. 3s.

Peace. 3s. 6d. Wasps. Second Edition. 3s. 6d.

CEBES: Tabula. By C. S. JERRAM. Paper, 1s. 6d.; cloth, 2s. 6d.

DEMOSTHENES. By EVELYN ABBOTT and P. E. MATHESON.

Against Philip. Vol. I: Philippic I, Olynthiacs I-III.

Fourth Edition. 3s. Vol. II: De Pace, Philippics II-III,

De Chersoneso. 4s. 6d. Separately, *Philippics* I-III, 2s. 6d.

On the Crown. 3s. 6d.

Against Meidias. By J. R. KING. 3s. 6d.

DEMOSTHENES and AESCHINES: On the Crown. By G. A. SIMCOX and W. H. SIMCOX. 12s.

EURIPIDES: Alcestis. By C. S. JERRAM. 5th Ed. 2s. 6d.

Bacchae. By A. H. CRUICKSHANK. 3s. 6d.

Cyclops. By W. E. LONG. 2s. 6d.

Hecuba. By C. B. HEBERDEN. 2s. 6d.

Helena. By C. S. JERRAM. Second Ed., revised. 3s.

Heracleidae. By C. S. JERRAM. New Ed., revised. 3s.

Heracles. By O. R. A. BYRDE. 2s. 6d.

- EURIPIDES** (*continued*): Ion. By C. S. JERRAM. 3s.  
 Iphigenia in Tauris. By C. S. JERRAM. New Ed. 3s.  
 Medea. By C. B. HEBERDEN. 3rd Ed., revised. 2s.  
 Alcestis. Translated by H. KYNASTON. With introduction and notes by J. CHURTON COLLINS. 1s. net.  
 Alcestis. The Greek text with English verse translation parallel. By Sixth Form boys of Bradfield College. 1s. 6d.
- HERODOTUS**: Selections. By W. W. MERRY. 2s. 6d.  
 IX. By EVELYN ABBOTT. 3s.  
 V-VI. By EVELYN ABBOTT. 6s.
- HOMER**: Iliad, I-XII. With Homeric grammar. By D. B. MONRO. Fifth Edition, revised. 6s. Separately, I, with grammar and notes, Third Edition, 1s. 6d.  
 XIII-XXIV. By D. B. MONRO. Fourth Edition. 6s.  
 III. By M. T. TATHAM. 1s. 6d.  
 XXI. By HERBERT HAILSTONE. 1s. 6d.
- Odyssey. By W. W. MERRY.  
 I-XII. Sixty-sixth thousand. 5s. Separately, I and II, 1s. 6d. each; VI-VII, 1s. 6d.; VII-XII, 3s.  
 XIII-XXIV. Sixteenth thousand, revised. 5s. Separately, XIII-XVIII, 3s.; XIX-XXIV, 3s.
- ISOCRATES**: Cyprian Orations. Evagoras, Ad Nicoclem, Nicocles aut Cyprii. By E. S. FORSTER. 3s. 6d.
- LUCIAN**: Vera Historia. By C. S. JERRAM. Second Edition, revised and enlarged. 1s. 6d.
- LYSIAS**: Epitaphios. By F. J. SNELL. 2s.
- PLATO**: Apology. By ST. GEORGE STOCK. 3rd Ed. 2s. 6d.  
 Crito. By ST. GEORGE STOCK. 2s.  
 Euthydemus. By E. H. GIFFORD. 3s. 6d.  
 Euthyphro. By ST. GEORGE STOCK. 2s. 6d.  
 Ion. By ST. GEORGE STOCK. 2s. 6d.  
 Menexenus. By J. A. SHAWYER. 2s.  
 Meno. By ST. GEORGE STOCK. 3 Ed., revised. 2s. 6d.  
 Phaedo. By J. BURNET. 5s.  
 Selections. By J. PURVES. Second Edition. 5s.
- PLUTARCH**: Lives of the Gracchi. By G. E. UNDERHILL. 4s. 6d. Life of Coriolanus. 2s.
- SOPHOCLES**. By LEWIS CAMPBELL and EVELYN ABBOTT. New and revised Edition. Vol. I: text, 4s. 6d. Vol. II: notes, 6s. Separately (text with notes): *Ajax*, *Antigone*, *Electra*, *Oedipus Coloneus*, *Oedipus Tyrannus*, *Philoctetes*, *Trachiniae*, 2s. each. Ex recensione G. DINDORFII. Each play, paper covers, 6d.; *Ajax*, also in cloth, 8d.



# Mathematics

**SOPHOCLES** (*continued*): Scenes. By C. E. LAURENCE. With illustrations. I: Ajax. II: Antigone. 1s. 6d. each.

Antigone. Translated by R. WHITELAW. With introduction and notes by J. CHURTON COLLINS. 1s. net.

Electra. Translated by R. WHITELAW. With MATTHEW ARNOLD's Merope. With introduction and notes by J. CHURTON COLLINS. 3s. 6d.

**THEOCRITUS**. By H. KYNASTON. Fifth Edition. 4s. 6d.

**THUCYDIDES**, II. By T. R. MILLS. 3s. 6d.; separately, *Notes*, 2s. 6d. III. By H. F. FOX. 3s. 6d. IV. By T. R. MILLS. 3s. 6d.; separately, *Notes*, 2s. 6d.

**XENOPHON**: Anabasis. By J. MARSHALL. With vocabulary to each volume. I, II (by C. S. JERRAM), III, IV, 1s. 6d. each. III-IV, 3s. Separately, *Vocabulary*, 1s.

Cyropaedia. By C. BIGG. I, 2s. IV-V, 2s. 6d.

Hellenica. By G. E. UNDERHILL. 7s. 6d. net. Separately, *Notes*, 7s. 6d. I-II, 3s.

Memorabilia. By J. MARSHALL. 4s. 6d.

## ANCIENT HISTORY, ETC.

**JUNIOR HISTORY OF ROME**. To the death of Caesar. By M. A. HAMILTON. Intro. L. H. HELBERT. Illustr. 4s. 6d.

**OUTLINES OF GREEK AND ROMAN HISTORY**. By M. A. HAMILTON. With maps and illustrations. 3s.

**OUTLINES OF ROMAN HISTORY**. To A.D. 180. By M. A. HAMILTON. 1s. 6d.

## MATHEMATICS

**ARITHMETIC**. By N. J. CHIGNELL and W. E. PATERSON.

	With or Without Answers.
The complete book	4s. 6d.
Part I (Simple and Compound Rules. Decimals. Vulgar Fractions. Ratio Methods and their Application)	2s. 6d.
Part II (Logarithms. Mensuration. Commercial Arithmetic:—Construction and use of Tables, Profit and Loss, Simple and Compound Interest. Stocks)	2s. 6d.
Examples only—Parts I and II	3s. 6d.
"    "    —Part I	2s.
"    "    —Part II	2s.

**ARITHMETIC**. By R. HARGREAVES. With or without answers. 4s. 6d.

230